

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION**

Washington, DC 20549

---

**Amendment No. 1  
to  
FORM 10**

---

**GENERAL FORM FOR REGISTRATION OF SECURITIES  
Pursuant to Section 12(b) or (g) of  
The Securities Exchange Act of 1934**

---

**MRI Interventions, Inc.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

---

**Delaware**  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)

**58-2394628**  
(I.R.S. Employer  
Identification No.)

**MRI Interventions, Inc.**  
**One Commerce Square, Suite 2550**  
**Memphis, TN 38103**  
(Address of principal executive offices)

**Registrant's telephone number, including area code: (901) 522-9300**

**Securities to be registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:**

---

Title of each class  
to be so registered

N/A

Name of each exchange on which  
each class is to be registered

N/A

**Securities to be registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: Common Stock, \$0.01 par value per share**

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. (Check one):

Large accelerated filer

Accelerated filer

Non-accelerated filer  (Do not check if a smaller reporting company)

Smaller reporting company

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **EXPLANATORY NOTE**

MRI Interventions, Inc. is filing this General Form for Registration of Securities on Form 10, or this registration statement, to register its common stock, par value \$0.01 per share, pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Unless otherwise mentioned or unless the context requires otherwise, when used in this registration statement, the terms “company,” “we,” “us,” and “our” refer to MRI Interventions, Inc.

We were incorporated in Delaware in 1998 under the name Surgi-Vision, Inc. On November 12, 2008, we changed our name to SurgiVision, Inc. On May 13, 2011, we changed our name to MRI Interventions, Inc. We operate in only one business segment. Our principal executive office is located at One Commerce Square, Suite 2550, Memphis, TN 38103, and our telephone number is (901) 522-9300. Our principal operations are located in Irvine, California. Our website address is [www.mriinterventions.com](http://www.mriinterventions.com). We do not incorporate the information on our website into this registration statement, and you should not consider it part of this registration statement.

ClearConnect™, ClearPoint®, ClearTrace™, MRI Interventions™, SmartFlow™, SmartFrame®, and SmartGrid® are trademarks of MRI Interventions, Inc. Any other trademarks, trade names or service marks referred to in this registration statement are the property of their respective owners. As used in this registration statement, Siemens refers to Siemens Aktiengesellschaft, Healthcare Sector, Boston Scientific refers to Boston Scientific Corporation and its affiliates, and Brainlab refers to Brainlab AG.

The market data and other statistical information contained in this registration statement are based on independent industry publications, government publications, reports by market research firms and other published independent sources. Some data is also based on our good faith estimates, which are derived from other relevant statistical information, as well as the independent sources listed above. Although we believe these sources are reliable, we have not independently verified the information.

### **FORWARD LOOKING STATEMENTS**

This registration statement contains forward-looking statements. The forward-looking statements are contained principally in the sections entitled “Business,” “Risk Factors,” and “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations”. These statements involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors that may cause our actual results, performance or achievements to be materially different from any future results, performances or achievements, expressed or implied by the forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- our ability to market, commercialize and achieve market acceptance for our products;
- the anticipated progress of our research and product development activities;
- our ability to successfully complete the development of our current product candidates;
- our ability to obtain regulatory clearance or approval for our current product candidates;
- our ability to generate additional product candidates in the future;
- our ability to protect our intellectual property and operate our business without infringing upon the intellectual property rights of others; and
- the estimates regarding the sufficiency of our cash resources.

In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terms such as “anticipates,” “believes,” “could,” “estimates,” “expects,” “intends,” “may,” “plans,” “potential,” “predicts,” “projects,” “should,” “will,” “would,” and similar expressions intended to identify forward-looking statements, although not all forward-looking statements contain these words. Although we believe that we have a reasonable basis for each forward-looking statement contained in this registration statement, we caution you that these statements are based on a combination of facts and factors currently known by us and our projections of the future, about which we cannot be certain.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

You should refer to the section of this registration statement entitled “Risk Factors” for a discussion of important factors that may cause our actual results to differ materially from those expressed or implied by our forward-looking statements. As a result of these factors, we cannot assure you that the forward-looking statements in this registration statement will prove to be accurate. Furthermore, if our forward-looking statements prove to be inaccurate, the inaccuracy may be material. In light of the significant uncertainties in these forward-looking statements, you should not regard these statements as a representation or warranty by us or any other person that we will achieve our objectives and plans in any specified time frame, or at all. We do not undertake to update any of the forward-looking statements after the date of this registration statement, except to the extent required by applicable securities laws.

### **Item 1. Business**

#### **Overview**

We are a medical device company that develops and commercializes innovative platforms for performing minimally invasive surgical procedures in the brain and heart under direct, intra-procedural magnetic resonance imaging, or MRI, guidance. Since our inception in 1998, we have focused on research and product development in the field of interventional MRI. From 1998 to 2002, we deployed significant resources to fund our efforts to develop the foundational capabilities for enabling MRI-guided interventions and to build an intellectual property position. In 2003, our focus shifted to identifying and building out commercial applications for the technologies we developed in prior years.

We have two product platforms. Our ClearPoint system, which is in commercial use in the United States, is used to perform minimally invasive surgical procedures in the brain. We anticipate that the ClearTrace system, which is still in development, will be used to perform minimally invasive surgical procedures in the heart. Both systems utilize intra-procedural magnetic resonance imaging to guide the procedures. Both systems are designed to work in a hospital’s existing MRI suite.

Our products are designed to provide a new, minimally invasive surgical approach to address large patient populations for whom we believe current surgical techniques are deficient. Our ClearPoint system is designed to deliver therapies to treat certain neurological diseases. Our ClearTrace system is designed to deliver therapies to treat certain cardiac diseases. We believe that our two product platforms, subject to appropriate regulatory clearance and approval, will provide better patient outcomes, enhance revenue potential for both physicians and hospitals, and reduce costs to the healthcare system.

- *Better Patient Outcomes.* We believe that if a physician can see the surgical field, the surgical instruments and the patient’s anatomy at the same time and in the same “imaging space,” the physician can more efficiently perform a surgical intervention in the brain or heart. Our product platforms, subject to appropriate regulatory clearance or approval, are designed to enable physicians to see the target site, guide the surgical instrument to the site, deliver the therapy, monitor for adverse events and complications and confirm the desired results of the procedure, all under high resolution, intra-procedural magnetic resonance imaging. We believe that these capabilities will translate directly into better clinical outcomes for the patients undergoing the procedures due to improved efficiency, the potential for the reduction of adverse events and side effects, as well as the potential for faster recovery times.
- *Enhance Revenue Potential.* By providing direct, intra-procedural visualization, we believe our ClearPoint system can reduce the amount of time needed to perform the procedures for which it was designed. As a result, we believe that our ClearPoint system may improve the overall economics of the procedures for both the performing physician and the hospital. We believe that our ClearPoint system may also enable a physician to treat more patients in a given period of time, and treat patients who would otherwise not be able to be treated utilizing current surgical techniques.
- *Reduce Costs to the Healthcare System.* We believe that use of our products may result in more efficient utilization of healthcare resources and physician time. For example, our product platforms are designed to work in a hospital’s existing MRI suite, which adds additional utility for an infrastructure investment that has already been made by the hospital. Further, if patient outcomes and procedure efficiencies are improved by use of our products, we believe that the result will be a reduction in overall healthcare costs.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Our ClearPoint system is in commercial use. In June 2010, we received 510(k) clearance from the Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, to market our ClearPoint system in the United States for general neurological interventional procedures. In February 2011, we also obtained CE marking approval for the ClearPoint system, which enables us to sell the ClearPoint system in the European Union. In April 2011, we entered into a co-development and distribution agreement with Brainlab, a leader in the image-guided surgery field, under which Brainlab will serve as our distribution partner for the ClearPoint system. As of January 31, 2012, a total of 14 ClearPoint systems have been installed, 13 in the United States and one in Europe. ClearPoint systems are in clinical use in connection with MRI scanners from the three major MRI scanner manufacturers, Siemens, GE Healthcare and Philips Healthcare, as well as the two major interventional MR/OR platforms that are manufactured by IMRIS and Brainlab.

The ClearTrace system, a product candidate still in development, is designed to allow catheter-based minimally invasive procedures in the heart to be performed using continuous, intra-procedural MRI guidance. In May 2009, we entered into an exclusive co-development agreement with Siemens for the development and commercialization of the hardware and MRI software necessary for the ClearTrace system. We believe that our exclusive relationship with Siemens secures an important strategic market position for the ClearTrace system. Our development activities on the ClearTrace system are ongoing. We have not made any filings seeking regulatory clearance or approval for the ClearTrace system. We anticipate that the initial market for the ClearTrace system will be the European Union.

In addition to our strategic relationships with Brainlab and Siemens, we also have entered into exclusive licensing and development agreements with Boston Scientific, pursuant to which Boston Scientific may incorporate certain of our technologies into its cardiac pacemaker and neuromodulation products. To augment our research and development activities, we also have meaningful collaborations with renowned academic institutions.

We have a significant intellectual property portfolio in the field of MRI-guided interventions. As of January 31, 2012, our portfolio included 63 patents and 113 patent applications, both United States and foreign, which we wholly-own, co-own or have licensed. Our technologies have been the subject of numerous peer-reviewed articles in medical and scientific journals. As a result of our product offerings, intellectual property position and collaborative relationships, we believe that we are well positioned to remain on the forefront of the emerging market for MRI-guided minimally invasive surgical procedures.

## **Industry Background**

### ***Magnetic Resonance Imaging***

MRI is a widely practiced imaging technique that uses spatially varying magnetic fields to produce images of the human anatomy. Hydrogen nuclei, present in molecules throughout the body, are slightly magnetic. When placed in large external magnetic fields, they can be induced to emit or resonate radio frequency signals. These radio frequency signals are used to construct images of human anatomy, including high resolution images of soft tissue.

MRI has important and advantageous properties that differentiate it from other imaging methods. MRI scans can provide images of any part of the body, in any plane of view, and offer more detailed information than other modalities, including fluoroscopy and computed tomography. Some of the unique advantages of MRI include:

- soft tissue imaging that enables superior tissue visualization and enhanced differentiation between healthy and diseased tissues;
- unlimited orientation and positioning of the imaging plane;
- ability to directly acquire volumetric (three dimensional) data sets;
- ability to evaluate both the structure and certain functions of internal organs; and
- no harmful ionizing radiation exposure for either the patient or the physician.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

There are approximately 4,500 1.5T MRI scanners and approximately 550 3T MRI scanners installed in hospitals throughout the United States. MRI scanners are available in a number of different configurations and field strengths, which refers to the strength of the magnet used to create the magnetic field. Magnetic field strength is measured in Tesla, or T. The most common field strength for MRI scanners is 1.5T. Higher field strength scanners such as 3T MRI scanners have been introduced in clinical practice and are gaining commercial market adoption, offering faster scanner speeds and even higher resolution images than 1.5T MRI scanners.

### *Minimally Invasive Surgical Procedures*

Over the past few decades, one of the most significant medical trends has been the development of minimally invasive surgical methods and techniques. As its name implies, a minimally invasive procedure is a less invasive approach than open surgery. Minimally invasive procedures typically involve use of laparoscopic devices, catheter-based devices or remote-control manipulation of instruments once inside the body. Minimally invasive procedures in the brain have typically been performed using a complex technique known as stereotactic neurosurgery, under which a physician merges pre-operative images and data with specialized surgical instruments to help guide the surgical procedure in the brain.

### **Our Current Products and Product Candidates**

#### *ClearPoint Neuro Intervention System*

##### *General*

Our ClearPoint system is designed to allow minimally invasive procedures in the brain to be performed in a hospital's existing MRI suite. The ClearPoint system provides guidance for the placement and operation of instruments or devices during the planning and operation of neurological procedures performed within the MRI suite using MR imaging. Our ClearPoint system is intended to be used as an integral part of procedures, such as biopsies and the insertion of catheters and electrodes, which have traditionally been performed using stereotactic methods. Our ClearPoint system is intended to be used with both 1.5T and 3T MRI scanners. Our research efforts for our ClearPoint system began in 2003. In June 2010, we received 510(k) clearance from the FDA to market our ClearPoint system in the United States for general neurological interventional procedures. In February 2011, we also obtained CE marking approval for our ClearPoint system. The CE mark is an international symbol of adherence to quality assurance standards and compliance with applicable European Union medical device directives, and it allows us to market the ClearPoint system in the European Union.

The first patient procedure using our ClearPoint system was performed by physicians at the University of California, San Francisco Medical Center in August 2010. As of January 31, 2012, a total of 14 ClearPoint systems have been installed, 13 in the United States and one in Europe. ClearPoint systems are in clinical use in connection with MRI scanners from the three major MRI scanner manufacturers, Siemens, GE Healthcare and Philips Healthcare. Likewise, our ClearPoint system is also in use with the two major interventional MR/OR platforms, which are manufactured by IMRIS and Brainlab.

In April 2011, we entered into a co-development and distribution agreement with Brainlab, a leader in the development of software-driven medical technology that supports targeted, less-invasive patient treatment. Under that agreement, we appointed Brainlab as a distributor of our ClearPoint system products, on a non-exclusive basis, in the United States and Europe. We also agreed to collaborate on the potential integration of our ClearPoint system technologies with Brainlab's own interventional MRI technologies, with particular focus on direct delivery of drugs and other therapeutic agents to targets in the brain under MRI guidance, which we call the MRI-guided neurological drug delivery field of use. For that reason, we appointed Brainlab as our exclusive distributor of ClearPoint system products within the MRI-guided neurological drug delivery field of use.

##### *The Need for Minimally Invasive Neurological Interventions*

Millions of people suffer from neurological diseases including: movement disorders such as Parkinson's disease, essential tremor and dystonia; psychiatric disorders such as major depression, obsessive compulsive disorder and Alzheimer's disease; and brain tumors, such as glioblastoma multiform. The first line of therapy for

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

most of these conditions is systemic administration of drugs. For example, to treat the early stages of Parkinson's disease, a patient is often prescribed a drug called levodopa. Drugs such as levodopa can be effective in the earlier stages of the disease; however, as the disease progresses, systemic drugs may become less effective, and potentially ineffective, in treating the patient. Given the shortcomings of systemic drugs like levodopa, the medical community has focused significant resources to find new non-systemic or "local" therapies to treat these patients.

The development activity in, and the use of, local therapies is growing. For example, drug companies and researchers have identified and are investigating various compounds that are delivered directly into the diseased area of the brain, such as directly into the center of a tumor in the brain. Similarly, the medical community has developed a technique commonly referred to as focal lesioning, under which a special probe is inserted into a target area of the brain and a small area of diseased brain tissue is then destroyed by applying laser energy or radio frequency energy through the tip of the special probe. Physicians perform this procedure to treat disorders such as Parkinson's disease, essential tremor and epilepsy. The medical community has also developed another local therapy known as deep brain stimulation, or DBS. DBS uses mild electrical pulses from an implanted device to stimulate a small target region in the brain. A DBS system looks and operates much like a cardiac pacemaker, except that instead of sending pulses to the heart, it delivers electrical stimulation through the electrodes placed at a precisely targeted area in the brain. The FDA has approved the use of DBS for the treatment of Parkinson's disease and essential tremor. The FDA has also approved the use of DBS for the treatment of dystonia and obsessive compulsive disorder pursuant to humanitarian device exemptions. FDA approval is currently being sought for the use of DBS to treat epilepsy, and DBS is also being investigated as a therapy for treatment-resistant major depression.

These local therapies, among others, involve insertion of a catheter, probe or electrode into a target region of the brain, typically performed as a minimally invasive procedure. However, performing these minimally invasive interventions in the brain presents special challenges, including a need to reach a small therapeutic target often located deep within the brain, which target is often an area as small as a few millimeters in diameter. To reach these targets, the physician must act with precision to avoid damaging adjacent areas that are responsible for important neurological functions, such as memory or speech, or penetrating blood vessels which can lead to a life-threatening hemorrhage. The medical community developed stereotactic neurosurgery to address these obstacles. But, despite years of development and clinical experience, conventional stereotactic procedures remain complicated and time-consuming for many neurological interventions and can be extremely difficult on the patient.

### *Challenges with Conventional Stereotactic Neurosurgical Procedures*

Conventional stereotactic neurosurgical procedures are performed in a standard operating room. With this method, a large, metal stereotactic frame is typically fixed to the patient's skull, using skull pins, to provide a fixed and common coordinate system. After the frame is attached to the patient's skull, the patient is then imaged pre-operatively, often using MRI, in order to obtain images showing both the stereotactic frame axes and the anatomical structures of the patient's brain. These pre-operative images are then loaded into a surgical planning workstation. Surgical planning software is used to identify the neurological target for the procedure, as well as to define a trajectory path from the skull, through the brain tissue, and to the target. The planned trajectory and target location are then calculated in relation to the frame axes and then used to guide the surgery.

Because conventional stereotaxy relies on pre-operative images, and not intra-procedural images, errors in the alignment of the pre-operative images with the patient's brain anatomy can, and often do, occur as a consequence of brain shift, variation in patient hydration, registration errors or misalignment of the frame. As a result, the physician often must undertake additional steps to further refine the process of locating the patient's neurological target. These steps include physiological "mapping" of the brain and require an additional procedural step called microelectrode recording, which is a tedious and time-consuming process during which small probes containing microelectrodes are inserted into the deep brain structures, usually multiple times. As these microelectrode recording probes are passed through brain tissue, they pick up electrical activity. The microelectrode recording system then converts the electrical activity into audible tones. In hearing these various audible tones, a trained neurologist or neurophysiologist can distinguish different regions of the brain. Based on these tones, locations are mapped against the pre-operative images and used to refine and adjust the neurological target as depicted on those pre-operative images. New coordinates are then calculated and a new trajectory is planned. To further confirm locations in the brain, various physiologic responses are induced or monitored with the microelectrodes. These physiological mapping steps require the patient to be awake during the surgery and off medications. Given the procedure's complexity, it is not uncommon for the procedure to last six or more hours.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

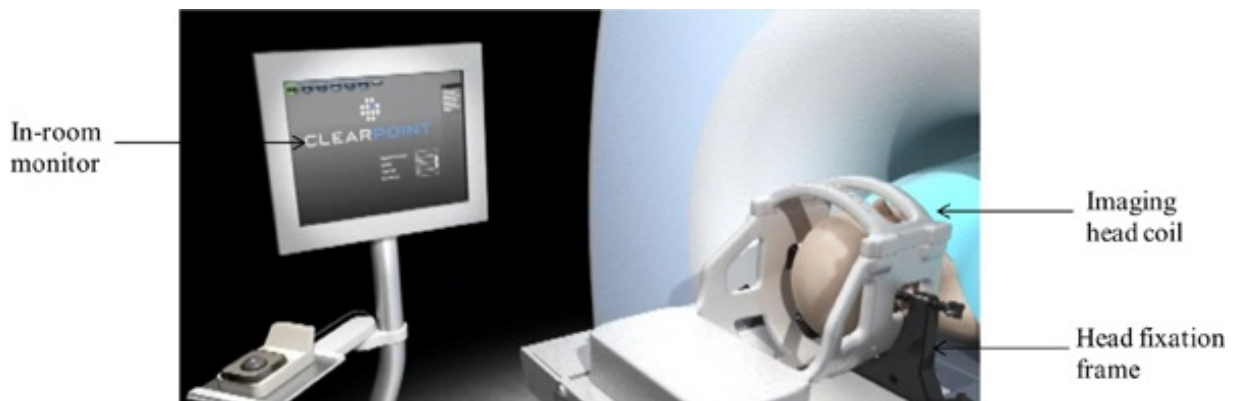
### *Our ClearPoint System Solution*

Instead of relying on the indirect guidance of pre-operative imaging, microelectrode recording and physiological responses from the patient, our ClearPoint system is based on a direct approach, in which a physician is guided by high resolution magnetic resonance imaging during the procedure. By utilizing the direct approach of the ClearPoint system, the patient does not have to be awake and participating in his or her brain surgery. Instead, the patient can be under general anesthesia for the procedure and remain on his or her prescription drug regime. In addition, we believe the design of our ClearPoint system can significantly simplify how stereotactic neurological interventions are performed and can result in shorter procedure times.

A ClearPoint procedure is designed to be performed in a standard hospital-based MRI scanner. Our ClearPoint system is an integrated system comprised of hardware components, disposable components and intuitive, menu-driven software.

*ClearPoint Hardware.* Our hardware components consist primarily of an MR imaging head coil, head fixation frame, computer workstation and in-room monitor. The architecture of our imaging head coil allows for surgical access to the patient while maintaining high quality imaging capability. The head fixation frame is integrated with the head coil and is designed to optimize the placement of the head coil in proximity to the patient's head. For certain MRI scanner platforms, such as the MRI scanners manufactured by Philips Healthcare, our imaging head coil may not be needed. Our ClearPoint system software is installed on a computer workstation networked with an MRI scanner, for which we use a commercially available laptop computer. The in-room monitor allows the physician to view the display of our ClearPoint system workstation from the scanner room while performing the procedure.

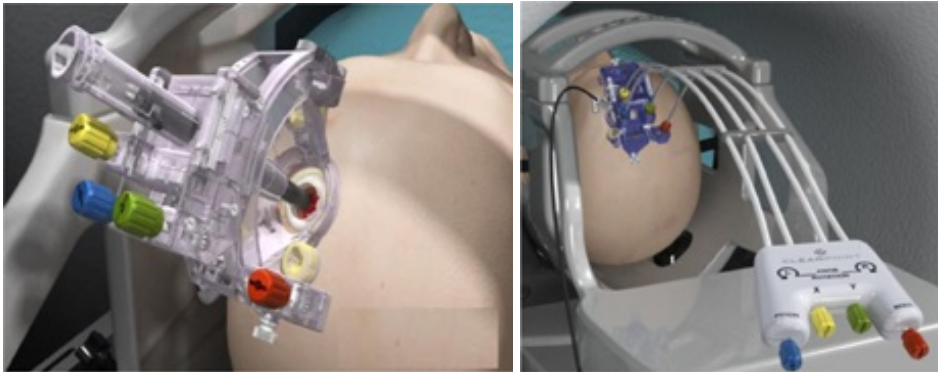
The ClearPoint hardware is shown in the following image.



*ClearPoint Disposables.* The disposable components of our ClearPoint system consist primarily of our SmartFrame trajectory device, a hand controller and related accessories. Our SmartFrame device is an adjustable trajectory frame that attaches to the patient's skull and holds the targeting cannula. The hand controller attaches to our SmartFrame device, and it is used by the physician to adjust the roll, pitch and X and Y orientation of the targeting cannula while the patient is in the MRI scanner. The accessories include all other components necessary to facilitate the MRI-guided neurological procedure, such as our SmartGrid patch, which is an MRI-visible marking grid that enables rapid localization of the entry position into the brain, and our customized surgical draping, which creates a sterile field within the MRI scanner.

The following images show our SmartFrame device attached to the patient's head, as well as the hand controller attached to the SmartFrame device.

## [Table of Contents](#)



*ClearPoint Software.* Our ClearPoint system software guides the physician in surgical planning, device alignment, navigation to the target and procedure monitoring. The software receives standard images from the MRI scanner via a network connection. The software leads the physician through a series of predefined steps, including MR image acquisition, establishment of image orientation landmarks, target identification and selection, trajectory planning, entry point planning and marking, targeting cannula orientation and refinement, and confirmation that the desired anatomical target(s) have been reached. The software uses image segmentation algorithms to help locate and identify our SmartFrame device and its targeting cannula, as well as the anatomical structures of the brain. The software also performs geometric computations to provide the physician with information regarding the positioning of instruments inserted into the patient's brain relative to the target anatomical structures. At the completion of the procedure, the software generates an automated report that includes the key metrics from the procedure.

The following is a sample screenshot of our ClearPoint system software being used to select a trajectory path to a target location in the brain.



*The ClearPoint Procedure.* Our ClearPoint procedure is performed entirely within a standard hospital-based MRI suite. Once placed in the MRI scanner, the patient's head is immobilized in our imaging head coil and integrated head fixation frame with the patient's head accessible to the physician. The physician then places our MRI-visible SmartGrid patch onto the patient's head where the physician expects to enter the skull. The patient is then moved to the center of the scanner and images are taken of the patient's brain that include the target area and our SmartGrid patch. Once the imaging is complete, the images are transferred to our ClearPoint system workstation so that the physician can determine the specific target site within the brain and the optimal trajectory path for the placement of the interventional device. With the trajectory path established, our ClearPoint system software will identify the specific location on our SmartGrid patch that corresponds with where the planned trajectory intersects the skull. The physician will then mark the skull using our custom marking tool. At the site of the mark, the physician will create the burr hole, which is the small hole in the patient's skull through which the interventional device can be inserted into the brain.



---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Our SmartFrame device is then centered and attached over the burr hole. The target and planned trajectory is reconfirmed by the physician using our ClearPoint system workstation. Using the hand controller, the physician adjusts the trajectory of the MRI-visible SmartFrame device to align the instrument with the planned trajectory. During this process, the software estimates a number of turns and direction of turn on each of the hand controller's color coded thumbwheels to align the instrument to the planned trajectory.

Once our SmartFrame device has been aligned to the proper trajectory, the depth dimension is calculated by the software. Immediately before insertion and partway through insertion, images are taken to ensure that the probe is correctly tracking along the planned trajectory. The physician continues advancing the interventional device towards the target site until it "snaps" into place on the SmartFrame device indicating that the interventional device has reached the proper depth. At this time, images are taken at the target site to insure the interventional device is in the proper location relative to the desired target.

### *Regulatory Status*

Our ClearPoint system has a general indication for use. Our 510(k) clearance from the FDA permits us to market and promote our ClearPoint system in the United States for use in general neurological procedures, which includes procedures such as biopsies, catheter insertions and electrode insertions. This is the same general indication for use that applies to other devices that have traditionally been used in the performance of stereotactic neurological procedures. Similar to other conventional stereotaxy-based systems, our ClearPoint system's general neurological indication for use does not reference specific neurological procedures. As with other conventional stereotaxy-based systems, unless and until we receive FDA clearance or approval for use of our ClearPoint system for specific indications, uses in procedures other than general neurological procedures could be considered off-label uses of our ClearPoint system. We are not permitted to promote our system, or train physicians, for off-label uses. However, in their practice of medicine, physicians may lawfully choose to use medical devices for off-label uses. Therefore, similar to other conventional stereotaxy-based systems, a physician may use our ClearPoint system for specific indications that are not included in the FDA-cleared labeling. As they currently do with other conventional stereotaxy-based systems, we expect physicians will use our ClearPoint system in a variety of specific neurological procedures, including DBS electrode placement, direct drug delivery and focal lesioning.

In the European Union, our CE marking approval includes all components of our ClearPoint system, other than our imaging head coil. The CE mark for the ClearPoint system carries the same indication for use as our 510(k) clearance. We have applied for CE marking approval for our imaging head coil, and we expect to obtain that approval in the first quarter of 2012.

In January 2011, we received 510(k) clearance from the FDA for our SmartFlow neuro ventricular cannula. Our SmartFlow cannula, which is compatible with our ClearPoint system, is an MRI-compatible injection and aspiration cannula. It is indicated for use in the injection of Cytarabine, which is a chemotherapy drug, or the removal of cerebrospinal fluid from the ventricles of the brain during an intracranial procedure. The SmartFlow cannula is a disposable device intended for single patient use only and is not intended for implant.

### ***The ClearTrace Cardiac Intervention System***

#### *General*

Our second product platform, the ClearTrace system, is a product candidate still in development. The ClearTrace system is designed to allow catheter-based minimally invasive procedures in the heart to be performed using continuous, intra-procedural MRI guidance.

Catheter-based cardiac interventions performed in a fluoroscopy suite, generally referred to as a Cath Lab or EP Lab, have been the standard of care for the treatment of many cardiac disorders, such as cardiovascular disease. Certain procedures, such as stent placement, are well suited for fluoroscopic imaging because they do not require continuous, detailed visualization of the cardiac tissue. However, other procedures are not well suited for fluoroscopy because of the clinical need for continuous, high resolution imaging of the cardiac anatomy along with the interventional instruments. One example of such a procedure is cardiac ablation to treat cardiac arrhythmias, such as atrial fibrillation. Another example is the precision delivery of stem cells directly into the wall of the heart, which represents a promising therapy being researched for the treatment of heart failure.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

We anticipate that the ClearTrace system will be similar to the conventional Cath Lab or EP Lab, but with two critical distinctions. First, unlike the Cath Lab or EP Lab, we believe the ClearTrace system, once we have completed its development, will provide a continuous, high resolution, four dimensional imaging environment (the fourth dimension being time), which will include detailed visualization of cardiac tissue, along with the cardiac catheters used to deliver the therapy. We believe that this capability is required for the next generation of interventional cardiac therapies. Second, we anticipate that the ClearTrace system will eliminate all radiation exposure for both the patient and physician from the X-ray utilized in current procedures. Under current catheter-based treatments utilizing fluoroscopy, radiation exposure can exceed 45 minutes. We believe that the attributes of the ClearTrace system should position it to be the therapy of choice for cardiac ablation procedures to treat cardiac arrhythmias, including atrial fibrillation, and the ideal platform for delivering future biologic therapies to treat heart failure and other similar cardiac disorders. The ClearTrace system is designed for procedures that initially will be performed using a Siemens 3T MRI scanner.

We began preliminary research for an MRI-guided cardiac ablation procedure shortly following our inception in 1998. As a culmination of our research efforts, in May 2009, we entered into an exclusive co-development agreement with Siemens for the development and commercialization of the hardware and MRI software necessary for the ClearTrace system. Under the terms of this agreement, we are working together with Siemens on the development of the ClearTrace software and the integration of system components. Once product development is completed, we will work together with Siemens on the commercial launch and field support of the ClearTrace system. We believe that our exclusive relationship with Siemens secures an important strategic market position for the ClearTrace system.

### *Challenges with Current Treatments for Atrial Fibrillation*

Cardiac arrhythmia is an abnormal beating of the heart that can result in insufficient blood flow, which may cause dizziness, inadequate function of important organs in the body, stroke and even death. Atrial fibrillation affects over three million people in the United States and approximately 6.7 million people worldwide, making it the most common form of cardiac arrhythmia. Atrial fibrillation is characterized by the irregular fluttering or very rapid beating of the atria resulting from malfunction of the electrical conduction system in the walls of the atria. Atrial fibrillation is a leading cause of stroke among persons 65 years or older and it is associated with increased risk of heart failure and other morbidity.

Most atrial fibrillation treatments are palliative and do not cure atrial fibrillation. The most common are anti-arrhythmic and anticoagulant drugs. However, anti-arrhythmic drug therapy often becomes less effective over time, with approximately half of the patients developing resistance to the drugs. In addition, anti-arrhythmic drugs have potentially severe side effects, including pulmonary fibrosis, impaired liver function, thyroid problems and the development of worse and even life-threatening ventricular arrhythmias.

One highly effective, curative therapy for atrial fibrillation used today is an open-heart operation, commonly known as the surgical “Cox-Maze” procedure, which has reported success rates as high as 96%. During this open heart procedure, the physician makes a series of cuts in a specific “maze-like” formation along the inside walls of the left atrium with a scalpel, and then sutures these cuts back together. The scars create an uninterrupted conduction block containing the chaotic electrical impulses that cause atrial fibrillation, thereby returning the heart to a normal rhythm. The open heart Cox-Maze procedure is usually done in tandem with another open heart procedure, such as a valve replacement or coronary artery bypass, because this operation is traumatic to the patient, very expensive, and typically associated with long hospital stays and a three to six month recovery time.

Because of the effectiveness of the Cox-Maze method, the medical community has worked for years to develop a less invasive approach that generates comparable clinical outcomes. The current minimally invasive approach is performed in the EP Lab with the physician relying upon fluoroscopic imaging to guide a catheter through a blood vessel into the right atrium, puncturing the septum and advancing the catheter into the left atrium of the heart. The physician then delivers energy through the catheter to create lesions and destroy the target tissue. During the procedure, the physician is assisted in guiding and positioning the catheter primarily by fluoroscopic imaging. However, fluoroscopic imaging has significant limitations, namely it does not permit the physician to see the cardiac anatomy and tissue, the location of the catheter in relation to the cardiac tissue, or the intra-procedural creation of the lesions necessary to create the conduction block. Furthermore, the use of fluoroscopy exposes both patient and physician to dangerous radiation for an extended period of time.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Thus far, the medical community has been unsuccessful in replicating the high success rates of the highly invasive Cox-Maze procedure using a minimally-invasive catheter-based procedural approach. Despite the sophistication of the procedures, the success rates of the catheter-based approaches have been disappointing, some as low as 50% to 75%. We believe that the low success rate of the current catheter-based approaches is a result of the physician's inability to see the cardiac tissue during the procedure. Unlike the imaging modalities used in the current catheter-based approach, an MRI-based procedure, such as one performed with the ClearTrace system, allows the physician to visualize a patient's cardiac tissue. With this capability, a physician can, for example, distinguish healthy cardiac tissue from fibrotic tissue and see gaps in the lesion lines. MRI can allow visualization of ablation lesions that are created during the procedure. Because of the unique cardiac tissue visualization and assessment capabilities of MRI, we believe the medical community is advancing towards an MRI-guided approach and we believe that an MRI-guided approach may finally deliver Cox-Maze-like success rates with a minimally invasive catheter-based procedure.

### *The ClearTrace System Solution*

We believe the ClearTrace system will represent a new paradigm in performing cardiac interventions. Similar to our ClearPoint system, the ClearTrace system is designed as an integrated system of hardware components, disposable components and intuitive, menu-driven software.

*ClearTrace Hardware.* The hardware components will be centered around our ClearConnect system, which is an MRI-compatible hardware and cable management system to safely enable MRI-guided cardiac ablation procedures in an MRI scanner.

*ClearTrace Disposables.* The disposable components will include an ablation catheter, mapping catheter, coronary sinus catheter and septal puncture kit. Our ablation catheter will be used to perform MRI-guided delivery of ablative energy to create cardiac lesions. Our mapping catheter will be used for MRI-guided collection of intracardiac electrocardiogram signals and will include analog/digital filtering to enable electrocardiogram collection during scanning. Our coronary sinus catheter will be used to collect additional electrocardiogram signals and to provide cardiac pacing and defibrillation, as needed during the procedure. Our septal puncture kit will consist of a septal puncture needle, a dilator and sheath and will be used to perform an MRI-guided puncture of the septum of the heart to allow movement between the right atrium and left atrium. All catheters and components will be MRI-compatible and tightly integrated with the MRI scanner.

*ClearTrace Software.* The ClearTrace system will include software designed to assist the physician in: surgical planning; creating three dimensional volumes of cardiac chambers; navigating our ClearTrace catheters within the cardiac chambers; visualizing lesions as they are formed; tracking prior lesion locations; evaluating ablated cardiac tissue; and monitoring for possible adverse events. Under our co-development agreement, Siemens is responsible for developing the ClearTrace system software to our specifications. The ClearTrace system software will be integrated with our disposable components.

*The ClearTrace Procedure.* We believe the ClearTrace system will offer a novel, comprehensive solution for the planning, delivering and intra-procedural assessment of catheter-based cardiac interventions. The following discussion outlines what we believe will be the key steps in performing a ClearTrace system procedure to treat atrial fibrillation, as well as expected key ClearTrace system capabilities, subject to the completion of system development and receipt of appropriate regulatory clearance or approval.

A ClearTrace procedure will be performed in a standard, hospital-based 3T Siemens MRI scanner suite. At the start of a ClearTrace procedure, a MRI scan will be performed of the patient's heart and surrounding vasculature. Using the images from the scan, the ClearTrace system software will generate a three dimensional volumetric model of the patient's cardiac chambers that the physician will use as a guide while performing the procedure. Additional MRI images and patient data could be mapped onto the surface of the three dimensional model as needed by the physician. Referencing the three dimensional model and surface mapped image data and using real time MRI scans of the patient's heart, the physician will plan the cardiac ablation procedure.

The ClearTrace coronary sinus catheter then will be advanced through a blood vessel under MRI guidance and placed in the coronary sinus to collect electrocardiogram signals and to provide cardiac pacing and defibrillation, as may be needed during the procedure. The remaining ClearTrace catheters then will be advanced through a blood vessel

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

under MRI guidance into the right atrium of the heart. Using the ClearTrace system plan, the physician will advance the catheters through the targeted site on the septum and into the left atrium. Referencing the ablation plan, and with continuous intra-procedural visualization of the catheters and patient anatomy, the physician will advance the catheters to the site of the first planned ablation. With the ClearTrace ablation catheter in the correct location, the physician will begin applying energy to the tip of the catheter to create a lesion.

During ablation, the ClearTrace system will present intra-procedural MR images that will allow the physician to see the changes in the tissue caused by the ablative energy, which we believe would give the physician visualization capabilities similar to what he or she has in the open heart Cox-Maze procedure. The physician will then repeat the process of creating and visualizing lesions within the left atrium until the ablation plan has been completed. The physician will complete the procedure by taking a final scan to confirm the proper placement of all lesions.

By allowing the physician to see the lesions during the procedure, we believe the physician will be able to make better decisions about where to ablate, what amount of energy to apply and how long to apply the energy. We believe this improved decision making capability will result in improved outcomes and reduced adverse events. In addition to the ability to visualize the changes in the cardiac tissue, we believe the physician will also be able to use a loop catheter to measure electrical signals from the inside surface of the left atrium to further guide and confirm the effectiveness of the ablation process.

### *Other Potential Applications*

We believe the ClearTrace system's unique ability to provide continuous, high resolution imaging of the cardiac anatomy, including the walls of the heart, during an interventional procedure will be valuable in treating other cardiac disorders. For example, we believe the ClearTrace system could serve as an ideal platform for delivering drugs and other therapeutic agents directly into the heart wall. The medical community is developing novel compounds that have the potential to address significant cardiac disorders, such as heart failure. However, some of these compounds must be injected directly into the heart wall with precision placement at the boundary of healthy and diseased tissue. Using the ClearTrace system, we believe a physician will be able to navigate within the heart to the boundary between healthy and diseased tissue, place the catheter tip on the boundary, inject the compound and watch the dispersion of the compound into the heart wall.

### *Regulatory Status*

The ClearTrace system is still under development, and we have not made any filings seeking regulatory approval or clearance for the ClearTrace system in the United States or in any foreign jurisdiction. In the United States, we believe that most components of the ClearTrace system will be Class II medical devices and will fall under the FDA's 510(k) regulatory process. However, the ablation catheter component will be a Class III medical device and will require FDA approval of a premarket approval application, or PMA. We anticipate that the initial market for the ClearTrace system will be the European Union, and we plan to seek CE marking approval for the ClearTrace system. To date, we have been conducting animal studies and other preclinical work with respect to the ClearTrace system. At this time, we are not able to estimate when we will make a filing seeking regulatory approval or clearance for the ClearTrace system.

### **Our Strategy**

Our key objective is to develop and commercialize medical systems to enable minimally invasive surgical procedures to be performed under direct, intra-procedural MRI guidance. Key elements of our strategy to achieve this objective are:

- ***Maximize installation and adoption of our ClearPoint system.*** We are focusing our marketing efforts on key physicians and hospitals to adopt use of our ClearPoint system for general neurological interventional procedures. Working with Brainlab as our distribution partner, our strategy is to convince those physicians that our ClearPoint system offers a better procedural solution for their patients. With the physicians serving as our internal champions, we will continue to work with the physicians to encourage hospitals to install our ClearPoint system in their existing MRI suites. In hospitals where our ClearPoint system has been installed, we will focus on selling our disposable components to generate recurring revenue.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

- ***Continue development of the ClearTrace system.*** We will continue to co-develop the ClearTrace system with Siemens. Together, we will work to generate awareness among leading physicians of the benefits of an MRI-guided approach to cardiac ablation for the treatment of cardiac arrhythmias, such as atrial fibrillation. Upon regulatory approval, we will work with Siemens to promote installation of the MRI software and our hardware components for the ClearTrace system within Siemens' MRI customer base. In hospitals where the ClearTrace system has been installed, we will focus on selling our disposable components to generate recurring revenue.
- ***Build upon our core technologies to continue to develop MRI-based products.*** Our research and development efforts to date have focused on developing novel MRI-related technologies. We have significant intellectual property protection in this particular area. As the field of MRI-guided interventions grows, we intend to develop future enhancements to the ClearPoint and ClearTrace systems, as well as researching opportunities for new products.

### **Licenses and Collaborative Relationships**

In addition to our internally-developed technologies and devices, we have established and intend to continue to pursue licenses and collaborative relationships with medical device companies and academic institutions to further the development and commercialization of our product platforms and our core technologies. Our current licenses and collaborative relationships are discussed below.

#### ***Brainlab***

In April 2011, we entered into a co-development and distribution agreement with Brainlab. Our agreement with Brainlab has a term of five years. Pursuant to the agreement, we and Brainlab will work together to potentially integrate our ClearPoint system technologies with Brainlab's own interventional MRI technologies for application in the MRI-guided neurological drug delivery field of use, subject to appropriate regulatory clearance or approval. Brainlab, at its expense, will explore the integration of our ClearPoint system technologies with Brainlab's interventional MRI technologies for other MRI-guided neurological procedures as well. Brainlab is responsible for obtaining any regulatory clearance or approval necessary to sell any product resulting from the integration of our respective technologies. During the term of the agreement, neither we nor Brainlab may enter into a collaborative arrangement with another party relating to the commercial development, sales or marketing of products in the MRI-guided neurological drug delivery field of use. In addition, Brainlab may not develop, market or sell in the MRI-guided neurological drug delivery field of use any product that performs substantially the same function as or otherwise competes with any of our ClearPoint products, other than products resulting from our co-development activities.

Under the agreement, we also granted Brainlab distribution rights with respect to our ClearPoint system. We appointed Brainlab as an exclusive distributor of ClearPoint products within the MRI-guided neurological drug delivery field of use and as a non-exclusive distributor of ClearPoint products for other MRI-guided neurological procedures. Brainlab's distribution territory includes the United States, the European Union and Canada, although we do not yet have regulatory approval to sell our ClearPoint system in Canada. As our distributor, we will supply products to Brainlab at agreed upon transfer prices. We believe the agreed-upon transfer prices will yield substantially the same financial return per unit as we receive on our own direct sales. As both we and Brainlab will be selling the ClearPoint products outside the MRI-guided neurological drug delivery field of use, our agreement specifies that, to the extent a ClearPoint system is installed at a hospital due to Brainlab's selling efforts, Brainlab will then be the party that sells all ClearPoint disposable products to that hospital.

#### ***Siemens***

In May 2009, we entered into a cooperation and development agreement with Siemens to develop the hardware and MRI software systems for MRI-guided, catheter-based ablation to treat cardiac arrhythmias, such as atrial fibrillation. Under this agreement, Siemens is responsible for developing the software in accordance with our specifications, and we are responsible for developing the catheters and other hardware, other than the MRI scanner and workstation, necessary for the MRI-guided cardiac ablation procedures and for the integration work necessary to combine the software, catheters and other hardware to create the ClearTrace system. The agreement provides for

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

exclusivity for a period of five years following the date of regulatory clearance and/or approval, determined on a country-by-country basis. During the exclusivity period, Siemens may not market or offer software that is intended to work with a third party's catheters to conduct an MRI-guided cardiac ablation procedure, and we may not sell or offer any catheters that are intended to be used with an MRI scanner manufactured by a third party to conduct an MRI-guided cardiac ablation procedure. For two years after the exclusivity period ends, neither we nor Siemens may enter into an agreement or relationship with a third party that excludes or prevents the use of our devices with Siemens' MRI systems, and vice versa, in the field of MRI-guided cardiac ablation procedures. The agreement requires us to pay Siemens up to approximately \$2,500,000 for Siemens' successful development of the software in accordance with our specifications. As of September 30, 2011, we have paid Siemens \$800,000 and, in addition, we have accrued payables of approximately \$574,000. Once the software for the ClearTrace system is commercially available, Siemens will pay to us a fixed amount for each software license sold by Siemens until we recoup our investment. The term of the agreement will expire once (i) all software, catheter and other hardware development and integration work has been successfully completed, (ii) requisite regulatory clearances or approvals have been obtained in at least the United States, Canada and Europe, and (iii) the product has been clinically released in at least the United States, Canada and Europe. Prior to or upon expiration of the term of the cooperation and development agreement, we anticipate entering into a separate sales and marketing agreement with Siemens.

### ***Boston Scientific***

In connection with our research and development efforts for the ClearPoint and ClearTrace systems, we developed technologies that we believe can improve the MRI-safety profile of implantable medical leads. Implantable medical leads are thin, insulated wires that are connected to implantable generators, such as a pacemaker or neurostimulator, and deliver electrical pulses or stimulation to a specific area of the body, such as the heart or the brain. In 2005 and 2008, we entered into agreements with Boston Scientific that contemplate the use of our MRI-safety technologies in Boston Scientific's implantable leads, as further described below.

#### *Background on our MRI-Safety Technologies for Implantable Leads*

It is estimated that between 50% and 75% of patients with an implantable device are expected to need an MRI scan during the lifetime of their devices. However, implantable medical leads are susceptible to heating in the MRI environment. An MRI scanner transmits radio frequency energy during the scanning process. Because the implantable lead contains metallic wire, which acts like an antenna, some of the radio frequency energy transmitted by the MRI scanner is absorbed by the lead. This could cause the lead to heat. The extent to which an implantable lead may heat can depend on many factors, such as the lead itself, the position of the patient in the MRI scanner, the clinical scanning sequence used and the location and trajectory of the lead in the patient. Scientific studies have shown that implantable leads may heat during an MRI scan to temperatures that can burn or destroy tissue. If that happens in the heart or brain, the patient could suffer a stroke, paralysis or even death. As a result, people with active implantable devices generally are prohibited from undergoing an MRI scan.

We believe our technologies address this issue by maintaining lead temperatures well within safe levels during an MRI scan. Current safety standards for active implantable medical devices require that MRI-related heating may not exceed one degree Celsius in the brain and two degrees Celsius in the heart. Our testing has shown that our technologies limit lead heating to less than one degree Celsius. Therefore, we believe our MRI-safety technologies will permit a patient with an implantable medical device to undergo an MRI scan. Manufacturers' studies have shown that cardiologists identify "MRI compatibility" as one of the main features that would drive a change in brand preference.

#### *Neuromodulation Agreements*

In December 2005, we entered into a development agreement and license agreement with Boston Scientific in the neuromodulation field:

*System and Lead Development and Transfer Agreement.* The development agreement relates to the design and development of MRI-compatible and MRI-safe implantable leads for neuromodulation applications, such as implantable DBS leads. Under the development agreement, we could receive up to \$800,000 in future milestone-based payments associated with successful development and regulatory approval of the leads. The development agreement provides that if the milestones are not completed by December 31, 2012, and the failure to achieve the milestones was not the result of Boston Scientific's failure to cooperate with us in the pursuit of the milestones, we are required to repay Boston Scientific certain amounts, including any milestone payments previously paid to us by Boston Scientific under this agreement and any patent prosecution costs incurred by Boston Scientific with respect to the intellectual property licensed to Boston Scientific pursuant to the technology license agreement described below. As of December 31, 2011, the potential obligation to Boston Scientific was approximately \$750,000, plus costs incurred by Boston Scientific in prosecuting the licensed intellectual property. However, Boston Scientific has assumed responsibility for the neuromodulation lead development efforts under this agreement. Given that Boston Scientific is wholly responsible for the pace and progress of the development efforts, we do not believe we will have

any repayment obligation to Boston Scientific in the event the development milestones are not completed by December 31, 2012.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

*Technology License Agreement.* Under the license agreement, we granted Boston Scientific an exclusive worldwide license with respect to certain of our owned or licensed intellectual property in the neuromodulation field to make, use, import, lease and sell neuro-related leads, neuro-related lead extensions, and neuro-related lead-type devices, such as implantable pulse generators. The license included a sublicense of applicable intellectual property that we licensed from The Johns Hopkins University, as further described below. Boston Scientific has agreed to pay us royalties on net sales of products that are covered by a licensed patent; however, Boston Scientific has no obligation to include the licensed intellectual property in its products or product candidates. Pursuant to the development agreement described above, Boston Scientific is responsible for patent prosecution of the licensed intellectual property and the payment of costs associated with patent prosecution.

### *Implantable Cardiac Agreements*

In March 2008, we entered into a development agreement and license agreement with Boston Scientific in the field of implantable medical leads for cardiac applications.

*Development Agreement.* Under the development agreement, we are working with Boston Scientific to assess the feasibility of and, upon successful completion of feasibility studies, to design and develop different types of MRI-compatible, MRI-safe implantable cardiac rhythm management leads. Under the terms of the agreement, we could receive up to \$20,000,000 in future milestone-based payments associated with successful development activities under the agreement as well as regulatory approval of the different implantable lead types. No earned milestone payments will be made unless and until the applicable lead is covered by an issued patent licensed to Boston Scientific pursuant to the technology license agreement described below. The development agreement is scheduled to expire upon FDA approval of a design for each different implantable lead type. The agreement provides Boston Scientific with a one-time option, which must be exercised within 60 days after successful completion of the first lead feasibility study, to cease further development and to terminate the development agreement. We are in discussions with Boston Scientific regarding whether the first lead feasibility study has been successfully completed.

*Technology License Agreement.* Under the license agreement, we granted Boston Scientific an exclusive worldwide license with respect to certain of our owned or licensed intellectual property in the field of implantable medical leads for cardiac applications to make, have made, use, promote, market, import, distribute, lease, sell, offer for sale and commercialize products in that particular field of use. The license included a sublicense of applicable intellectual property that we licensed from The Johns Hopkins University. We received licensing fees of \$13,000,000 in 2008. Boston Scientific has also agreed to pay us royalties on net sales of products that are covered by a licensed patent; however, Boston Scientific has no obligation to include our licensed intellectual property in its products or product candidates. Boston Scientific is responsible for patent prosecution of the licensed intellectual property and the payment of costs associated with patent prosecution. In the event it is determined that the first lead feasibility study under the development agreement described above has not been successfully completed, Boston Scientific will still have its one-time option to terminate the development agreement. Under those circumstances, if Boston Scientific subsequently elects to exercise its termination option, the license we granted Boston Scientific will automatically become non-exclusive with respect to some intellectual property, other intellectual property will be removed from the scope of the license and revert to us, and Boston Scientific will not be obligated to pay us future royalties or sublicense revenues based on sales of products covered by any issued patent that remains subject to the non-exclusive license.

### *Regulatory*

Boston Scientific is responsible for making any regulatory filings with respect to its products that incorporate our MRI-safety technologies. To date, no such regulatory filing has been made with the FDA or any foreign authority. Boston Scientific will control the timing and manner of any regulatory filing, and it will be responsible for the costs associated with any regulatory filing. We do not anticipate that we will be able to influence the process or timing in any meaningful way. In the United States, we believe that any Boston Scientific product incorporating our MRI-safety technologies will be a Class III medical device and require a PMA submission.

### *The University of Utah*

In July 2007, we entered into a research agreement with The University of Utah, or Utah. Under the agreement, Utah personnel are conducting research activities and experiments to develop knowledge, techniques, methods and technologies related to MRI-guided cardiac ablation, including a specific focus on MRI-guided cardiac ablation to treat atrial fibrillation. Those research activities are being performed through Utah's Comprehensive Arrhythmia Research and Management (CARMA) Center, the mission of which is to redefine the diagnosis and management of atrial fibrillation through an interdisciplinary program of basic and clinical research focused on the understanding, diagnosis, and clinical treatment of atrial fibrillation. The CARMA Center has brought together multiple disciplines in cardiology, advanced MR imaging, image processing and biomedical research, and we believe the CARMA Center is on the forefront of using MRI in the management



and treatment of patients suffering from atrial fibrillation. Pursuant our agreement, Utah granted us a non-exclusive, worldwide license to any intellectual property created or conceived by Utah personnel in the performance of the research. In addition, we also received the first option to license exclusively any such intellectual property. Our agreement with Utah will terminate March 31, 2012, unless we and Utah agree to extend the term.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### *The Johns Hopkins University*

We have in place five exclusive license agreements with Johns Hopkins. For additional information regarding these licenses, see “Business–Intellectual Property.”

### **Sales and Marketing**

Commercializing our ClearPoint system involves marketing:

- to physicians, who care for patients suffering from neurological disorders, including neurosurgeons, who perform the neurological procedures, and neurologists, who interact with patients prior to and following the therapy and who refer patients to therapy;
- to hospitals involved in the treatment of neurological disorders and the opinion leaders at these hospitals; and
- to patients who suffer from neurological disorders.

There are approximately 3,500 neurosurgeons in the United States. Similar to many fields of medicine, some neurosurgeons elect to focus on a particular specialty within the neurological field. For example, some neurosurgeons focus their practice on spine surgeries, others more on open craniotomy surgeries and others more on minimally invasive approaches, such as functional neurosurgery. We believe our ClearPoint system may be most applicable to those functional neurosurgeons, of whom there are approximately 300 in the United States, but we also market our ClearPoint system to other neurosurgeons. We believe that our ClearPoint system represents an attractive platform for a neurosurgery team within a hospital to perform various general neurological procedures.

Our business model for the ClearPoint system is focused on producing high margin revenue from sales of the disposable components. Given that focus on disposable product sales, we sell our reusable components at lower margins in order to secure installations of our system within hospitals. In addition, we may make the reusable ClearPoint components available to a hospital by loaning the equipment. Our disposable and reusable ClearPoint products are tightly integrated, which allows us to leverage each new installation of a system to generate recurring sales of our disposable products. We believe that our intellectual property rights associated with our disposable products, coupled with the tight integration between the reusable components and the disposable products, are sufficient to protect our interests. As of January 31, 2012, 14 ClearPoint systems have been installed, which includes seven systems we provided to hospitals under our loan program, five systems we sold, and two systems we installed at hospitals pursuant to the terms of research or clinical trial agreements. As of January 31, 2012, we also had agreements to provide loaned systems to four additional hospitals, but those systems have not yet been installed.

Presently, our sales and marketing efforts for our ClearPoint system are being coordinated primarily by our Vice President, Sales, our Vice President, Product Management and our two Clinical Engineering Managers, one of whom is located on the east coast of the United States and the other of whom is located on the west coast of the United States. We expect to continue building a small, highly focused sales force to market our ClearPoint system products in the United States. In addition, our distribution relationship with Brainlab significantly expands our sales and marketing capabilities for the ClearPoint system, both in the United States and in Europe.

Given the stage of development of the ClearTrace system, we have not developed a sales and marketing plan to commercialize ClearTrace either inside or outside the United States.

### **Research and Development**

Continued innovation through research and development is critical to our future success. As of January 31, 2012, our research and development team, which is based primarily in our Irvine, California facility, consisted of eight employees. We have assembled an experienced team with recognized expertise in both the development of medical devices and advanced MRI technologies, including interventional MRI microcoils and catheters. We believe that our current research and development team is sufficient for our current needs; however, we may increase the size of our team depending on the progress of our ongoing research and development efforts.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Our principal research and development goals are:

- to complete development of the ClearTrace system in cooperation with Siemens;
- to continue to enhance our ClearPoint system; and
- to provide technical support and expertise in the area of MRI safety to Boston Scientific under our development and license agreements.

We have historically spent a significant portion of our capital resources on research and development. Our research and development expenses were approximately \$4,258,000, \$6,068,000 and \$5,681,000 for the years ended December 31, 2008, 2009 and 2010, respectively. Our research and development expenses were approximately \$3,134,000 for the nine months ended September 30, 2011.

### **Manufacturing and Assembly**

Our ClearPoint system includes off-the-shelf components, custom-made components produced to our proprietary specifications by various third parties and components that we assemble in our Irvine, California facility. We use third parties to manufacture these components to utilize their individual expertise, minimize our capital investment and help control costs. We purchase most custom-made components of our ClearPoint system from a single source due to quality considerations, lower costs and constraints resulting from regulatory requirements; however, we believe alternative sources are available, if needed. Generally, we purchase our components through purchase orders and do not have long-term contracts with most of our suppliers.

Our Irvine, California facility is structured to complete component processing, final assembly, packaging and distribution activities for our ClearPoint system. The assembly process is performed in a controlled environment as required by applicable regulation for medical device assembly. Our operations are subject to extensive regulation by the FDA under its Quality System Regulation, or QSR, which requires that manufacturers have a quality management system for the design and production of medical devices. In addition, to the extent we conduct business outside the United States, we are subject to international regulatory requirements.

Our Irvine, California facility is FDA-registered, and we believe it is compliant with the FDA's QSR. We are also certified to ISO standard 13485. We have instituted a quality management system, under which we have established policies and procedures that control and direct our operations with respect to design, procurement, manufacture, inspection, testing, installation, data analysis, training and marketing. We review and internally audit our compliance with these policies and procedures, which provides a means for continued evaluation and improvement. As required by our quality management system, we undertake an assessment and qualification process for each third-party manufacturer or supplier that we use. Typically, our third-party manufacturers and suppliers are certified to ISO standard 9001 and/or 13485. We also periodically perform audit procedures on our third-party manufacturers and suppliers to monitor their activities for compliance with our quality management system. Our facility and the facilities of the third-party manufacturers and suppliers we use are subject to periodic inspections by regulatory authorities, including the FDA and other governmental agencies.

### **Intellectual Property**

We believe that in order to maintain a competitive advantage in the marketplace, we must develop and maintain the proprietary aspects of our technologies. We rely on a combination of patent, trademark, trade secret, copyright and other intellectual property rights and measures to protect our intellectual property.

Our patent portfolio includes rights to patents and patent applications that we own, whether wholly-owned or co-owned, or license from others. We seek patent protection in the United States and internationally for our products and technologies where and when we believe it is appropriate. United States patents are granted generally for a term of 20 years from the earliest effective priority date of the patent application. The actual protection afforded by a foreign patent, which can vary from country to country, depends on the type of patent, the scope of its claims and the availability of legal remedies in the country.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

We also rely on other forms of intellectual property rights and measures, including trade secrets and nondisclosure agreements, to maintain and protect proprietary aspects of our products and technologies. We require our employees and consultants to execute confidentiality agreements in connection with their employment or consulting relationships with us. We also require our employees and consultants to disclose and assign to us all inventions conceived during the term of their employment or engagement while using our property or which relate to our business.

### ***Patents and Patent Applications***

We have a significant intellectual property portfolio in the field of MRI-guided interventions. As of January 31, 2012, our portfolio included 63 patents and 113 patent applications, both United States and foreign, which we wholly-own, co-own or have licensed.

#### ***Owned Patents and Patent Applications***

As of January 31, 2012, we wholly owned nine issued United States patents (including one design patent), 27 pending United States patent applications (including three provisional applications), seven issued foreign patent and 42 pending foreign patent applications (including one Patent Cooperation Treaty application). In addition, as of January 31, 2012, we co-owned with third-parties a total of seven issued United States patents, eight pending United States patent applications, 11 issued foreign patents and 19 pending foreign patent applications. Our owned, issued patents expire at various dates beginning in 2020.

Among our co-owned patents and patent applications, as of January 31, 2012, four issued United States patents, 10 issued foreign patents and one pending foreign patent application were co-owned by us and The Johns Hopkins University, two issued United States patents, eight pending United States patent applications, one issued foreign patent and 17 pending foreign patent applications were co-owned by us and Boston Scientific, and one issued United States patent and one pending foreign patent application were co-owned by us and other third parties.

We have licensing and cross-licensing arrangements in place with Boston Scientific with respect to the patent and patent applications we co-own with them. As a result of those arrangements, we have exclusive rights to all fields outside neuromodulation and implantable medical leads for cardiac applications, and we have licensed the fields of neuromodulation and implantable medical leads for cardiac applications to Boston Scientific.

Pursuant to our licensing and development arrangements with Boston Scientific, we may be required to assign Boston Scientific title to the patents and patent applications that we own and that we license to Boston Scientific. This includes patents and patent applications that we wholly own, as well as patents and patent applications that we co-own with Boston Scientific and others. As of January 31, 2012, our licensing arrangements with Boston Scientific included six wholly owned issued United States patents, three wholly owned pending United States patent applications, seven wholly owned issued foreign patents, seven wholly owned pending foreign patent applications, seven co-owned issued United States patents, eight co-owned pending United States patent applications, 11 co-owned issued foreign patents and 19 co-owned pending foreign patent applications. During 2009, Boston Scientific loaned us \$3,500,000 pursuant to the terms of three convertible promissory notes. While those loans remain outstanding, we must meet certain net working capital targets, be current on our payroll obligations, and not suffer an event of default under any indebtedness for borrowed money. If we fail to meet those requirements, we will be required to assign the patents and patent applications to Boston Scientific. However, upon any such assignment to Boston Scientific, Boston Scientific will grant us an exclusive, royalty-free, perpetual worldwide license to the same patents and patent applications in all fields of use outside neuromodulation and implantable medical leads for cardiac applications.

#### ***Patents and Patent Applications Licensed from Third-Parties***

As of January 31, 2012, we had licensed rights to 14 United States and 15 foreign third-party issued patents, and we had licensed rights to six United States and 11 foreign third-party pending patent applications. Our licensed, issued patents expire at various dates beginning in 2015.

### ***License Arrangements***

Our license arrangements are discussed below. The underlying agreements are filed as exhibits to this registration statement.

#### ***License Arrangements with The Johns Hopkins University***

Our principal licensing arrangement is with Johns Hopkins. Shortly following our formation in 1998, we entered into a license agreement with Johns Hopkins pursuant to which we obtained an exclusive, worldwide license to a number of

technologies owned by Johns Hopkins relating to devices, systems and methods for performing MRI-guided interventions, such as MRI-guided cardiac ablation procedures. The field of use for this exclusive license covers diagnostic or therapeutic methods, processes or devices using an intravascular, intralumen or intratissue miniature magnetic resonance coil detection probe. We are obligated to pay Johns Hopkins an annual maintenance fee, and we are also obligated to pay a royalty to Johns Hopkins based on the sale of products or provision of

---

## Table of Contents

services covered by a licensed patent. To the extent we sublicense any licensed intellectual property to a third-party, we agreed to pay Johns Hopkins a percentage of revenue we receive as a result of the sublicense. Under our license agreements with Boston Scientific, we sublicensed intellectual property that is licensed from Johns Hopkins. Therefore, we are obligated to pay Johns Hopkins a percentage of any revenue we receive from sales by Boston Scientific of products covered by a sublicensed patent. This license agreement with Johns Hopkins will terminate upon the expiration of the last to expire of the licensed patents.

In December 2006, we entered into a second license agreement with Johns Hopkins under which we obtained an exclusive, worldwide license to certain MRI-safety technologies owned by Johns Hopkins. Under the agreement, we are obligated to pay a royalty to Johns Hopkins based on the sale of products or provision of services covered by a licensed patent, subject to a minimum annual payment. Likewise, to the extent we sublicense any intellectual property to a third party, we agreed to pay Johns Hopkins a percentage of revenue we receive as a result of the sublicense. Under our license agreements with Boston Scientific, we sublicensed intellectual property that is licensed from Johns Hopkins. Therefore, we are obligated to pay Johns Hopkins a percentage of any revenue we receive from sales by Boston Scientific of products covered by a sublicensed patent. This license agreement with Johns Hopkins will terminate upon the expiration of the last to expire of the licensed patents.

We entered into three additional exclusive license agreements with Johns Hopkins in June 2008 as described below. Our development efforts with respect to the technologies we licensed under those agreements are at an early stage.

- Under the first agreement, we obtained an exclusive, worldwide license to certain catheter technology owned by Johns Hopkins. Under this agreement, we are obligated to pay a royalty to Johns Hopkins based on the sale of products or provision of services incorporating the licensed technology and a license fee. Likewise, to the extent we sublicense any licensed technology to a third party, we agreed to pay Johns Hopkins a percentage of revenue we receive as a result of a sublicense of the licensed technology. This license agreement with Johns Hopkins will terminate upon the expiration of the last licensed patent.
- Under the second agreement, we obtained an exclusive, worldwide license to certain technology owned by Johns Hopkins relating to catheter-based MRI probes. Under this agreement, we are obligated to pay a royalty to Johns Hopkins based on the sale of products or provision of services incorporating the licensed technology and a contingent license fee in the event a United States patent issues for the licensed technology. Likewise, to the extent we sublicense any licensed technology to a third party, we agreed to pay Johns Hopkins a percentage of revenue we receive as a result of a sublicense of the licensed technology. This license agreement with Johns Hopkins will terminate upon the expiration of the last licensed patent or, if no patent issues, on June 30, 2028. In addition, Johns Hopkins has the option to terminate the license in the event a commercial sale of a licensed product or a licensed service does not occur by June 30, 2012. We do not expect to have a commercial sale of a licensed product or a licensed service by that date. We will discuss with Johns Hopkins the removal of that termination clause, or an extension of the stated time period, if necessary.
- Under the third agreement, we obtained an exclusive, worldwide license to certain technology owned by Johns Hopkins to measure the amount of radio frequency absorption in the human body during an MRI scan. Under this agreement, we are obligated to pay a royalty to Johns Hopkins based on the sale of products or provision of services incorporating the licensed technology. Likewise, to the extent we sublicense any licensed technology to a third party, we agreed to pay Johns Hopkins a percentage of revenue we receive as a result of a sublicense of the licensed technology. This license agreement with Johns Hopkins will terminate upon the expiration of the last licensed patent or, if no patent issues, on June 30, 2028.

### *License Arrangements with Cedara Software Corp.*

In July 2007, we entered into a master service and license agreement with Cedara Software Corp. (d/b/a Merge OEM), or Cedara, for Cedara to develop on our behalf, based on our detailed specifications, a customized software solution for our ClearPoint system. Cedara is in the business of providing software development and engineering services on a contract basis to a number of companies. In developing our ClearPoint system software, Cedara

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

utilized certain of its own pre-existing software code. Under our agreement with Cedara, we received a non-exclusive, worldwide license to that code as an integrated component of our ClearPoint system software. In return, we agreed to pay Cedara a license fee for each copy of our ClearPoint system software that we distribute. Except for Cedara's pre-existing software code, the work performed by Cedara was a "work-made-for-hire" and we exclusively own our ClearPoint system software. The agreement provides for annual minimum licensing fees. Our license from Cedara continues through July 2015, absent a mutual extension of the license term. If necessary, we could replace the licensed Cedara code.

### *License Arrangements with the National Institutes of Health*

In April 2009, we entered into a patent license agreement with the National Institutes of Health, or NIH, that covers techniques for three dimensional renderings of the patient's anatomy from MRI data in real time. The techniques underlying this patent may be used in the development of the ClearTrace system. Under the terms of this agreement, we have a non-exclusive license to a pending United States patent application within the field of devices and systems for MRI-guided medical procedures. Our licensed territory includes Australia, Canada, China, Europe, Israel, Japan and the United States, although there is no patent or patent application pending for the licensed intellectual property outside the United States. Pursuant to this agreement, we are obligated to make royalty payments to NIH based on the sale of products and the practice of processes covered by the licensed intellectual property, whether by us or any sublicensee. In addition, NIH is entitled to receive a single milestone payment in the event we receive a regulatory clearance or approval of a product or process covered by the licensed intellectual property.

## **Competition**

### *General*

The length of time required for products to be developed and to receive regulatory and, in some cases, reimbursement clearance or approval is an important competitive factor. However, even if we are successful in obtaining regulatory clearances or approvals, the medical device industry is characterized by rapid and significant technological change. Thus, the development by others of new treatment methods, including novel drugs, medical devices or surgical techniques could render our product candidates non-competitive or obsolete. As a result, product development involves a high degree of risk and there can be no assurance that our current or new product development efforts will result in any commercially successful products.

### *ClearPoint System*

Our success depends on convincing hospitals, neurosurgeons, neurologists and patients to utilize our ClearPoint system. Currently, we are not aware of any other company that offers a direct MRI-guided stereotactic system for neurological interventions, although two companies, Monteris Medical Inc. and Visualase, Inc., do offer devices for laser ablation under direct MRI guidance. However, companies such as Brainlab, Elekta AB, FHC Inc. and Medtronic, Inc. offer instruments and systems for use in conventional stereotactic neurological procedures, such as surgical navigation workstations and frame-based and frameless stereotactic systems, and these instruments and systems are competitive with our ClearPoint system. Additionally, we could also face competition from other medical device and pharmaceutical companies that have the technology, experience and capital resources to develop alternative therapy methods, including MRI-guided technologies. Many of our competitors have substantially greater financial, manufacturing, marketing and technical resources than we have.

### *ClearTrace System*

Our success depends on convincing hospitals, physicians and patients to utilize the ClearTrace system for performing cardiac ablation procedures. While we are not aware of any companies that currently offer a direct MRI-guided cardiac ablation system, companies such as Imricor Medical Systems, Inc. and Philips Healthcare are in the process of developing such a system. We are not aware of any potential competitive advantages or disadvantages relative to any such system under development; however, if any of these companies develops, obtains regulatory clearance or approval and achieves commercial success for a direct MRI-guided cardiac ablation system, the ClearTrace system could be rendered non-competitive or obsolete.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

We also will face competition from companies who are engaged in the development and marketing of conventional catheter-based cardiac ablation systems and devices. These products include mapping systems using contact mapping, single-point spatial mapping and non-contact, multi-site electrical mapping technologies and ablation systems using radio frequency, ultrasound, laser and cryoablation technologies. These products evolve rapidly, and their manufacturers are constantly attempting to make them easier to use or more efficacious in performing procedures. Today, the vast majority of minimally invasive catheter-based cardiac ablation procedures are performed with these products. Because these products are currently in use while the ClearTrace system remains under development, physician preferences will have to shift for the ClearTrace system to gain market acceptance. We believe that the primary factors which will drive physician preference will be the relative success rates and ease of the procedure for physicians with respect to the ClearTrace system compared to the alternative technologies available.

We are aware of two companies, Hansen Medical, Inc. and Stereotaxis, Inc., which market systems to remotely control catheters during interventional cardiac ablation and other procedures using either robotic or magnetic steering. The nature of these systems potentially could provide better control over the catheter compared to manual manipulation by the physician; however, these systems do not provide the physician with detailed intra-procedural visualization of the cardiac tissue. Also, other manufacturers are attempting to market devices that access the exterior of the heart wall through an endoscopic surgical technique called thoracoscopy to treat atrial fibrillation. Because this procedure was developed recently, the clinical advantages and disadvantages of this approach compared to a catheter-based approach inside the heart have not been established. Therefore, we are not aware of any competitive advantages or disadvantages of this procedure relative to the anticipated ClearTrace system procedure.

Additionally, we will face competition from large companies who are engaged in the development and marketing of products for other treatments of cardiac arrhythmias, such as atrial fibrillation. Their products include drugs, implantable devices, such as implantable defibrillators and pacemakers, and the devices used in open-heart surgery. While both current drug therapy and implantable cardiac devices can be effective in treating the symptoms of atrial fibrillation, they do not provide a cure for the underlying disease. Open-heart surgery, such as the Cox-Maze procedure, can provide a cure for atrial fibrillation and reported success rates have been very high; however, it is an invasive surgical procedure that is traumatic to the patient, very expensive and typically associated with long hospital stays and recovery times.

Many of our potential competitors have an established presence in the field of cardiac electrophysiology, including cardiac ablation, such as Biosense Webster Inc., a division of Johnson & Johnson, Boston Scientific, Medtronic, Inc. and St. Jude Medical, Inc. These potential competitors have substantially greater financial and other resources than we do, including larger research and development staffs and more experience and greater capabilities in conducting research and development activities, testing products in clinical trials, obtaining regulatory clearances or approvals, and manufacturing, marketing and distributing products.

### **Regulatory Requirements of the United States Food and Drug Administration**

Our research, development and clinical programs, as well as our manufacturing and marketing operations, are subject to extensive regulation in the United States and other countries. Most notably, all of our products sold in the United States are subject to regulation as medical devices under the federal Food Drug and Cosmetic Act, as implemented and enforced by the FDA. The FDA governs the following activities that we perform or that are performed on our behalf, to ensure that the medical products we manufacture, promote and distribute domestically or exported internationally are safe and effective for their intended uses:

- product design, preclinical and clinical development and manufacture;
- product premarket clearance and approval;
- product safety, testing, labeling and storage;
- record keeping procedures;



---

## [Table of Contents](#)

- product marketing, sales and distribution; and
- post-marketing surveillance, complaint handling, medical device reporting, reporting of deaths, serious injuries or device malfunctions and repair or recall of products.

### ***FDA Premarket Clearance and Approval Requirements***

Unless an exemption applies, each medical device we wish to commercially distribute in the United States will require either premarket notification, or 510(k) clearance, or approval of a premarket approval application, or PMA, from the FDA. The FDA classifies medical devices into one of three classes. Class I devices, considered to have the lowest risk, are those for which safety and effectiveness can be assured by adherence to the FDA's general regulatory controls for medical devices, which include compliance with the applicable portions of the FDA's QSR, facility registration and product listing, reporting of adverse medical events, and appropriate, truthful and non-misleading labeling, advertising, and promotional materials (General Controls). Class II devices are subject to the FDA's General Controls, and any other special controls as deemed necessary by the FDA to ensure the safety and effectiveness of the device (Special Controls). Manufacturers of most Class II and some Class I devices are required to submit to the FDA a premarket notification under Section 510(k) of the FDCA requesting permission to commercially distribute the device. This process is generally known as 510(k) clearance. Devices deemed by the FDA to pose the greatest risks, such as life-sustaining, life-supporting or implantable devices, or devices that have a new intended use, or use advanced technology that is not substantially equivalent to that of a legally marketed device, are placed in Class III, requiring approval of a PMA.

### ***510(k) Clearance Pathway***

When a 510(k) clearance is required, we will be required to submit a 510(k) application demonstrating that our proposed device is substantially equivalent to a previously cleared 510(k) device or a device that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976 for which the FDA has not yet called for the submission of PMAs. By regulation, the FDA is required to clear or deny a 510(k) premarket notification within 90 days of submission of the application. As a practical matter, clearance may take longer. The FDA may require further information, including clinical data, to make a determination regarding substantial equivalence.

Once filed, the FDA has 90 days in which to review the 510(k) application and respond. Typically, the FDA's response after reviewing a 510(k) application is a request for additional data or clarification. Depending on the complexity of the application and the amount of data required, the process may be lengthened by several months or more. If additional data, including clinical data, are needed to support our claims, the 510(k) application process may be significantly lengthened.

If the FDA issues an order declaring the device to be Not Substantially Equivalent, or NSE, the device is placed into a Class III or PMA category. At that time, a company can request a de novo classification of the product. De novo generally applies where there is no predicate device and the FDA believes the device is sufficiently safe so that no PMA should be required. The request must be in writing and sent within 30 days from the receipt of the NSE determination. The request should include a description of the device, labeling for the device, reasons for the recommended classification and information to support the recommendation. The de novo process has a 60 day review period. If the FDA classifies the device into Class II, a company will then receive an approval order to market the device. This device type can then be used as a predicate device for future 510(k) submissions. However, if the FDA subsequently determines that the device will remain in the Class III category, the device cannot be marketed until the company has obtained an approved PMA. If we are required to follow a de novo process, an additional 60 to 90 days or more will be added on to the original 90 days required for the initial 510(k) review.

Any modification to a 510(k)-cleared device that would constitute a major change in its intended use, or any change that could significantly affect the safety or effectiveness of the device, requires a new 510(k) clearance and may even, in some circumstances, require a PMA, if the change raises complex or novel scientific issues or the product has a new intended use. The FDA requires every manufacturer to make the determination regarding the need for a new 510(k) submission in the first instance, but the FDA may review any manufacturer's decision. If the FDA were to disagree with any of our determinations that changes did not require a new 510(k) submission, it could require us to cease marketing and distribution and/or recall the modified device until 510(k) clearance or PMA

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

approval is obtained. If the FDA requires us to seek 510(k) clearance or PMA approval for any modifications, we may be required to cease marketing and/or recall the modified device, if already in distribution, until 510(k) clearance or PMA approval is obtained and we could be subject to significant regulatory fines or penalties.

The FDA continues its efforts to modernize its 510(k) process. In January 2011, the FDA announced an action plan that included 25 specific actions to improve the predictability, consistency and transparency of the 510(k) process. Although some of these specific actions have already been undertaken, the FDA continues to move forward on its action plan. As part of its efforts, in 2009, the FDA commissioned the Institute of Medicine (IOM) to report on the 510(k) approval process. In July 2011, the Institute of Medicine, which had previously been commissioned by the FDA to review the 510(k) process, released its report, in which the Institute of Medicine recommended, among other things, that the FDA forgo modifying the 510(k) process and, instead, eliminate the 510(k) process in favor of a new regulatory review framework. Although the FDA has indicated that the 510(k) process should not be eliminated, the FDA's continued modification of the 510(k) process, together with the Institute of Medicine's report, has created some regulatory uncertainty for the medical device industry, particularly as it relates to the time within which the FDA will conduct and complete its review of new applications.

### ***PMA Approval Pathway***

A PMA must be submitted to the FDA if the device cannot be cleared through the 510(k) process, or is not otherwise exempt from the FDA's premarket clearance and approval requirements. A PMA must generally be supported by extensive data, including, but not limited to, technical, preclinical, clinical trials, manufacturing and labeling, to demonstrate to the FDA's satisfaction the safety and effectiveness of the device for its intended use. During the review period, the FDA will typically request additional information or clarification of the information already provided. Also, an advisory panel of experts from outside the FDA may be convened to review and evaluate the application and provide recommendations to the FDA as to the approvability of the device. The FDA may or may not accept the panel's recommendation. In addition, the FDA will generally conduct a pre-approval inspection of our or our third-party manufacturers' or suppliers' manufacturing facility or facilities to ensure compliance with the QSR. Once a PMA is approved, the FDA may require that certain conditions of approval, such as conducting a post market clinical trial, be met.

New PMAs or PMA supplements are required for modifications that affect the safety or effectiveness of the device, including, for example, certain types of modifications to the device's indication for use, manufacturing process, labeling and design. PMA supplements often require submission of the same type of information as a PMA, except that the supplement is limited to information needed to support any changes from the device covered by the original PMA and may not require as extensive clinical data or the convening of an advisory panel. We have not submitted any of our product candidates for a PMA approval. However, we may in the future develop devices that will require the approval of a PMA, or seek to add new indications for use of existing products that require the approval of a PMA. There is no guarantee that the FDA will grant PMA approval of these specific indications for use or for our future products and failure to obtain necessary approvals for our future products would adversely affect our ability to grow our business.

### ***Clinical Trials***

Clinical trials are generally required to support a PMA application and are sometimes required for 510(k) clearance. Such trials generally require an application for an investigational device exemption, or IDE, which is approved in advance by the FDA for a specified number of patients and study sites, unless the product is deemed a non-significant risk device eligible for more abbreviated IDE requirements. A significant risk device is one that presents a potential for serious risk to the health, safety, or welfare of a patient and either is implanted, used in supporting or sustaining human life, substantially important in diagnosing, curing, mitigating, or treating disease or otherwise preventing impairment of human health, or otherwise presents a potential for serious risk to a subject. Clinical trials are subject to extensive monitoring, recordkeeping and reporting requirements. Clinical trials must be conducted under the oversight of an institutional review board, or IRB, for the relevant clinical trial sites and must comply with FDA regulations, including, but not limited to, those relating to good clinical practices. To conduct a clinical trial, we also are required to obtain the patient's informed consent in a form and substance that complies with both FDA requirements and state and federal privacy and human subject protection regulations. We, the FDA or the IRB could suspend a clinical trial at any time for various reasons, including a belief that the risks to study

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

subjects outweigh the anticipated benefits. Even if a trial is completed, the results of clinical testing may not adequately demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the device or may otherwise not be sufficient to obtain FDA clearance or approval to market the product in the United States. Similarly, in Europe, the clinical study must be approved by a local ethics committee and in some cases, including studies with high-risk devices, by the ministry of health in the applicable country.

### *Pervasive and Continuing Regulation*

After a device is placed on the market, numerous regulatory requirements continue to apply. In addition to the requirements below, the MDR regulations require that we report to the FDA any incident in which our products may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or in which our product malfunctioned and, if the malfunction were to recur, would likely cause or contribute to death or serious injury. Additional regulatory requirements include:

- product listing and establishment registration, which helps facilitate FDA inspections and other regulatory action;
- QSR, which requires manufacturers, including third-party manufacturers, to follow stringent design, testing, control, documentation and other quality assurance procedures during all aspects of the design and manufacturing process;
- labeling regulations and FDA prohibitions against the promotion of products for uncleared, unapproved or off-label use or indication;
- clearance of product modifications that could significantly affect safety or effectiveness or that would constitute a major change in intended use of one of our cleared devices;
- approval of product modifications that affect the safety or effectiveness of one of our approved devices;
- post-approval restrictions or conditions, including post-approval study commitments;
- post-market surveillance regulations, which apply, when necessary, to protect the public health or to provide additional safety and effectiveness data for the device;
- the FDA's recall authority, whereby it can ask, or under certain conditions order, device manufacturers to recall from the market a product that is in violation of governing laws and regulations;
- regulations pertaining to voluntary recalls; and
- notices of corrections or removals.

As a manufacturer, we are subject to announced and unannounced inspections by the FDA to determine our compliance with FDA's QSR and other regulations. We have not yet been inspected by the FDA. We believe that we are in compliance with QSR and other regulations.

Advertising and promotion of medical devices, in addition to being regulated by the FDA, are also regulated by the United States Federal Trade Commission, or FTC, and by state regulatory and enforcement authorities. Recently, promotional activities for FDA-regulated products of other companies have been the subject of enforcement action brought under healthcare reimbursement laws and consumer protection statutes. In addition, under the federal Lanham Act and similar state laws, competitors and others can initiate litigation relating to advertising claims. In addition, we are required to meet regulatory requirements in countries outside the United States, which can change rapidly with relatively short notice. If the FDA determines that our promotional materials or training constitutes promotion of an unapproved or uncleared use, it could request that we modify our training or promotional materials or subject us to regulatory or enforcement actions, including the issuance of an untitled letter, a warning letter, injunction, seizure, civil fine or criminal penalty. It is also possible that other federal, state or foreign enforcement authorities might take action if they consider our promotional or training materials to constitute

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

promotion of an unapproved use, which could result in significant fines or penalties under other statutory authorities, such as laws prohibiting false claims for reimbursement. In that event, our reputation could be damaged and adoption of the products would be impaired.

Failure by us or by our third-party manufacturers and suppliers to comply with applicable regulatory requirements can result in enforcement action by the FDA or other regulatory authorities, which may result in sanctions including, but not limited to:

- untitled letters, warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties;
- customer notifications or repair, replacement, refunds, recall, detention or seizure of our marketed products;
- operating restrictions or partial suspension or total shutdown of production;
- customer notifications or repair, replacement, refunds, recall, detention or seizure of our marketed products;
- refusing or delaying requests for 510(k) clearance or PMA approvals of new products or modified products;
- withdrawing 510(k) clearances or PMA approvals that have already been granted;
- refusal to grant export approval for our marketed products; or
- criminal prosecution.

### **International Marketing Approvals**

International sales of medical devices are subject to foreign government regulations, which vary substantially from country to country. The time required to obtain approval by a foreign country may be longer or shorter than that required for FDA clearance or approval, and the requirements may differ.

The European Union has adopted numerous directives and standards regulating the design, manufacture, clinical trials, labeling, and adverse event reporting for medical devices. Each European Union member state has implemented legislation applying these directives and standards at a national level. Other countries, such as Switzerland, have voluntarily adopted laws and regulations that mirror those of the European Union with respect to medical devices. Devices that comply with the requirements of the laws of the relevant member state applying the applicable European Union directive are entitled to bear a CE mark and, accordingly, can be distributed throughout the member states of the European Union as well as in other countries, such as Switzerland and Israel, that have mutual recognition agreements with the European Union or have adopted the European Union's regulatory standards.

The method of assessing conformity with applicable regulatory requirements varies depending on the classification of the medical device, which may be Class I, Class IIa, Class IIb or Class III. Normally, the method involves a combination of self-assessment by the manufacturer of the safety and performance of the device, and a third-party assessment by a Notified Body, usually of the design of the device and of the manufacturer's quality system. A Notified Body is a private commercial entity that is designated by the national government of a member state as being competent to make independent judgments about whether a device complies with applicable regulatory requirements. An assessment by a Notified Body in one country with the European Union is required in order for a manufacturer to commercially distribute the device throughout the European Union. In addition, compliance with ISO 13485 issued by the International Organization for Standardization, among other standards, establishes the presumption of conformity with the essential requirements for CE marking. Certification to the ISO 13485 standard demonstrates the presence of a quality management system that can be used by a manufacturer for design and development, production, installation and servicing of medical devices and the design, development and provision of related services.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Healthcare Laws and Regulations**

#### ***Third-Party Reimbursement***

In the United States and elsewhere, healthcare providers that perform surgical procedures using medical devices such as ours generally rely on third-party payors, including governmental payors such as Medicare and Medicaid and private payors, to cover and reimburse all or part of the cost of the products. Consequently, sales of medical devices are dependent in part on the availability of reimbursement to the customer from third-party payors. The manner in which reimbursement is sought and obtained varies based upon the type of payor involved and the setting in which the product is furnished and utilized. In general, third-party payors will provide coverage and reimbursement for medically reasonable and necessary procedures and tests that utilize medical devices and may provide separate payments for the implanted or disposable devices themselves. Most payors, however, will not pay separately for capital equipment, such as our ClearPoint system. Instead, payment for the cost of using the capital equipment is considered to be covered as part of payments received for performing the procedure. In determining payment rates, third-party payors are increasingly scrutinizing the prices charged for medical products and services in comparison to other therapies. Our marketed products, and the procedures in which our marketed products will be used, may not be reimbursed by these third-party payors at rates sufficient to allow us to sell our marketed products on a competitive and profitable basis.

In addition, in many foreign markets, including the countries in the European Union, pricing of medical devices is subject to governmental control. In the United States, there have been, and we expect that there will continue to be, a number of federal and state proposals to limit payments by governmental payors for medical devices, and the procedures in which medical devices are used. While we cannot predict whether such legislative or regulatory proposals will be adopted, the adoption of such proposals could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and profitability.

#### ***Medicare and Medicaid***

The Medicare program is a federal health benefit program administered by CMS that covers and pays for certain medical care items and services for eligible elderly and certain disabled individuals, and individuals with end stage renal disease. The Medicaid program is a federal-state partnership under which states receive matching federal payments to fund healthcare services for the poor. Because some private commercial health insurers and some state Medicaid programs may follow the coverage and payment policies for Medicare, Medicare's coverage and payment policies are significant to our business. On July 30, 2008, CMS released a list of potential topics for national coverage determinations. This list included ablation for atrial fibrillation and specifically asked whether the evidence was adequate to demonstrate health benefits in patients who receive the procedure. On October 21, 2009, the Medicare Evidence Development and Coverage Advisory Committee, or MedCAC, held a meeting on the adequacy of the available evidence for catheter ablation for the treatment of atrial fibrillation. Although CMS has not formally opened a national coverage analysis on this topic, the agency clearly is interested in the clinical evidence of atrial fibrillation treatments and any national coverage decisions it makes could have a material effect on our potential business in this area.

Medicare coverage for the procedures in which our products would be used currently exists in the hospital inpatient setting, which falls under Part A of the Medicare program. Under Medicare Part A, Medicare reimburses acute care hospitals a prospectively determined payment amount for beneficiaries receiving covered inpatient services in an acute care hospital. This method of payment is known as the prospective payment system, or PPS. Under PPS, the prospective payment for a patient's stay in an acute care hospital is determined by the patient's condition and other patient data and procedures performed during the inpatient stay using a classification system known as DRGs. Payments also are adjusted to reflect regional variations in labor costs, indirect medical education expenses, payments for hospitals that treat a disproportionate share of poor patients, and other factors. As of October 1, 2007, CMS implemented a revised version of the DRG system that uses 745 Medicare Severity DRGs, or MS-DRGs, instead of the approximately 540 DRGs Medicare previously used. The MS-DRGs are intended to account more accurately for the patient's severity of illness when assigning each patient's stay to a payment classification. Medicare pays a fixed amount to the hospital based on the MS-DRG into which the patient's stay is classified, regardless of the actual cost to the hospital of furnishing the procedures, items and services that the patient's condition requires. Accordingly, acute care hospitals generally do not receive direct Medicare

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

reimbursement under PPS for the specific costs incurred in purchasing medical devices. Rather, reimbursement for these costs is deemed to be included within the MS-DRG-based payments made to hospitals for the services furnished to Medicare-eligible inpatients in which the devices are utilized. For cases involving unusually high costs, a hospital may receive additional “outlier” payments above the pre-determined amount. In addition, there is a mechanism by which new technology services can apply to Medicare for additional payments above the pre-determined amount, although such requests have not been granted frequently.

Because PPS payments are based on predetermined rates and may be less than a hospital’s actual costs in furnishing care, acute care hospitals have incentives to lower their inpatient operating costs by utilizing products, devices and supplies that will reduce the length of inpatient stays, decrease labor or otherwise lower their costs. For each MS-DRG, a relative weight is calculated representing the average resources required to care for cases grouped in that particular MS-DRG relative to the average resources used to treat cases in all MS-DRGs. MS-DRG relative weights are recalculated every year to reflect changes in technology and medical practice in a budget neutral manner. Under the MS-DRG payment system, there can be significant delays in obtaining adequate reimbursement amounts for hospitals for new technologies such that reimbursement may be insufficient to permit broad acceptance by hospitals.

In addition to payments to hospitals for procedures using our technology, Medicare makes separate payments to physicians for their professional services. The American Medical Association, or AMA, has developed a coding system known as the Current Procedural Terminology, or CPT, codes, which have been adopted by the Medicare program to describe and develop payment amounts for certain physician services.

The Medicare physician fee schedule uses CPT codes (and other codes) as part of the determination of allowable payment amounts to physicians. In determining appropriate payment amounts for surgeons, CMS receives guidance from the AMA regarding the relative technical skill level, level of resources used, and complexity of a new surgical procedure. Generally, the designation of a new procedure code for a new procedure using a new product does not occur until after FDA clearance or approval of the product used in the procedure. Codes are assigned by either the AMA (for CPT codes) or CMS (for Medicare-specific codes) and new codes usually become effective on January 1st of each year.

One result of the current Medicare payment system, which is also utilized by most non-governmental third-party payors, is that a patient’s treating physician orders a particular service and the hospital (or other facility in which the procedure is performed) bears the cost of delivery of the service. Hospitals have limited ability to align their financial interests with that of the treating physician because Medicare law generally prohibits hospitals from paying physicians to assist in controlling the costs of hospital services, including paying physicians to limit or reduce services to Medicare beneficiaries even if such services are medically unnecessary. As a result, hospitals have traditionally stocked supplies and products requested by physicians and have had limited ability to restrict physician choice of products and services.

The Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act enacted on March 23, 2010, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010 enacted on March 30, 2010, or, together, the Health Care Reform Law, includes a number of provisions that will likely result in more coordination between hospitals and physicians resulting in the alignment of financial incentives between hospitals and physicians to control hospital costs. Most significantly, the Health Care Reform Law provides for the establishment of a Medicare shared savings program, which goes into effect in 2012, whereby Medicare will share certain savings realized in the delivery of services to Medicare beneficiaries with accountable care organizations, which may be organized through various different legal structures between hospitals and physicians. Other payment reform provisions in the Health Care Reform Law include pay-for-performance initiatives, payment bundling and the establishment of an independent payment advisory board. We expect that the overall result of such payment reform initiatives and increased coordination among hospitals and physicians will be voluntary reductions in the array of choices currently available to physicians with respect to diagnostic services, medical supplies and equipment. Such a reduction in physician choices may also result in hospitals reducing their overall number of vendors from which they purchase supplies, equipment and products. The Health Care Reform Law could substantially change how health care is developed and delivered in the United States, and may materially impact many aspects of our business and operations, including limiting the acceptance and availability of our products.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Among other things, the Health Care Reform Law will ultimately increase the overall pool of persons with access to health insurance in the United States. Although such an increase in covered lives should ultimately benefit hospitals, the Health Care Reform Law, also includes a number of cuts in Medicare reimbursement to hospitals that may take effect prior to hospitals' realizing the financial benefit of a larger pool of insured persons. Such cuts in Medicare reimbursement could adversely impact the operations and finances of hospitals reducing their ability to purchase medical devices such as our products. Further, Congress has yet to address in a comprehensive and permanent manner the pending reduction in Medicare payments to physicians under the sustainable growth rate formula, which if not resolved, will likely result in an overall reduction of physicians willing to participate in Medicare.

### *Commercial Insurers*

In addition to the Medicare program, many private payors look to CMS policies as a guideline in setting their coverage policies and payment amounts. The current coverage policies of these private payors may differ from the Medicare program, and the payment rates they make may be higher, lower, or the same as the Medicare program. If CMS or other agencies decrease or limit reimbursement payments for doctors and hospitals, this may affect coverage and reimbursement determinations by many private payors. Additionally, some private payors do not follow the Medicare guidelines, and those payors may reimburse only a portion of the costs associated with the use of our products, or none at all.

### *Fraud and Abuse Laws*

Because of the significant federal funding involved in Medicare and Medicaid, Congress and the states have enacted, and actively enforce, a number of laws whose purpose is to eliminate fraud and abuse in federal healthcare programs. Our business is subject to compliance with these laws.

### *Anti-Kickback Laws*

In the United States, there are federal and state anti-kickback laws that generally prohibit the payment or receipt of kickbacks, bribes or other remuneration in exchange for the referral of patients or other health-related business. The United States federal healthcare programs' Anti-Kickback Statute makes it unlawful for individuals or entities knowingly and willfully to solicit, offer, receive or pay any kickback, bribe or other remuneration, directly or indirectly, in exchange for or to induce the purchase, lease or order, or arranging for or recommending purchasing, leasing, or ordering, any good, facility, service, or item for which payment may be made in whole or in part under a federal healthcare program such as Medicare or Medicaid. The Anti-Kickback Statute covers "any remuneration," which has been broadly interpreted to include anything of value, including for example gifts, certain discounts, the furnishing of free supplies, equipment or services, credit arrangements, payments of cash and waivers of payments. Several courts have interpreted the statute's intent requirement to mean that if any one purpose of an arrangement involving remuneration is to induce referrals of federal healthcare covered business, the arrangement can be found to violate the statute. Penalties for violations include criminal penalties and civil sanctions such as fines, imprisonment and possible exclusion from Medicare, Medicaid and other federal healthcare programs. In addition, several courts have permitted kickback cases brought under the Federal False Claims Act to proceed, as discussed in more detail below.

Because the Anti-Kickback Statute is broadly written and encompasses many harmless or efficient arrangements, Congress authorized the Office of Inspector General of the United States Department of Health and Human Services, or OIG, to issue a series of regulations, known as "safe harbors." For example, there are regulatory safe harbors for payments to bona fide employees, properly reported discounts, and payments for certain investment interests. Although an arrangement that fits into one or more of these exceptions or safe harbors is immune from prosecution, arrangements that do not fit squarely within an exception or safe harbor do not necessarily violate the statute. The failure of a transaction or arrangement to fit precisely within one or more of the exceptions or safe harbors does not necessarily mean that it is illegal or that prosecution will be pursued. However, conduct and business arrangements that arguably implicate the Anti-Kickback Statute but do not fully satisfy all the elements of an exception or safe harbor may be subject to increased scrutiny by government enforcement authorities such as the OIG. The Health Care Reform Law increases the investigatory authority of the OIG, clarifies that Anti-Kickback Statute claims can be brought under the federal civil False Claims Act, and provides for enhanced civil monetary penalties and expanded permissible exclusion authority.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Many states have laws that implicate anti-kickback restrictions similar to the Anti-Kickback Statute. Some of these state prohibitions apply regardless of whether federal healthcare program business is involved such as for self-pay or private pay patients.

Government officials have focused their enforcement efforts on marketing of healthcare services and products, among other activities, and recently have brought cases against companies, and certain sales, marketing and executive personnel, for allegedly offering unlawful inducements to potential or existing customers in an attempt to procure their business.

### *Federal Civil False Claims Act and State False Claims Laws*

The federal civil False Claims Act imposes liability on any person or entity who, among other things, knowingly and willfully presents, or causes to be presented, a false or fraudulent claim for payment by a federal healthcare program, including Medicare and Medicaid. The “qui tam,” or “whistleblower,” provisions of the False Claims Act allow a private individual to bring actions on behalf of the federal government alleging that the defendant has submitted a false claim to the federal government, and to share in any monetary recovery. In recent years, the number of suits brought against healthcare providers by private individuals has increased dramatically. Medical device companies, like us, can be held liable under false claims laws, even if they do not submit claims to the government where they are deemed to have caused submission of false claims by, among other things, providing incorrect coding or billing advice about their products to customers that file claims, or by engaging in kickback arrangements with customers that file claims.

The False Claims Act also has been used to assert liability on the basis of misrepresentations with respect to the services rendered and in connection with alleged off-label promotion of products. Our future activities relating to the manner in which we sell our products and document our prices such as the reporting of discount and rebate information and other information affecting federal, state and third-party reimbursement of our products, and the sale and marketing of our products, may be subject to scrutiny under these laws.

The Health Care Reform Law is likely to increase the number of cases asserting civil False Claims Act violations since it removes a significant defense to such claims and clarifies that a violation of the Anti-Kickback Statute or retention of a federal healthcare program overpayment are actionable under the civil False Claims Act.

When an entity is determined to have violated the False Claims Act, it may be required to pay up to three times the actual damages sustained by the government, plus civil penalties of between \$5,500 to \$11,000 for each separate false claim. There are many potential bases for liability under the False Claims Act. A number of states have enacted false claim laws analogous to the federal civil False Claims Act and many of these state laws apply where a claim is submitted to any state or private third-party payor. In this environment, our engagement of physician consultants in product development and product training and education could subject us to similar scrutiny. We are unable to predict whether we would be subject to actions under the False Claims Act or a similar state law, or the impact of such actions. However, the costs of defending such claims, as well as any sanctions imposed, could significantly affect our financial performance.

### *HIPAA Fraud and Other Regulations*

The Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, created a class of federal crimes known as the “federal health care offenses,” including healthcare fraud and false statements relating to healthcare matters. The HIPAA healthcare fraud statute prohibits, among other things, knowingly and willfully executing, or attempting to execute, a scheme or artifice to defraud any healthcare benefit program, or to obtain by means of false or fraudulent pretenses, any money under the control of any healthcare benefit program, including private payors. A violation of this statute is a felony and may result in fines, imprisonment and/or exclusion from government-sponsored programs. The Health Care Reform Law also provides for civil monetary penalties for knowingly participating in certain federal healthcare offenses and enhances sentences under the Federal Sentencing Guidelines for such offenses. The HIPAA false statements statute prohibits, among other things, knowingly and willfully



---

## [Table of Contents](#)

falsifying, concealing or covering up a material fact or making any materially false, fictitious or fraudulent statement or representation in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services. A violation of this statute is a felony and may result in fines and/or imprisonment. Entities that are found to have aided or abetted in a violation of the HIPAA federal health care offenses are deemed by statute to have committed the offense and are punishable as a principal.

We are also subject to the United States Foreign Corrupt Practices Act and similar anti-bribery laws applicable in non-United States jurisdictions that generally prohibit companies and their intermediaries from making improper payments to non-United States government officials for the purpose of obtaining or retaining business. Because of the predominance of government sponsored healthcare systems around the world, most of our customer relationships outside of the United States will be with governmental entities and therefore subject to such anti-bribery laws.

### *HIPAA and Other Privacy & Security Laws*

As a part of HIPAA, Congress enacted the Administrative Simplification provisions, which are designed to require the establishment of uniform standards governing the conduct of certain electronic healthcare transactions and protecting the security and privacy of individually identifiable health information maintained or transmitted by healthcare providers, health plans and healthcare clearinghouses, which are referred to as “covered entities.” Several regulations have been promulgated under HIPAA’s regulations including: the Standards for Privacy of Individually Identifiable Health Information, or the Privacy Rule, which restricts the use and disclosure of certain individually identifiable health information, the Standards for Electronic Transactions, which establishes standards for common healthcare transactions, such as claims information, plan eligibility, payment information and the use of electronic signatures, and the Security Standards for the Protection of Electronic Protected Health Information, or the Security Rule, which requires covered entities to implement and maintain certain security measures to safeguard certain electronic health information. Although we do not believe we are a covered entity and therefore are not currently directly subject to these standards, we expect that our customers generally will be covered entities and may ask us to contractually comply with certain aspects of these standards by entering into business associate agreements, when appropriate. While the government intended this legislation to reduce administrative expenses and burdens for the healthcare industry, our compliance with certain provisions of these standards entails significant costs for us.

The Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act, or the HITECH Act, which was enacted in February 2009, strengthens and expands the HIPAA Privacy and Security Rules and the restrictions on use and disclosure of patient identifiable health information. HITECH also fundamentally changed a business associate’s obligations by imposing a number of Privacy Rule requirements and a majority of Security Rule provisions directly on business associates that were previously only directly applicable to covered entities. HITECH includes, but is not limited to, prohibitions on exchanging patient identifiable health information for remuneration (directly or indirectly), restrictions on marketing to individuals and obligations to agree to provide individuals an accounting of virtually all disclosures of their health information. Moreover, HITECH requires covered entities to report any unauthorized use or disclosure of patient identifiable health information that compromises the security or privacy of the information, known as a breach, to the affected individuals, the United States Department of Health and Human Services, or HHS, and depending on the size of any such breach, the media for the affected market. Business associates are similarly required to notify covered entities of a breach. Most of the HITECH provisions became effective in February 2010 and was expected that the HHS would final regulations to implement many of the new provisions in 2011. Those regulations have not yet been released. HHS has already issued regulations governing breach notification which were effective in September 2009.

HITECH has increased civil penalty amounts for violations of HIPAA by either covered entities or business associates up to an annual maximum of \$1.5 million for uncorrected violations based on willful neglect. Imposition of these penalties is more likely now because HITECH significantly strengthens enforcement. It requires HHS to conduct periodic audits to confirm compliance and to investigate any violation that involves willful neglect. Additionally, state attorneys general are authorized to bring civil actions seeking either injunctions or damages in response to violations of HIPAA Privacy and Security Rules that threaten the privacy of state residents. HHS held training sessions on the HIPAA rules and enforcement for state attorneys general in the spring of 2011.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

In addition to federal regulations issued under HIPAA, some states have enacted privacy and security statutes or regulations that, in some cases, are more stringent than those issued under HIPAA. In those cases, it may be necessary to modify our planned operations and procedures to comply with the more stringent state laws. If we fail to comply with applicable state laws and regulations, we could be subject to additional sanctions. Further, the majority of states have enacted state data breach laws, which also require notification of certain alleged breaches of the privacy or security of personal information.

Federal and state consumer protection laws are being applied increasingly by the FTC and state attorneys general to regulate the collection, use, storage and disclosure of personal or patient information, through websites or otherwise, and to regulate the presentation of web site content. Courts may also adopt the standards for fair information practices promulgated by the FTC, which concern consumer notice, choice, security and access. Numerous other countries have or are developing laws governing the collection, use, disclosure and transmission of personal or patient information.

HIPAA as well as other federal and state laws apply to our receipt of patient identifiable health information in connection with research and clinical trials. We collaborate with other individuals and entities in conducting research and all involved parties must comply with applicable laws. Therefore, the compliance of the physicians, hospitals or other providers or entities with which we collaborate also impacts our business.

### **Employees**

As of January 31, 2012, we had 22 full time employees, of whom eight were engaged in research and development, five in manufacturing, four in sales and marketing and five in general administrative and finance functions. None of our employees is covered by a collective bargaining agreement, and we consider our relationship with our employees to be good.

### **Item 1A. Risk Factors**

***We have incurred significant losses since our inception and anticipate that we may continue to incur significant losses. If we fail to generate significant revenue from sales of our products, we may never achieve or sustain profitability.***

As of September 30, 2011, we had an accumulated deficit of approximately \$57,933,000. The accumulated deficit has resulted principally from costs incurred in our research and development efforts and general operating expenses. We have incurred significant losses in each year since our inception in 1998. Net losses were approximately \$6,456,000 for the nine months ended September 30, 2011, approximately \$9,454,000 for the year ended December 31, 2010, approximately \$7,159,000 for the year ended December 31, 2009, and approximately \$5,430,000 for the year ended December 31, 2008. We may continue to incur significant operating losses as we continue to invest capital in the sales and marketing of our products, development of our product candidates and our business generally. We also expect that our general and administrative expenses will increase due to additional operational and regulatory burdens associated with operating as a public company.

As a result of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with developing medical devices, we are unable to predict the extent of any future losses or when we will become profitable, if at all. Our profitability will depend on revenues from the sale of our products. We cannot provide any assurance that we will ever achieve profitability and, even if we achieve profitability, that we will be able to sustain or increase profitability on a quarterly or annual basis. Further, because of our limited commercialization history, we have limited insight into the trends that may emerge and affect our business. We may make errors in predicting and reacting to relevant business trends, which could harm our business and financial condition. Any failure to achieve and maintain profitability would continue to have an adverse effect on our stockholders' equity and working capital and or cause us to cease operations.

***Our ClearPoint system may not achieve market acceptance or be commercially successful.***

We expect sales of our ClearPoint system will account for the vast majority of our revenues for at least the next several years. Our ClearPoint system may not gain market acceptance unless we convince physicians, hospitals and patients of its benefits. Moreover, even if physicians and hospitals understand the benefits of our ClearPoint system, they still may elect not to use our ClearPoint system for a variety of reasons, including:

---

## Table of Contents

- the shift in location of the procedure from the operating room to the MRI suite;
- the hospital's ability and willingness to satisfy the increased demand for the MRI suite;
- the cost to the hospital to purchase or otherwise use our products;
- the amount of reimbursement available from third-party payors;
- insufficient supporting clinical data; and
- the familiarity of the physician, and the physician having achieved successful results, with other devices and approaches.

If physicians and hospitals do not perceive our ClearPoint system as an attractive alternative to other products and procedures, we will not achieve significant market penetration or be able to generate significant revenues. To the extent that our ClearPoint system is not commercially successful or is withdrawn from the market for any reason, our revenues will be adversely impacted and our business, operating results and financial condition will be harmed.

***If hospitals and physicians are unable to obtain adequate coverage and reimbursement from third-party payors for procedures utilizing our ClearPoint system, our revenues and prospects for profitability will suffer.***

Our ClearPoint system components are purchased primarily by hospitals, which bill various third-party payors, including governmental healthcare programs, such as Medicare, and private insurance plans, for procedures in which our ClearPoint system is used. Reimbursement is a significant factor considered by hospitals in determining whether to acquire new medical devices such as our ClearPoint system. Therefore, our ability to successfully commercialize our ClearPoint system depends significantly on the availability of coverage and reimbursement from these third-party payors.

Medicare pays hospitals a prospectively determined amount for inpatient operating costs. The prospective payment for a patient's stay is determined by the patient's condition and other patient data and procedures performed during the inpatient stay using a classification system known as Medical Severity Diagnosis Related Groups, or MS-DRGs. Medicare pays a fixed amount to the hospital based on the MS-DRG into which the patient's stay is assigned, regardless of the actual cost to the hospital of furnishing the procedures, items and services provided. Therefore, a hospital must absorb the cost of our products as part of the payment it receives for the procedure in which the product is used. In addition, physicians that perform procedures in hospitals are paid a set amount by Medicare for performing such services under the Medicare physician fee schedule. Medicare payment rates for both systems are established annually.

We do not know if hospitals will consider third-party reimbursement levels adequate to cover the cost of our ClearPoint system. Furthermore, we do not know if physicians will consider third-party reimbursement levels adequate to compensate them for performing the procedures in which our products are used. Failure by hospitals and physicians to receive an amount that they consider to be adequate reimbursement for procedures in which our products are used will deter them from purchasing or using our products and limit our sales growth.

One result of the current Medicare payment system, which is also utilized by most non-governmental third-party payors, is that a patient's treating physician orders a particular service and the hospital (or other facility in which the procedure is performed) bears the cost of delivery of the service. Hospitals have limited ability to align their financial interests with those of the treating physician because Medicare law generally prohibits hospitals from paying physicians to assist in controlling the costs of hospital services, including paying physicians to limit or reduce services to Medicare beneficiaries even if such services are medically unnecessary. As a result, hospitals have traditionally stocked supplies and products requested by physicians and have had limited ability to restrict physician choice of products and services.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

The Health Care Reform Law includes a number of provisions that will likely result in more coordination between hospitals and physicians resulting in the alignment of financial incentives between hospitals and physicians to control hospital costs. Most significantly, the Health Care Reform Law provides for the establishment of a Medicare shared savings program, which goes into effect in 2012, whereby Medicare will share certain savings realized in the delivery of services to Medicare beneficiaries with accountable care organizations, which may be organized through various different legal structures between hospitals and physicians. Other payment reform provisions in the Health Care Reform Law include pay-for-performance initiatives, payment bundling and the establishment of an independent payment advisory board. We expect that the overall result of such payment reform efforts and the increased coordination among hospitals and physicians will be voluntary reductions in the array of choices currently available to physicians with respect to diagnostic services, medical supplies and equipment. Such a reduction in physician choices may also result in hospitals reducing the overall number of vendors from which they purchase supplies, equipment and products. The Health Care Reform Law may limit the acceptance and availability of our products, which could have an adverse effect on our financial results and business.

***If there are changes in coverage or reimbursement from third-party payors, our revenues and prospects for profitability will suffer.***

In the United States, we believe that existing billing codes apply to procedures using our ClearPoint system. Reimbursement levels for procedures using our ClearPoint system or any product that we may market in the future could be decreased or eliminated as a result of future legislation, regulation or reimbursement policies of third-party payors. Any such decrease or elimination would adversely affect the demand for our ClearPoint system or any product that we may market in the future and our ability to sell our products on a profitable basis. For example, on July 30, 2008, Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services, or CMS, the federal agency that administers the Medicare Program, released a list of potential topics for national coverage determinations. This list included ablation for atrial fibrillation and specifically asked whether the evidence was adequate to demonstrate health benefits in patients who receive the procedure. On October 21, 2009, the Medicare Evidence Development and Coverage Advisory Committee held a meeting on the adequacy of the available evidence for catheter ablation for the treatment of atrial fibrillation. Although CMS has not formally opened a national coverage analysis on this topic, the agency has shown that it is interested in the clinical evidence of atrial fibrillation treatments and any national coverage decisions it makes could have a material effect on the ClearTrace system and our potential business in this area. Furthermore, if procedures using our ClearPoint system gain market acceptance and the number of these procedures increases, CMS, as well as other public or private payors, may establish new billing codes for those procedures that provide for a lower reimbursement amount than traditional approaches, which would adversely affect our financial results and business.

Among other things, the Health Care Reform Law will ultimately increase the overall pool of persons with access to health insurance in the United States. Although such an increase in covered lives should ultimately benefit hospitals, the Health Care Reform Law also includes a number of cuts in Medicare reimbursement to hospitals that may take effect prior to the time hospitals realize the financial benefit of a larger pool of insured persons. Those cuts in Medicare reimbursement could adversely impact the operations and finances of hospitals, reducing their ability to purchase medical devices, such as our products. Further, Congress has not yet addressed in a comprehensive and permanent manner the pending reduction in Medicare payments to physicians under the sustainable growth rate formula, which if not resolved will likely result in an overall reduction in physicians willing to participate in Medicare.

***If third-party payors deny coverage or reimbursement for procedures using our ClearPoint system, our revenues and prospects for profitability will suffer.***

Notwithstanding its regulatory clearance in the United States, third-party payors may deny coverage or reimbursement if the payor determines that the use of our ClearPoint system is unnecessary, inappropriate, experimental, not cost-effective, or is used for a non-approved indication. In addition, no uniform policy of coverage and reimbursement for medical technology exists among third-party payors. Therefore, coverage and reimbursement for medical technology can differ significantly from payor to payor. Any denial of coverage or reimbursement for procedures using our ClearPoint system could have an adverse effect on our business, financial results and prospects for profitability.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

***We have limited internal manufacturing resources, and if we unable to provide an adequate supply of our ClearPoint disposable products, our growth could be limited and our business could be harmed.***

Final assembly of many of our ClearPoint disposable components occurs at our Irvine, California facility. If our facility experiences a disruption, we would have no other means of assembling those components until we are able to restore the manufacturing capability at our current facility or develop the same capability at an alternative facility.

In connection with the continued commercialization of our ClearPoint system, we expect that we will need to increase, or “scale up,” the production process of our disposable components over the current level of production. Manufacturers often encounter difficulties in scaling up production, such as problems involving yields, quality control and assurance, and shortages of qualified personnel. If the scaled-up production process is not efficient or produces a product that does not meet quality and other standards, we may be unable to meet market demand and our revenues, business and financial prospects would be adversely affected.

***Our reliance on single-source suppliers could harm our ability to meet demand for our ClearPoint system in a timely manner or within budget.***

Many of the components and component assemblies of our ClearPoint system are currently provided to us by single-source suppliers. We generally purchase components and component assemblies through purchase orders rather than long-term supply agreements and generally do not maintain large volumes of inventory. While alternative suppliers exist and have been identified, the disruption or termination of the supply of components and component assemblies could cause a significant increase in the cost of these components, which could affect our operating results. Our dependence on a limited number of third-party suppliers and the challenges we may face in obtaining adequate supplies involve several risks, including limited control over pricing, availability, quality and delivery schedules. A disruption or termination in the supply of components could also result in our inability to meet demand for our ClearPoint system, which could harm our ability to generate revenues, lead to customer dissatisfaction and damage our reputation. Furthermore, if we are required to change the supplier of a key component or component assembly of our ClearPoint system, we may be required to verify that the new supplier maintains facilities and procedures that comply with quality standards and with all applicable regulations and guidelines. The delays associated with the verification of a new supplier could delay our ability to manufacture our ClearPoint system in a timely manner or within budget.

***If we are unable to expand our sales and marketing capabilities, we may be unable to generate material product revenues.***

We have limited experience in the sales and marketing of medical devices. Currently, our sales and marketing efforts for our ClearPoint system are being coordinated primarily by our Vice President, Sales, our Vice President, Product Management and our two Clinical Engineering Managers. We expect to continue building a small, highly focused sales force to market our ClearPoint system products in the United States. That effort, though, could take longer than we anticipate, in which case our commercialization efforts would be delayed. Our distribution relationship with Brainlab significantly expands our sales and marketing capabilities for the ClearPoint system. However, for ClearPoint products that Brainlab sells, our revenues will be lower than if we sell the ClearPoint products ourselves. Likewise, there is no assurance that Brainlab will be successful in marketing and selling our ClearPoint system. Under our agreement, Brainlab is not subject to any minimum sales or other performance requirements.

***If we fail to obtain regulatory approval for our ClearPoint system in additional foreign jurisdictions, we will not be able to expand the commercialization of our products abroad.***

We obtained CE marking approval for our ClearPoint system in February 2011, which enables us to market the ClearPoint system in the European Union. To sell our ClearPoint system in other foreign jurisdictions, we will have to obtain separate regulatory approvals from those foreign jurisdictions as well. The regulatory approval process varies among jurisdictions and can involve substantial additional testing. Clearance or approval by the FDA does not ensure clearance or approval by regulatory authorities in other jurisdictions, and clearance or approval by one foreign regulatory authority does not ensure clearance or approval by regulatory authorities in other foreign

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

jurisdictions. The foreign regulatory approval process may include all of the risks associated with obtaining FDA clearance or approval in addition to other risks. In addition, the time required to obtain foreign clearance or approval may differ from that required to obtain FDA clearance or approval and we may not obtain foreign regulatory clearances or approvals on a timely basis, if at all. We may not be able to file for regulatory clearance or approval and may not receive necessary clearance or approval to commercialize our ClearPoint system in any additional foreign market, either of which would preclude sale of our ClearPoint system outside the United States other than in the European Union.

***Our business will be subject to economic, political, regulatory and other risks associated with international operations.***

We have CE marking approval to market our ClearPoint system in the European Union, which subjects us to rules and regulations in the European Union relating to our products. As part of our product development and regulatory strategy, we also intend to market our ClearPoint system in other foreign jurisdictions. There are a number of risks associated with conducting business internationally, including:

- differences in treatment protocols and methods across the markets in which we expect to market our ClearPoint system;
- requirements necessary to obtain product reimbursement;
- product reimbursement or price controls imposed by foreign governments;
- difficulties in compliance with foreign laws and regulations;
- changes in foreign regulations and customs;
- changes in foreign currency exchange rates and currency controls;
- changes in a specific country's or region's political or economic environment;
- trade protection measures, import or export licensing requirements or other restrictive actions by U.S. or foreign governments; and
- negative consequences from changes in tax laws.

Any of these risks could adversely affect our financial results and our ability to operate outside the United States, which could harm our business.

***The Health Care Reform Law and other payment and policy changes may have a material adverse effect on us.***

In addition to the reimbursement changes discussed above, the Health Care Reform Law will also impose a 2.3% excise tax on the sale of any taxable human medical device after December 31, 2012, subject to certain exclusions, by the manufacturer, producer or importer of such devices. The total cost to the industry is expected to be approximately \$20 billion over ten years. This new and significant tax burden could have a material negative impact on the results of our operations and the operations of our strategic partners. Further, the Health Care Reform Law encourages hospitals and physicians to work collaboratively through shared savings programs, such as accountable care organizations, as well as other bundled payment initiatives, which may ultimately result in the reduction of medical device acquisitions and the consolidation of medical device suppliers used by hospitals. While passage of the Health Care Reform Law may ultimately expand the pool of potential end-users of our ClearPoint system, the above-discussed changes could adversely affect our financial results and business.

Further, with the increase in demand for healthcare services, we expect both a strain on the capacity of the healthcare system and more proposals by legislators, regulators and third-party payors to keep healthcare costs down. Certain proposals, if passed, could impose limitations on the prices we will be able to charge for our ClearPoint system, or the amounts of reimbursement available from governmental agencies or third-party payors. These limitations could have a material adverse effect on our financial position and results of operations.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Various healthcare reform proposals have also emerged at the state level. We cannot predict what healthcare initiatives, if any, will be implemented at the federal or state level, or the effect any future legislation or regulation will have on us. However, an expansion in government's role in the United States healthcare industry may lower reimbursements for our ClearPoint system, reduce medical procedure volumes and adversely affect our business, possibly materially.

*Our future success depends on our ability to obtain regulatory clearances or approvals for the ClearTrace system. We cannot be certain that we will be able to do so in a timely fashion, or at all.*

We do not have the necessary regulatory clearances or approvals to market the ClearTrace system in the United States or in any foreign market. In the United States, without FDA clearances or approvals, we cannot market a new medical device, or a new use of, or claim for, or significant modification to, an existing product, unless an exemption applies. To obtain FDA clearance or approval, we must first receive either premarket clearance under Section 510(k) of the federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act or approval of a PMA from the FDA.

In the 510(k) clearance process, the FDA must determine that a proposed device is "substantially equivalent" to a device legally on the market, known as a "predicate" device, with respect to intended use, technology, safety and effectiveness, in order to clear the proposed device for marketing. Clinical data is sometimes required to support substantial equivalence. The 510(k) clearance process generally takes three to twelve months from submission, but can take significantly longer.

The process of obtaining PMA approval is much more costly and uncertain than the 510(k) clearance process. The PMA approval process can be lengthy and expensive and requires an applicant to demonstrate the safety and effectiveness of the device based, in part, on data obtained in clinical trials. The PMA process generally takes one to three years, or even longer, from the time the PMA application is submitted to the FDA until an approval is obtained.

Outside the United States, the regulatory approval process varies among jurisdictions and can involve substantial additional testing. Clearance or approval by the FDA does not ensure clearance or approval by regulatory authorities in other jurisdictions, and clearance or approval by one foreign regulatory authority does not ensure clearance or approval by regulatory authorities in other foreign jurisdictions. The foreign regulatory approval process may include all of the risks associated with obtaining FDA clearance or approval in addition to other risks. In addition, the time required to obtain foreign clearance or approval may differ from that required to obtain FDA clearance or approval and we may not obtain foreign regulatory clearances or approvals on a timely basis, if at all. We may not be able to file for regulatory clearance or approval and may not receive necessary clearance or approval to commercialize a product candidate in any foreign market, either of which would preclude sale of that product candidate in foreign jurisdictions.

The ClearTrace system is still under development. We have not made any regulatory filings with the FDA or any foreign regulatory authority with respect to that system. We anticipate that the initial market for the ClearTrace system will be the European Union and we plan to seek CE marking approval for the ClearTrace system, although there can be no assurance that we will receive CE marking approval. To date, we have been conducting animal studies and other preclinical work with respect to the ClearTrace system. The ClearTrace system consists of several components, including an ablation catheter. The FDA has determined that ablation catheters specifically indicated to treat atrial fibrillation require the submission of a PMA. Therefore, in the United States, we will be required to pursue the PMA process in order to specifically indicate our ablation catheter for the treatment of atrial fibrillation.

The FDA or any applicable foreign authority may not act favorably or quickly in its review of any regulatory submission that we may file. Additionally, we may encounter significant difficulties and costs in obtaining clearances or approvals. If we are unable to obtain regulatory clearances or approvals for the ClearTrace system, or otherwise experience delays in obtaining regulatory clearances or approvals, the commercialization of the ClearTrace system will be delayed or prevented, which will adversely affect our ability to generate revenues. Such delay may also result in the loss of potential competitive advantages that might otherwise be attained by bringing products to market earlier than competitors. Any of these contingencies could adversely affect our business. Even if cleared or approved, the ClearTrace system may not be cleared or approved for the indications that are necessary or desirable for successful commercialization.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

***To the extent we seek a new indication for use of, or new claims for, our ClearPoint system, the FDA may not grant 510(k) clearance or PMA approval of such new use or claims, which may affect our ability to grow our business.***

We received 510(k) clearance to market our ClearPoint system for use in general neurological interventional procedures. In the future, we may seek to obtain additional, more specific indications for use of our ClearPoint system beyond the general neurological intervention claim. Some of these expanded claims could require FDA 510(k) clearance. Other claims could require FDA approval of a PMA. Moreover, some specific ClearPoint system claims that we may seek may require clinical trials to support regulatory clearance or approval, and we may not successfully complete or have the funds to initiate these clinical trials. The FDA may not clear or approve these future claims or future generations of our ClearPoint system for the indications that are necessary or desirable for successful commercialization. Indeed, the FDA may refuse our requests for 510(k) clearance or PMA approval. Failure to receive clearance or approval for additional claims for our ClearPoint system could have an adverse effect on our ability to expand our business.

***Clinical trials necessary to support 510(k) clearance or PMA approval for the ClearTrace system or any new indications for use for our ClearPoint system will be expensive and may require the enrollment of large numbers of suitable patients, who may be difficult to identify and recruit. Delays or failures in our clinical trials will prevent us from commercializing any modified or new product candidates and will adversely affect our business, operating results and prospects.***

Initiating and completing clinical trials necessary to support a PMA for the ClearTrace system or any other product candidates that we may develop, or additional safety and efficacy data that the FDA may require for 510(k) clearance or PMA approval for any new specific indications of our ClearPoint system that we may seek, will be time consuming and expensive with an uncertain outcome. Moreover, the results of early clinical trials are not necessarily predictive of future results, and any product candidate we advance into clinical trials may not have favorable results in later clinical trials.

Conducting successful clinical trials may require the enrollment of large numbers of patients, and suitable patients may be difficult to identify and recruit. Patient enrollment in clinical trials and completion of patient participation and follow-up depends on many factors, including the size of the patient population, the nature of the trial protocol, the attractiveness of, or the discomforts and risks associated with, the treatments received by enrolled subjects, the availability of appropriate clinical trial investigators and support staff, the proximity to clinical sites of patients that are able to comply with the eligibility and exclusion criteria for participation in the clinical trial, and patient compliance. For example, patients may be discouraged from enrolling in our clinical trials if the trial protocol requires them to undergo extensive post-treatment procedures or follow-up to assess the safety and effectiveness of our product candidates or if they determine that the treatments received under the trial protocols are not attractive or involve unacceptable risks or discomforts. In addition, patients participating in clinical trials may die before completion of the trial or suffer adverse medical events unrelated to our product candidates.

Development of sufficient and appropriate clinical protocols to demonstrate safety and efficacy will be required and we may not adequately develop such protocols to support clearance or approval. Further, the FDA may require us to submit data on a greater number of patients than we originally anticipated and/or for a longer follow-up period or change the data collection requirements or data analysis applicable to our clinical trials. Delays in patient enrollment or failure of patients to continue to participate in a clinical trial may cause an increase in costs and delays in the approval and attempted commercialization of our product candidates or result in the failure of the clinical trial. Such increased costs and delays or failures could adversely affect our business, operating results and prospects.



---

## [Table of Contents](#)

***If the third parties on which we may need to rely to conduct any clinical trials and to assist us with pre-clinical development do not perform as contractually required or expected, we may not be able to obtain regulatory clearance or approval for the ClearTrace system or any additional claims that we may seek for our ClearPoint system.***

We do not have the independent ability to conduct pre-clinical and clinical trials. To the extent that we will need to conduct such trials, we will need to rely on third parties, such as contract research organizations, medical institutions, clinical investigators and contract laboratories, to conduct such trials. If these third parties do not successfully carry out their contractual duties or regulatory obligations or meet expected deadlines, if these third parties need to be replaced, or if the quality or accuracy of the data they obtain is compromised due to the failure to adhere to our clinical protocols or regulatory requirements or for other reasons, our pre-clinical development activities or clinical trials may be extended, delayed, suspended or terminated, and we may not be able to obtain regulatory clearance or approval for a product candidate or additional claims we may seek for our products on a timely basis, if at all. As such, our business, operating results and prospects may be adversely affected. Furthermore, our third-party clinical trial investigators may be delayed in conducting our clinical trials for reasons outside of their control.

***The results of our clinical trials may not support our product candidate claims or any additional claims we may seek for our products and may result in the discovery of adverse side effects.***

Even if any clinical trial that we need to undertake is completed as planned, we cannot be certain that its results will support our product candidate claims or any new indications that we may seek for our products or that the FDA or foreign authorities will agree with our conclusions regarding the results of those trials. The clinical trial process may fail to demonstrate that our products or a product candidate is safe and effective for the proposed indicated use, which could cause us to stop seeking additional clearances or approvals for our ClearPoint system, abandon the ClearTrace system or delay development of other product candidates. Any delay or termination of our clinical trials will delay the filing of our regulatory submissions and, ultimately, our ability to commercialize a product candidate. It is also possible that patients enrolled in clinical trials will experience adverse side effects that are not currently part of the product candidate's profile.

***The markets for medical devices are highly competitive and we may not be able to compete effectively against the larger, well-established companies in our markets or emerging and small innovative companies that may seek to obtain or increase their share of the market.***

We will face competition from products and techniques already in existence in the marketplace. The markets for the ClearPoint system and the ClearTrace system are intensely competitive, and many of our competitors are much larger and have substantially more financial and human resources than we do. Many have long histories and strong reputations within the industry, and a relatively small number of companies dominate these markets. Examples of such large, well-known companies include Biosense Webster Inc., a division of Johnson & Johnson, Medtronic, Inc. and St. Jude Medical Inc.

These companies enjoy significant competitive advantages over us, including:

- broad product offerings, which address the needs of physicians and hospitals in a wide range of procedures;
- greater experience in, and resources for, launching, marketing, distributing and selling products, including strong sales forces and established distribution networks;
- existing relationships with physicians and hospitals;
- more extensive intellectual property portfolios and resources for patent protection;
- greater financial and other resources for product research and development;
- greater experience in obtaining and maintaining FDA and other regulatory clearances or approvals for products and product enhancements;

---

## Table of Contents

- established manufacturing operations and contract manufacturing relationships; and
- significantly greater name recognition and more recognizable trademarks.

We may not succeed in overcoming the competitive advantages of these large and established companies. Smaller or early-stage companies may also prove to be significant competitors, particularly through collaborative arrangements with large and established companies. These companies may introduce products that compete effectively against our products in terms of performance, price or both.

***We could become subject to product liability claims that could be expensive, divert management's attention and harm our business.***

Our business exposes us to potential product liability risks that are inherent in the manufacturing, marketing and sale of medical devices. We may be held liable if our products cause injury or death or are found otherwise unsuitable or defective during usage. Our ClearPoint system and the ClearTrace system incorporate mechanical and electrical parts, complex computer software and other sophisticated components, any of which can have defective or inferior parts or contain defects, errors or failures. Complex computer software is particularly vulnerable to errors and failures, especially when first introduced.

Because our ClearPoint system and the ClearTrace system are designed to be used to perform complex surgical procedures, defects could result in a number of complications, some of which could be serious and could harm or kill patients. The adverse publicity resulting from any of these events could cause physicians or hospitals to review and potentially terminate their relationships with us.

The medical device industry has historically been subject to extensive litigation over product liability claims. A product liability claim, regardless of its merit or eventual outcome, could result in significant legal defense costs. Although we maintain product liability insurance, the coverage is subject to deductibles and limitations, and may not be adequate to cover future claims. Additionally, we may be unable to maintain our existing product liability insurance in the future at satisfactory rates or in adequate amounts. A product liability claim, regardless of its merit or eventual outcome could result in:

- decreased demand for our products;
- injury to our reputation;
- diversion of management's attention;
- significant costs of related litigation;
- payment of substantial monetary awards by us;
- product recalls or market withdrawals;
- a change in the design, manufacturing process or the indications for which our marketed products may be used;
- loss of revenue; and
- an inability to commercialize product candidates.

***We may not realize the anticipated benefits from our collaborative agreement with Siemens regarding the ClearTrace system.***

We have entered into a co-development agreement with Siemens to develop the hardware and MRI software necessary for the ClearTrace system. There can be no assurance that our co-development efforts will be successful or that we will complete development of the ClearTrace system hardware and MRI software. Under our agreement,

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Siemens is responsible for developing the software for the ClearTrace system, and we are responsible for developing the catheters and other hardware, other than the MRI scanner and workstation. The co-development agreement requires us to pay Siemens up to approximately \$2,500,000 for Siemens' successful development of the software in accordance with our specifications. As of September 30, 2011, we have paid Siemens \$800,000 and, in addition, we have accrued payables of approximately \$574,000. Once the software for the ClearTrace system is commercially available, Siemens will pay us a fixed amount for each software license sold by Siemens until we recoup our investment in the software. However, if Siemens does not successfully commercialize the software, or if our agreement with Siemens is terminated, we may not recover our investment in the software.

***We may not realize the anticipated benefits from our license and development agreements with Boston Scientific.***

We entered into license and development agreements with Boston Scientific with respect to our MRI-safety technologies. We are working with Boston Scientific to incorporate our MRI-safety technologies into Boston Scientific's implantable medical leads for cardiac and neuromodulation applications. There is no assurance that our joint development efforts will be successful or that patents will issue on any patent applications we licensed to Boston Scientific, in which case we would not receive future milestone payments or royalties provided for under our agreements with Boston Scientific. Further, Boston Scientific has no obligation to include our licensed intellectual property in its product candidates. Even if Boston Scientific incorporates our licensed intellectual property into its product candidates, Boston Scientific may be unable to obtain regulatory clearance or approval or successfully commercialize the related products, in which case we would not receive royalties in the amounts that we currently anticipate.

### **Risks Related to our Need for Financing**

***We may not be able to continue operations as a going concern and our stockholders may lose their entire investment in us.***

At September 30, 2011 and December 31, 2010, we had cash and cash equivalents of approximately \$70,000 and \$1,577,000, respectively, and stockholders' deficit of approximately \$20,547,000 and \$15,337,000, respectively. In addition, we had a net loss for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 of approximately \$6,456,000 and a net loss for the year ended December 31, 2010 of approximately \$9,454,000.

As discussed in the notes to our financial statements included elsewhere in this registration statement, our cumulative net loss since inception and the net losses we incurred in 2010, 2009 and 2008 raise substantial doubt that we will be able to continue operations as a going concern. Our independent auditors included an explanatory paragraph regarding the uncertainty of whether we will be able to continue operations as a going concern in their report on our financial statements for the year ended December 31, 2010. Our ability to continue as a going concern is dependent upon us generating cash flow sufficient to fund operations and reducing operating expenses. Our business plans may not be successful in addressing these issues. If we cannot continue as a going concern, our stockholders may lose their entire investment in us.

***We will need additional funding to continue to commercialize our ClearPoint system and to bring the ClearTrace system to market and we may not be able to raise capital when needed, which would force us to delay, reduce or eliminate our commercialization efforts or our product development programs.***

We anticipate that we will require between \$5 million and \$10 million of additional capital in order to continue to establish effective marketing and sales capabilities for our ClearPoint system and to conduct the research and development and regulatory clearance and approval activities necessary to bring the ClearTrace system to market. We believe that our existing cash resources, together with cash generated from sales of our products and cash generated from our financing activities, will be sufficient to meet our anticipated needs into June 2012. However, our operating plans may change, and we may need additional funds sooner than anticipated to meet our operational needs and capital requirements for product commercialization, product development, clinical trials, and regulatory clearances and approvals.

Additional funds may not be available when we need them on terms that are acceptable to us, or at all. If adequate funds are not available on a timely basis, we may terminate or delay the development of the ClearTrace system, or take actions that negatively impact the commercialization of our ClearPoint system.

---

## Table of Contents

Our future funding requirements will depend on many factors, including:

- the scope, rate of progress and cost of our research and development activities;
- the achievement of milestone events under, and other matters related to, our agreements with Boston Scientific and Siemens;
- the terms and timing of any future collaborative, licensing or other arrangements that we may establish;
- the cost and timing of clinical trials;
- the cost and timing of regulatory filings, clearances and approvals;
- the cost and timing of establishing sales, marketing and distribution capabilities and other corporate infrastructure;
- the cost of establishing product inventories;
- the effect of competing technological and market developments; and
- the cost of filing, prosecuting, defending and enforcing any patent claims and other intellectual property rights.

***Raising additional capital by issuing securities or through collaborative or licensing arrangements may cause dilution to existing stockholders, restrict our operations or require us to relinquish proprietary rights.***

To the extent that we raise additional capital through the sale of equity or convertible debt securities, your ownership interest will be diluted, and the terms may include liquidation or other preferences that adversely affect your rights as a stockholder. Debt financing, if available, may involve agreements that include covenants limiting or restricting our ability to take specific actions such as incurring additional debt, making capital expenditures or declaring dividends. If we raise additional funds through collaboration or licensing arrangements with third parties, we may have to relinquish valuable rights to our technologies or products or grant licenses on terms that are not favorable to us. Any of these events could adversely affect our ability to achieve our product development and commercialization goals and have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

### **Risks Related to our Intellectual Property**

***If we, or the third parties from whom we license intellectual property, are unable to secure and maintain patent or other intellectual property protection for the intellectual property covering our marketed products or our product candidates, our ability to compete will be harmed.***

Our commercial success depends, in part, on obtaining patent and other intellectual property protection for the technologies contained in our marketed products and product candidates. The patent positions of medical device companies, including ours, can be highly uncertain and involve complex and evolving legal and factual questions. Our patent position is uncertain and complex, in part, because of our dependence on intellectual property that we license from others. If we, or the third parties from whom we license intellectual property, fail to obtain adequate patent or other intellectual property protection for intellectual property covering our marketed products or product candidates, or if any protection is reduced or eliminated, others could use the intellectual property covering our marketed products or product candidates, resulting in harm to our competitive business position. In addition, patent and other intellectual property protection may not provide us with a competitive advantage against competitors that devise ways of making competitive products without infringing any patents that we own or have rights to.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

As of January 31, 2012, our portfolio included nine wholly-owned issued United States patents (including one design patent), 27 wholly-owned pending United States patent applications (including three provisional applications), seven co-owned issued United States patents, eight co-owned pending United States patent applications, seven wholly-owned issued foreign patent, 42 wholly-owned pending foreign patent applications (including one Patent Cooperation Treaty application), 11 co-owned issued foreign patents and 19 co-owned pending foreign patent applications. In addition, as of January 31, 2012, we had licensed rights to 14 United States and 15 foreign third-party issued patents, and we had licensed rights to six United States and 11 foreign third-party pending patent applications. United States patents and patent applications may be subject to interference proceedings and United States patents may be subject to reissue and reexamination proceedings in the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Foreign patents may be subject to opposition or comparable proceedings in the corresponding foreign patent offices. Any of these proceedings could result in either loss of the patent or denial of the patent application, or loss or reduction in the scope of one or more of the claims of the patent or patent application. Changes in either patent laws or in interpretations of patent laws may also diminish the value of our intellectual property or narrow the scope of our protection. Interference, reexamination and opposition proceedings may be costly and time consuming, and we, or the third parties from whom we license intellectual property, may be unsuccessful in such proceedings. Thus, any patents that we own or license may provide limited or no protection against competitors. In addition, our pending patent applications and those we may file in the future may not result in patents being issued or may have claims that do not cover our products or product candidates. Even if any of our pending or future patent applications are issued, they may not provide us with adequate protection or any competitive advantages. Our ability to develop additional patentable technology is also uncertain.

Non-payment or delay in payment of patent fees or annuities, whether intentional or unintentional, may also result in the loss of patents or patent rights important to our business. Many countries, including certain countries in Europe, have compulsory licensing laws under which a patent owner may be compelled to grant licenses to third parties. In addition, many countries limit the enforceability of patents against third parties, including government agencies or government contractors. In these countries, the patent owner may have limited remedies, which could materially diminish the value of the patent. In addition, the laws of some foreign countries do not protect intellectual property rights to the same extent as do the laws of the United States, particularly in the field of medical devices and procedures.

***Others may assert that our ClearPoint system or the ClearTrace system infringe their intellectual property rights, which may cause us to engage in costly disputes and, if we are not successful in defending ourselves, could also cause us to pay substantial damages and prohibit us from selling our marketed products.***

There may be United States and foreign patents issued to third parties that relate to our business, including MRI-guided intervention systems and the components and methods and processes related to these systems. Some of these patents may be broad enough to cover one or more aspects of our present technologies and/or may cover aspects of our future technologies. We do not know whether any of these patents, if asserted, would be held valid, enforceable and infringed. We cannot assure that a court or administrative body would agree with any arguments or defenses we may have concerning invalidity, unenforceability or non-infringement of any third-party patent.

The medical device industry has been characterized by extensive litigation and administrative proceedings regarding patents and other intellectual property rights, and companies have employed such actions to gain a competitive advantage. If third parties assert infringement or other intellectual property claims against us, our technical and management personnel will experience a significant diversion of time and effort and we will incur large expenses defending our company. If third parties in any patent action are successful, our patent portfolio may be damaged, we may have to pay substantial damages and we may be required to stop selling our marketed products or obtain a license which, if available at all, may require us to pay substantial royalties. We cannot be certain that we will have the financial resources or the substantive arguments to defend our marketed products or product candidates from infringement or our patents from claims of invalidity or unenforceability, or to defend our marketed products or product candidates against allegations of infringement of third-party patents. In addition, any public announcements related to litigation or administrative proceedings initiated by us, or initiated or threatened against us, could negatively impact our business.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

***If we lose access to critical third-party software that is integrated into our ClearPoint system software, our costs could increase and sales of our ClearPoint system would be delayed, potentially hurting our competitive position.***

We license software from a third party that is integrated into the software component of our ClearPoint system. Our license continues through July 2015. If we are unable to continue to license this third-party software, we would not be able to continue to commercialize our ClearPoint system until equivalent software could be identified, licensed or developed, and integrated into the software component of our ClearPoint system. These delays, if they occur, could harm our business, operating results and financial condition.

***We will be required to assign some of our intellectual property to Boston Scientific if we fail to satisfy certain financial requirements.***

During 2009, Boston Scientific loaned us \$3.5 million pursuant to the terms of three convertible promissory notes. Those loans mature in October, November and December 2014, respectively. While those loans remain outstanding, we must comply with the following requirements, beginning on the effective date of this registration statement: (1) we must pay when due all of our payroll obligations; (2) we must not suffer an event of default under any indebtedness for borrowed money; (3) we must maintain net working capital, which is defined as our current assets minus our current liabilities other than deferred revenue, of at least \$(7.6) million as of the end of each month through May 2012; (4) we must maintain net working capital of at least \$(6.0) million as of the end of each month from June 2012 through December 2012; (5) we must maintain net working capital of at least \$(2.0) million as of the end of each month from January 2013 through March 2013; and (6) we must have a net working capital ratio, which is defined as our current assets divided by our current liabilities other than deferred revenue, of at least 0.80 as of the end of April 2013 and as of the end of each month thereafter.

If we fail to meet any of those requirements while our loans from Boston Scientific are outstanding, we will be required to assign Boston Scientific title to the patents and patent applications that we own and that we license to Boston Scientific. However, upon any such assignment to Boston Scientific, Boston Scientific will grant us an exclusive, royalty-free, perpetual worldwide license to the same patents and patent applications in all fields of use outside neuromodulation and implantable medical leads for cardiac applications. As of January 31, 2012, our licensing arrangements with Boston Scientific included six wholly owned issued United States patents, three wholly owned pending United States patent applications, seven wholly owned issued foreign patents, seven wholly owned pending foreign patent applications, seven co-owned issued United States patents, eight co-owned pending United States patent applications, 11 co-owned issued foreign patents and 19 co-owned pending foreign patent applications.

***We may be subject to damages resulting from claims that our employees or we have wrongfully used or disclosed alleged trade secrets or other proprietary information of their former employers.***

Many of our employees were previously employed at universities or other medical device companies, including competitors or potential competitors. In the future, we could be subject to claims that these employees, or we, have inadvertently or otherwise used or disclosed trade secrets or other proprietary information of their former employers. Litigation may be necessary to defend against these claims. If we fail in defending against such claims, a court could order us to pay substantial damages and prohibit us from using technologies or features that are essential to our products and product candidates, if such technologies or features are found to incorporate or be derived from the trade secrets or other proprietary information of the former employers. In addition, we may lose valuable intellectual property rights or personnel. A loss of key research personnel or their work product could hamper or prevent our ability to commercialize certain product candidates, which could severely harm our business. Even if we are successful in defending against these claims, such litigation could result in substantial costs and be a distraction to our employees and management.

***If the combination of patents, trade secrets and contractual provisions that we rely on to protect our intellectual property is inadequate, our ability to successfully commercialize our marketed products and product candidates will be harmed, and we may not be able to operate our business profitably.***

Our success and ability to compete is dependent, in part, upon our ability to maintain the proprietary nature of our technologies. We rely on a combination of patent, copyright, trademark and trade secret law and nondisclosure agreements to protect our intellectual property. However, such methods may not be adequate to protect us or permit us to gain or maintain a competitive advantage. Our patent applications may not issue as patents in a form that will be advantageous to us, or at all. Our issued patents, and those that may issue in the future, may be challenged, invalidated or circumvented, which could limit our ability to stop competitors from marketing related products.

To protect our proprietary rights, we may in the future need to assert claims of infringement against third parties to protect our intellectual property. There can be no assurance that we will be successful on the merits in any enforcement effort. In addition, we may not have sufficient resources to litigate, enforce or defend our intellectual property rights. Litigation to enforce our intellectual property rights in patents, copyrights or trademarks is highly unpredictable, expensive and time

consuming and would divert human and monetary resources away from managing our business, all of which could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations even if we were to prevail in such litigation. In the event of an adverse judgment, a court could hold that some or all of our asserted intellectual property rights are not infringed, or that they are invalid or unenforceable, and could award attorney fees.

Despite our efforts to safeguard our unpatented and unregistered intellectual property rights, we may not be successful in doing so or the steps taken by us in this regard may not be adequate to detect or deter misappropriation of our technologies or to prevent an unauthorized third party from copying or otherwise obtaining and using our products, technologies or other information that we regard as proprietary. Additionally, third parties may be able to design around our patents. Furthermore, the laws of foreign countries may not protect our proprietary rights to the same extent as the laws of the United States. Our inability to adequately protect our intellectual property could allow our competitors and others to produce products based on our technologies, which could substantially impair our ability to compete.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

We have entered into confidentiality and intellectual property assignment agreements with our employees and consultants as one of the ways we seek to protect our intellectual property and other proprietary technologies. However, these agreements may not be enforceable or may not provide meaningful protection for our trade secrets or other proprietary information in the event of unauthorized use or disclosure or other breaches of the agreements.

Our employees and consultants may unintentionally or willfully disclose our confidential information to competitors, and confidentiality agreements may not provide an adequate remedy in the event of unauthorized disclosure of confidential information. Enforcing a claim that a third party illegally obtained and is using our proprietary know-how is expensive and time-consuming, and the outcome is unpredictable. In addition, courts outside the United States are sometimes less willing to protect know-how than courts in the United States. Moreover, our competitors may independently develop equivalent knowledge, methods and know-how. Failure to obtain or maintain intellectual property protection could adversely affect our competitive business position.

*We may be dependent upon one of our licenses from The Johns Hopkins University to develop and commercialize some components of the ClearTrace system.*

We have entered into exclusive license agreements with The Johns Hopkins University, or Johns Hopkins, with respect to a number of technologies owned by Johns Hopkins. Under one of those agreements, which we entered into in 1998, we licensed a number of technologies relating to devices, systems and methods for performing MRI-guided interventions, particularly MRI-guided cardiac ablation procedures. Therefore, that license is important to the development of the ClearTrace system. Without that license, we may not be able to commercialize some of the components of the ClearTrace system when, and if, developed, subject to FDA clearance or approval. Johns Hopkins has the right to terminate the license under specified circumstances, including a breach by us and failure to cure such breach or in the event we file for bankruptcy. We are obligated to use commercially reasonable efforts to develop and commercialize products based on the licensed patents and patent applications. This obligation could require us to take actions related to the development of the ClearTrace system that we would otherwise not take.

### **Risks Related to Regulatory Compliance**

*We operate in a highly-regulated industry and any failure to comply with the extensive government regulations may subject us to fines, injunctions and other penalties that could harm our business.*

We are subject to extensive regulation by the FDA and various other federal, state and foreign governmental authorities. Government regulations and foreign requirements specific to medical devices are wide ranging and govern, among other things:

- design, development and manufacturing;
- testing, labeling and storage;
- product safety;
- marketing, sales and distribution;
- premarket clearance or approval;
- recordkeeping procedures;
- advertising and promotions;
- recalls and field corrective actions;
- post-market surveillance, including reporting of deaths or serious injuries and malfunctions that, if they were to recur, could lead to death or serious injury; and
- product export.



---

## [Table of Contents](#)

We are subject to ongoing FDA requirements, including: required submissions of safety and other post-market information; manufacturing facility registration and device listing requirements; compliance with FDA's medical device current Good Manufacturing Practice regulations, as codified in the Quality System Regulation, or QSR; requirements regarding field corrections and removals of our marketed products; reporting of adverse events and certain product malfunctions to the FDA; and numerous recordkeeping requirements. If we or any of our collaborators or suppliers fail to comply with applicable regulatory requirements, a regulatory agency may take action against us, including any of the following sanctions:

- untitled letters, warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties;
- customer notifications or orders for the repair or replacement of our marketed products or refunds;
- recall, detention or seizure of our marketed products;
- operating restrictions or partial suspension or total shutdown of production;
- refusing or delaying requests for 510(k) clearances or PMA approvals of new products or modified products;
- withdrawing 510(k) clearances or PMA approvals that have already been granted; or
- refusing to grant export approval for our marketed products.

The FDA's and foreign regulatory agencies' statutes, regulations or policies may change, and additional government regulation or statutes may be enacted, which could increase post-approval regulatory requirements, or delay, suspend or prevent marketing of our products. We cannot predict the likelihood, nature or extent of adverse governmental regulation that might arise from future legislative or administrative action, either in the United States or abroad.

***If we or our third-party suppliers fail to comply with the FDA's QSR or any applicable state equivalent, our manufacturing operations could be interrupted and our potential product sales and operating results could suffer.***

We and some of our third-party suppliers are required to comply with the FDA's QSR, which covers the methods and documentation of the design, testing, production, control, quality assurance, labeling, packaging, sterilization, storage and shipping of our products and product candidates. We and our suppliers will also be subject to the regulations of foreign jurisdictions regarding the manufacturing process to the extent we market our products in these jurisdictions. The FDA enforces the QSR through periodic and unannounced inspections of manufacturing facilities. Our facilities have not been inspected by the FDA for QSR compliance. We anticipate that we and certain of our third-party suppliers will be subject to future inspections. The failure by us or one of our third-party suppliers to comply with applicable statutes and regulations administered by the FDA and other regulatory bodies, or the failure to timely and adequately respond to any adverse inspectional observations, could result in enforcement actions against us, which could impair our ability to produce our products in a cost-effective and timely manner in order to meet our customers' demands. If we fail to comply with the FDA's QSR or any applicable state equivalent, we would be required to incur the costs and take the actions necessary to bring our operations into compliance, which may have a negative impact on our future sales and our ability to generate a profit.

***Our products may in the future be subject to product recalls that could harm our reputation, business operations and financial results.***

The FDA and similar foreign governmental authorities have the authority to require the recall of commercialized products in the event of material deficiencies or defects in design, manufacture or labeling. In the case of the FDA, the authority to require a recall must be based on an FDA finding that there is a reasonable probability that the device would cause serious injury or death. In addition, foreign governmental bodies have the authority to require the recall of our products in the event of material deficiencies or defects in design or manufacture. Manufacturers may, under their own initiative, recall a product if any material deficiency in a device is

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

found. A government-mandated or voluntary recall by us could occur as a result of component failures, manufacturing errors, design or labeling defects or other deficiencies and issues. Recalls of any of our products would divert managerial and financial resources and have an adverse effect on our financial condition and results of operations. We may initiate certain voluntary recalls involving our products in the future. Companies are required to maintain certain records of recalls, even if they are not reportable to the FDA. If we determine that certain of those recalls do not require notification to the FDA, the FDA may disagree with our determinations and require us to report those actions as recalls. A future recall announcement could harm our reputation with customers and negatively affect our sales. In addition, the FDA could take enforcement actions against us, which could impair our ability to produce our products in a cost-effective and timely manner in order to meet our customers' demands. Regulatory investigations or product recalls could also result in our incurring substantial costs, losing revenues and implementing a change in the design, manufacturing process or the indications for which our products may be used, each of which would harm our business.

***If our products cause or contribute to a death or a serious injury, or malfunction in certain ways, we will be subject to medical device reporting regulations, which can result in voluntary corrective actions or agency enforcement actions.***

Under the FDA's medical device reporting regulations, we are required to report to the FDA any incident in which our products may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or in which our products malfunctioned and, if the malfunction were to recur, would likely cause or contribute to death or serious injury. In the future, we may experience events that may require reporting to the FDA pursuant to the medical device reporting regulations. In addition, all manufacturers placing medical devices in European Union markets are legally bound to report any serious or potentially serious incidents involving devices they produce or sell to the relevant authority in whose jurisdiction the incident occurred. Any adverse event involving our products could result in future voluntary corrective actions, such as recalls or customer notifications, or agency action, such as inspection, mandatory recall or other enforcement action. Any corrective action, whether voluntary or involuntary, as well as defending ourselves in a lawsuit, will require the dedication of our time and capital, distract management from operating our business, and may harm our reputation and financial results. In addition, failure to report such adverse events to appropriate government authorities on a timely basis, or at all, could result in an enforcement action against us.

***We may incur significant liability if it is determined that we are promoting off-label uses of our products in violation of federal and state regulations in the United States or elsewhere.***

We obtained 510(k) clearance of our ClearPoint system from the FDA for a general neurological intervention claim. This general neurological intervention indication is the same indication for use that applies to other devices that have traditionally been used in the performance of stereotactic neurological procedures. Unless and until we receive regulatory clearance or approval for use of our ClearPoint system in specific procedures, uses in procedures other than general neurological intervention procedures, such as biopsies and catheter and electrode insertions, may be considered off-label uses of our ClearPoint system.

Under the federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act and other similar laws, we are prohibited from labeling or promoting our ClearPoint system, or training physicians, for such off-label uses. The FDA defines labeling to include not only the physical label attached to the product, but also items accompanying the product. This definition also includes items as diverse as materials that appear on a company's website. As a result, we are not permitted to promote uses of our products that are not cleared or approved, whether on our website, in product brochures or in customer communications. This prohibition means that the FDA could deem it unlawful for us to make claims about the use of our ClearPoint system for specific neurological procedures, such as DBS electrode placement procedures, or proactively discuss or provide information or training on the use of our ClearPoint system for those specific neurological procedures. However, although manufacturers are not permitted to promote for off-label uses, in their practice of medicine, physicians may lawfully choose to use medical devices for off-label uses. Therefore, a physician could use our ClearPoint system for uses not covered by the cleared labeling. This would constitute an off-label use. We expect that physicians will use our ClearPoint system for a variety of specific neurological procedures.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

The FDA and other regulatory agencies actively enforce regulations prohibiting promotion of off-label uses and the promotion of products for which marketing clearance or approval has not been obtained. If the FDA determines that our promotional materials or training constitutes promotion of an off-label use, it could request that we modify our training or promotional materials or subject us to regulatory or enforcement actions, including the issuance of an untitled letter, warning letter, injunction, seizure, civil fine and criminal penalties. It is also possible that other federal, state or foreign enforcement authorities might take action if they consider our promotional or training materials to constitute promotion of an unapproved use, which could result in significant fines or penalties under other statutory authorities, such as laws prohibiting false claims for reimbursement. In that event, our reputation could be damaged and market adoption of our products would be impaired. Due to these legal constraints, our sales and marketing efforts will focus on the general technical attributes and benefits of our ClearPoint system and the FDA cleared indications for use. In addition, the off-label use of our products may increase the risk of injury to patients, and, in turn, the risk of product liability claims. Product liability claims are expensive to defend and could divert our management's attention and result in substantial damage awards against us.

***We may be subject, directly or indirectly, to federal and state healthcare fraud and abuse laws and regulations and could face substantial penalties if we are unable to fully comply with such laws.***

Although we do not provide healthcare services or receive payments directly from Medicare, Medicaid or other third-party payors for our marketed products or the procedures in which our marketed products may be used, many state and federal healthcare laws and regulations governing financial relationships between medical device companies and healthcare providers apply to our business and we could be subject to enforcement by both the federal government, private whistleblowers and the states in which we conduct our business. The healthcare laws and regulations that may affect our ability to operate include:

- The federal healthcare programs' Anti-Kickback Statute, which prohibits, among other things, individuals or entities from knowingly and willfully soliciting, receiving, offering or providing any kickback, bribe or other remuneration, directly or indirectly, in exchange for or to induce the purchase, lease or order, or arranging for or recommending of, any item or service for which payment may be made under a federal healthcare program such as the Medicare and Medicaid programs.
- Federal false claims laws, which prohibit, among other things, individuals or entities from knowingly presenting, or causing to be presented, claims for payment to Medicare, Medicaid or other federally-funded healthcare programs that are false or fraudulent, or are for items or services not provided as claimed, and which may apply to entities like us to the extent that our interactions with customers may affect their billing or coding practices. Changes to the Federal false claims law enacted as part of the Health Care Reform Law will likely increase the number of whistleblower cases brought against providers and suppliers of health care items and services.
- The federal Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act of 1996, or HIPAA, in addition to the privacy and security rules normally associated with it, which are discussed below, established new federal crimes for knowingly and willfully executing a scheme to defraud any healthcare benefit program or making false statements in connection with the delivery of or payment for healthcare benefits, items or services.
- State and foreign law equivalents and analogues of each of the above federal laws, such as anti-kickback and false claims laws and the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, which may apply to items or services reimbursed by any third-party payor, including commercial insurers, or when physicians are employees of a foreign government entity.
- The Health Care Reform Law imposes certain reporting obligations on manufacturers of drugs, devices and biologics. Specifically, on March 31, 2013, and on the 90th day of each calendar year thereafter, these manufacturers must report all payments or other transfers of value to or on behalf of a physician or teaching hospital by such manufacturers as well as any ownership or investment interest held by physicians in such manufacturers. On December 19, 2011, CMS issued proposed regulations to implement this so-called "Sunshine" provision of the Health Care Reform Law. The proposed regulations suggest that we will be subject to such data collecting, reporting and public disclosure obligation. Data collecting obligations will commence on the effective date of final regulations, which is expected in 2012 with reporting obligations beginning on March 31, 2013. Violations of the reporting requirements are subject to civil monetary penalties, capped at \$150,000 annually for failing to report, and \$1,000,000 for knowingly failing to report. Reported data will be made publicly available by September 30, 2013.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

- The Health Care Reform Law also grants the Office of Inspector General additional authority to obtain information from any individual or entity to validate claims for payment or to evaluate the economy, efficiency or effectiveness of the Medicare and Medicaid programs, expands the permissible exclusion authority to include any false statements or misrepresentations of material facts, enhances the civil monetary penalties for false statements or misrepresentation of material facts, and enhances the Federal Sentencing Guidelines for those convicted of Federal healthcare offenses.

The medical device industry has been under heightened scrutiny as the subject of government investigations and government enforcement or private whistleblower actions under the Anti-Kickback Statute and the False Claims Act involving manufacturers who allegedly offered unlawful inducements to potential or existing customers in an attempt to procure their business, including specifically arrangements with physician consultants.

We have agreements with physicians that may be scrutinized or may be subject to reporting requirements in the future, including consulting contracts for product development in which we compensate physicians for various services, including:

- keeping us informed of new developments in their respective fields of practice;
- advising us on our research and development projects related to their respective fields;
- advising us on improvements to methods, processes and devices related to their respective fields (such as advice on the development of prototype devices);
- assisting us with the technical evaluation of our methods, processes and devices related to their respective fields; and
- advising us with respect to the commercialization of products in their respective fields.

We may enter into similar agreements with physicians in the future. Likewise, we may enter into agreements with physicians to provide training and other similar services on the proper use of our products.

The Health Care Reform Law mandates increased transparency of arrangements between physicians and medical device companies, which we expect will increase our overall cost of compliance. We believe that this increased transparency will also result in a heightened level of government scrutiny of the relationships between physicians and medical device companies. While we believe that all of our arrangements with physicians comply with applicable law, the increased level of scrutiny, coupled with the expanded enforcement tools available to the government under the Health Care Reform Law, may increase the likelihood of a governmental investigation. If we become subject to such an investigation, our business and operations would be adversely affected even if we ultimately prevail because the cost of defending such investigation would be substantial. Moreover, companies subject to governmental investigations could lose both overall market value and market share during the course of the investigation.

In addition, we may provide customers with information on products that could be deemed to influence their coding or billing practices, and may have sales, marketing or other arrangements with hospitals and other providers that could also be the subject of scrutiny under these laws. If our operations are found to be in violation of any of the laws described above or any other governmental regulations that apply to us, we may be subject to penalties, including civil and criminal penalties, damages, fines, exclusion from the Medicare and Medicaid programs and the curtailment or restructuring of our operations. Any penalties, damages, fines, exclusions, curtailment or restructuring of our operations could adversely affect our ability to operate our business and our financial results. The risk of our being found in violation of these laws is increased by the fact that many of these laws are broad and their provisions are open to a variety of interpretations. Any action against us for violation of these laws, even if we successfully defend against it, could cause us to incur significant legal expenses and divert our management's attention from the operation of our business. If the surgeons or other providers or entities with whom we do business are found to be non-compliant with applicable laws, they may be subject to sanctions, which could also have a negative impact on our business.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

*We may be subject to privacy and data protection laws governing the transmission, security and privacy of health information which may impose restrictions on technologies and subject us to penalties if we are unable to fully comply with such laws.*

Numerous federal, state and international laws and regulations govern the collection, use, disclosure, storage and transmission of patient-identifiable health information. These laws include:

- HIPAA and its implementing regulations, the HIPAA Privacy and Security Rules, apply to covered entities, which include most healthcare facilities that purchase and use our products. The HIPAA Privacy and Security Rules set forth minimum standards for safeguarding individually identifiable health information, impose certain requirements relating to the privacy, security and transmission of individually identifiable health information and provide certain rights to individuals with respect to that information. HIPAA also requires covered entities to contractually bind third parties, known as business associates, in the event that they perform an activity or service for or on behalf of the covered entity that involves access to patient identifiable health information.
- The federal Health Information Technology for Economic and Clinical Health Act, or HITECH, which was enacted in February 2009, strengthens and expands the HIPAA Privacy and Security Rules and its restrictions on use and disclosure of patient identifiable health information, including imposing liability on business associates of “covered entities”.
- Both HITECH and most states have data breach laws that necessitate the notification in certain situations of a breach that compromises the privacy or security of personal information.
- Other federal and state laws restricting the use and protecting the privacy and security of patient information may apply, many of which are not preempted by HIPAA.
- Federal and state consumer protection laws are being applied increasingly by the United States Federal Trade Commission, or FTC, and state attorneys’ general to regulate the collection, use, storage and disclosure of personal or patient information, through websites or otherwise, and to regulate the presentation of website content.
- Other countries also have, or are developing, laws governing the collection, use and transmission of personal or patient information.
- Federal and state laws regulating the conduct of research with human subjects.

We are required to comply with federal and state laws governing the transmission, security and privacy of patient identifiable health information that we may obtain or have access to in connection with manufacture and sale of our marketed products. We do not believe that we are a HIPAA covered entity because we do not submit electronic claims to third-party payors, but there may be limited circumstances in which we may operate as a business associate to covered entities if we receive patient identifiable data through activities such as training providers on the use of our products or investigating product performance or if our products store patient identifiable health information on behalf of a healthcare provider. We may be required to make costly system modifications to comply with the HIPAA privacy and security requirements that will be imposed on us contractually through business associate agreements by covered entities and directly under HITECH provisions that became effective in February 2010. Because the final regulatory changes to the HIPAA regulations required as part of HITECH have not yet been released, we are unable to predict what the impact on our business may be. Our failure to comply may result in criminal and civil liability because the potential for enforcement action against business associates is now greater. Enforcement actions can be costly and interrupt regular operations which may adversely affect our business.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

In addition, numerous other federal and state laws protect the confidentiality of patient information as well as employee personal information, including state medical privacy laws, state social security number protection laws, state data breach laws and federal and state consumer protection laws. These various laws in many cases are not preempted by the HIPAA rules and may be subject to varying interpretations by the courts and government agencies, creating complex compliance issues for us and our customers and potentially exposing us to additional expense, adverse publicity and liability.

In connection with any clinical trials we conduct, we will be subject to state and federal privacy and human subject protection regulations. The HIPAA requirements and other human subjects research laws could create liability for us or increase our cost of doing business because we must depend on our research collaborators to comply with the applicable laws. We may adopt policies and procedures that facilitate our collaborators' compliance, and contractually require compliance, but we cannot ensure that non-employee collaborators or investigators will comply with applicable laws. As a result, unauthorized uses and disclosures of research subject information in violation of the law may occur. These violations may lead to sanctions that will adversely affect our business.

### **Risks Related to Facilities, Employees and Growth**

***We are dependent on our senior management team, engineering team, sales and marketing team and key research and physician advisors, and the loss of any of them could harm our business.***

We are highly dependent on members of our senior management, in particular Kimble L. Jenkins, our President, Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of the Board of Directors, and Peter G. Piferi, our Chief Operating Officer. The loss of members of our senior management team, engineering team, sales and marketing team and key research and physician advisors, or our inability to attract or retain other qualified personnel or advisors, could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations. We do not maintain key employee life insurance on any of our personnel other than for Mr. Jenkins and Mr. Piferi. Although we have obtained key employee insurance covering Mr. Jenkins and Mr. Piferi in the amount of \$2,000,000, this would not fully compensate us for the loss of Mr. Jenkins' or Mr. Piferi's services.

We adopted our Key Personnel Incentive Plan, which is described in more detail in "Executive Compensation–Benefit Plans," to provide Dr. Paul Bottomley, who is a key research advisor, and Mr. Parag Karmarkar, who is a key member of our engineering team, the opportunity to receive incentive bonus payments based on future performance of services to us or upon a sale of our company. However, if Dr. Bottomley or Mr. Karmarkar dies, becomes disabled or is involuntarily terminated by us without cause, we nevertheless would be obligated to make the incentive bonus payments otherwise provided under the plan. The obligation to make these payments could have a material adverse effect on our financial position. We may obtain life insurance on Dr. Bottomley and Mr. Karmarkar to reduce our financial exposure in the event of a participant's death. We also adopted the Cardiac EP Business Participation Plan, which is described in more detail in "Executive Compensation–Benefit Plans," to provide Dr. Nassir Marrouche, who is a key product development advisor, with financial rewards in the event that we sell our business operations relating to catheter-based MRI-guided cardiac ablation to treat cardiac arrhythmias, which we refer to as our cardiac EP business operations. If we sell our cardiac EP business operations or our entire company, we will be required to make a payment to Dr. Marrouche which is calculated as a percentage of the purchase price paid for, or allocated to, our cardiac EP business operations.

***We need to hire and retain additional qualified personnel to grow and manage our business. If we are unable to attract and retain qualified personnel, our business and growth could be seriously harmed.***

Our performance depends on the talents and efforts of our employees. Our future success will depend on our ability to attract, retain and motivate highly skilled personnel in all areas of our organization. We plan to continue to grow our business and will need to hire additional personnel to support this growth. We believe that there are only a limited number of individuals with the requisite skills to serve in many of our key positions, and we compete for key personnel with other medical device companies, as well as universities and research institutions. It is often difficult to hire and retain these persons, and we may be unable to replace key persons if they leave or fill new positions requiring key persons with appropriate experience. If we experience difficulties locating and hiring suitable personnel in the future, our growth may be hindered. Qualified individuals are in high demand, particularly in the medical device industry, and we may incur significant costs to attract and retain them. Employees that hold shares of our common stock or options to purchase our common stock may be more likely to leave us following the establishment of a public market for our common stock. If we are unable to attract and retain the personnel we need to succeed, our business and growth could be harmed.

---

## **Table of Contents**

***If we do not effectively manage our growth, we may be unable to successfully develop, market and sell our products.***

Our future revenue and operating results will depend on our ability to manage the anticipated growth of our business. In order to achieve our business objectives, we must continue to grow. However, continued growth presents numerous challenges, including:

- implementing appropriate operational and financial systems and controls;
- expanding our assembly capacity and increasing production;
- expanding our sales and marketing infrastructure and capabilities;
- improving our information systems;
- identifying, attracting and retaining qualified personnel in our areas of activity; and
- hiring, training, managing and supervising our personnel.

We cannot be certain that our systems, controls, infrastructure and personnel will be adequate to support our future operations. Any failure to effectively manage our growth could impede our ability to successfully develop, market and sell our products and our business will be harmed.

***Our operations are vulnerable to interruption or loss due to natural disasters, power loss and other events beyond our control, which would adversely affect our business.***

We will conduct a significant portion of our activities, including component processing, final assembly, packaging and distribution activities for our ClearPoint system, at a facility located in Irvine, California, which is a seismically active area that has experienced major earthquakes in the past, as well as other natural disasters, including wildfires. We have taken precautions to safeguard our facility, including obtaining business interruption insurance. However, any future natural disaster, such as an earthquake or a wildfire, could significantly disrupt our operations, and delay or prevent product assembly and shipment during the time required to repair, rebuild or replace our facility, which could be lengthy and result in significant expenses. Furthermore, the insurance coverage we maintain may not be adequate to cover our losses in any particular case or continue to be available at commercially reasonable rates and terms. In addition, our facility may be subject to shortages of electrical power, natural gas, water and other energy supplies. Any future shortage or conservation measure could disrupt our operations and cause expense, thus adversely affecting our business and financial results.

### **Risks Related to Our Shares of Common Stock**

***Our common stock has no active trading market. Unless an active trading market develops for our common stock, you may be unable to sell your shares.***

Currently, there is no active trading market for our common stock, and an active trading market for our common stock may not develop or be sustained. There are a number of factors that will make it difficult for an active trading market in our common stock to develop. These factors include:

- stock analysts, stock brokers, institutional investors and other members of the investment community may be reluctant to follow us or create a market in our stock;
- our stock may be deemed to be “penny stock,” which means stock traded at a price less than \$5.00 per share, which will make it unsuitable for some investors to purchase; and
- there are a limited number of stock brokers that will be willing to act as market makers for our common stock, which is essential for establishing an active trading market.

---

## Table of Contents

We intend to have our common stock quoted on the OTC Bulletin Board. This market lacks the credibility of established stock markets and is characterized by a lack of liquidity, sporadic trading and larger gaps between bid and ask prices. Compared to a seasoned issuer with stock traded on an established market, which typically results in a large and steady volume of trading activity, there may be periods when trading activity in our shares is minimal or nonexistent. Trading in our common stock will likely be characterized by large swings in market prices. Unless an active trading market for our common stock is developed and maintained, you may be unable to sell your stock at or above the price you paid, or at all.

***If a trading market in our common stock does develop, our stock price is likely to be volatile.***

If a trading market in our common stock develops, the market will likely be subject to wide fluctuations in price. Additionally, stocks quoted on the OTC Bulletin Board have traditionally experienced significant price and volume fluctuations that often are unrelated or disproportionate to the operating performance of a company traded in such markets. Regardless of our actual operating performance, the market price for our common stock may materially decline from time to time. There can be no assurance that you will be able to sell your stock at a time when the market price is greater than what you paid. If a large volume of our shares of common stock is posted for sale, it will likely cause the market price of our common stock to decline.

***Our directors, executive officers and principal stockholders and their respective affiliates have substantial control over us and could delay or prevent a change in corporate control.***

As of January 31, 2012, our directors and executive officers, together with their affiliates, beneficially owned, in the aggregate, 31.0% of our common stock. As a result, these stockholders, acting together, have substantial control over the outcome of matters submitted to our stockholders for approval, including the election of directors and any merger, consolidation or sale of all or substantially all of our assets. In addition, these stockholders, acting together, have significant influence over the management and affairs of our company. Accordingly, this concentration of ownership may have the effect of:

- delaying, deferring or preventing a change in corporate control;
- impeding a merger, consolidation, takeover or other business combination involving us; or
- discouraging a potential acquirer from making a tender offer or otherwise attempting to obtain control of us.

***We have not paid dividends in the past and do not expect to pay dividends in the future.***

We have never declared or paid cash dividends on our capital stock. We currently intend to retain all future earnings for the operation and expansion of our business and, therefore, do not anticipate declaring or paying cash dividends in the foreseeable future. The payment of dividends will be at the discretion of our Board of Directors and will depend on our results of operations, capital requirements, financial condition, prospects, contractual arrangements, any limitations on payments of dividends present in any of our future debt agreements and other factors our Board of Directors may deem relevant. If we do not pay dividends, a return on your investment will only occur if our stock price appreciates.

***Anti-takeover provisions in our certificate of incorporation, bylaws and Delaware law could prevent or delay a change in control of our company.***

Provisions in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, as well as provisions of Delaware law, may discourage, delay or prevent a merger, acquisition or change of control. These provisions could also discourage proxy contests and make it more difficult for stockholders to elect directors and take other corporate actions. These provisions:



---

## Table of Contents

- permit our Board of Directors to issue shares of preferred stock, with any rights, preferences and privileges as they may designate, including the right to approve an acquisition or other change in our control;
- provide that the authorized number of directors may be changed only by resolution of the Board of Directors;
- provide that all vacancies, including newly created directorships, may, except as otherwise required by law, be filled by the affirmative vote of a majority of directors then in office, even if less than a quorum;
- require that any action to be taken by our stockholders must be effected at a duly called annual or special meeting of stockholders and not be taken by written consent;
- provide that stockholders seeking to present proposals before a meeting of stockholders or to nominate candidates for election as directors at a meeting of stockholders must provide notice in writing in a timely manner, and also specify requirements as to the form and content of a stockholder's notice;
- do not provide for cumulative voting rights (therefore allowing the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock entitled to vote in any election of directors to elect all of the directors standing for election, if they should so choose);
- provide that special meetings of our stockholders may be called only by the chairman of the Board of Directors, our Chief Executive Officer or by the Board of Directors pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the total number of authorized directors; and
- provide that stockholders will be permitted to amend our amended and restated bylaws only upon receiving at least 66 2/3% of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of all outstanding shares then entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class.

In addition, we are subject to Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, which generally prohibits a Delaware corporation from engaging in any broad range of business combinations with any stockholder who owns, or at any time in the last three years owned, 15% or more of our outstanding voting stock for a period of three years following the date on which the stockholder became an interested stockholder. This provision could have the effect of delaying or preventing a change of control, whether or not it is desired by or beneficial to our stockholders.

***We will incur significant increased costs as a result of operating as a public company, and our management will be required to divert attention from product development and commercialization and to devote substantial resources and time to new compliance initiatives.***

As a public company, we will incur significant legal, accounting and other expenses that we did not incur as a private company. We are working with our independent legal and accounting advisors to identify those areas in which changes should be made to our financial and management control systems to manage our growth and our obligations as a public company. These areas include corporate control, disclosure controls and procedures and financial reporting and accounting systems, including requirements under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, as amended, or the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. We will incur costs associated with our public company reporting requirements and corporate governance requirements, including requirements under the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, as well as rules implemented by the SEC and the securities exchange on which our stock trades. We will need to devote a substantial amount of time to these compliance initiatives. Moreover, these rules and regulations will increase our legal and financial compliance costs and will make some activities more time-consuming and costly. For example, we expect these rules and regulations to make it more difficult and more expensive for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance, and we may be required to accept reduced policy limits and coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain the same or similar coverage. As a result, it may be more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified people to serve on our Board of Directors, our board committees or as executive officers.

## [Table of Contents](#)

In addition, the Sarbanes-Oxley Act requires, among other things, that we maintain effective internal control over financial reporting and disclosure controls and procedures. In particular, for the fiscal year ending December 31, 2012, we must perform system and process evaluation and testing of our internal control over financial reporting to allow management and our independent registered public accounting firm to report on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting, as required by Section 404 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act. Our compliance with Section 404 will require that we incur substantial expense and expend significant management time on compliance-related issues.

### Item 2. *Financial Information*

We have derived the following statement of operations data for the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008 and balance sheet data as of December 31, 2010 and 2009 from our audited financial statements included elsewhere in this registration statement. We have derived the following statement of operations data for the years ended December 31, 2007 and 2006 and balance sheet data as of December 31, 2008, 2007 and 2006 from our audited financial statements not included in this registration statement. We derived the following selected historical financial data as of and for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 from our unaudited historical financial statements and the notes thereto included elsewhere in this registration statement. In the opinion of management, the interim financial data set forth below include all adjustments, consisting of normal recurring accruals, necessary to present fairly our financial position and results of operations. Operating results for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 are not necessarily indicative of the results that may be expected for the entire fiscal year. You should read the financial data set forth below in conjunction with our financial statements and related notes and the information under “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.” Our historical results are not necessarily indicative of our results to be expected in any future period.

(in thousands except for share and per share amounts)	Nine Months Ended	Years Ended December 31,				
	September 30,	2010	2009	2008	2007	2006
	2011					
<b>Statement of Operations Data:</b>						
Related party license revenue	\$ 1,950	\$ 2,600	\$ 2,600	\$ 1,950	\$ —	\$ —
Product revenues	704	69	—	—	—	—
Total revenues	<u>2,654</u>	<u>2,669</u>	<u>2,600</u>	<u>1,950</u>	<u>—</u>	<u>—</u>
Costs and operating expenses:						
Cost of product revenues	421	16	—	—	—	—
Research and development	3,134	5,681	6,068	4,258	2,099	620
Selling, general and administrative	3,709	4,699	3,596	2,920	1,413	525
Costs of withdrawn IPO	—	1,789	—	—	—	—
Gain on settlement of accounts payable	—	—	—	—	—	(484)
Operating loss	<u>(4,610)</u>	<u>(9,515)</u>	<u>(7,064)</u>	<u>(5,229)</u>	<u>(3,512)</u>	<u>(662)</u>
Other income (expense):						
Other income (expense)	(2)	414	—	—	—	—
Gain on change in fair value of derivative liability	—	1,228	—	—	—	—
Interest income (expense), net	<u>(1,843)</u>	<u>(1,580)</u>	<u>(46)</u>	<u>(201)</u>	<u>(185)</u>	<u>(133)</u>
Loss before income taxes	<u>(6,456)</u>	<u>(9,454)</u>	<u>(7,110)</u>	<u>(5,430)</u>	<u>(3,697)</u>	<u>(795)</u>
Income tax expense	—	—	49	—	—	—
Net loss	<u>\$ (6,456)</u>	<u>\$ (9,454)</u>	<u>\$ (7,159)</u>	<u>\$ (5,430)</u>	<u>\$ (3,697)</u>	<u>\$ (795)</u>
Net loss per share (basic and diluted)	<u>\$ (0.41)</u>	<u>\$ (1.40)</u>	<u>\$ (1.34)</u>	<u>\$ (1.04)</u>	<u>\$ (0.74)</u>	<u>\$ (0.16)</u>
Weighted average shares outstanding (basic and diluted)	<u>15,919,249</u>	<u>6,773,714</u>	<u>5,336,633</u>	<u>5,245,081</u>	<u>5,024,515</u>	<u>4,891,745</u>

## [Table of Contents](#)

(amounts in thousands)	As of	As of December 31,				
	September 30,	2010	2009	2008	2007	2006
<b>Balance Sheet Data:</b>						
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 70	\$ 1,577	\$ 2,569	\$ 9,921	\$ 3,612	\$ 6,068
Total assets	2,793	4,563	4,674	10,955	3,730	6,110
Notes payable—current (principal)	4,071	—	—	—	—	—
Notes payable—current (discount)	(247)	—	—	—	—	—
Notes payable—current (net)	3,824	—	—	—	—	—
Notes payable—long-term (principal)	9,810	10,571	3,500	—	1,500	1,000
Notes payable—long-term (discount)	(3,355)	(4,000)	(1,129)	—	—	—
Notes payable—long-term (net)	6,455	6,571	2,371	—	1,500	1,000
Total liabilities	23,340	19,900	14,561	12,720	1,661	1,289
Accumulated deficit	(57,933)	(51,477)	(42,023)	(34,864)	(29,434)	(25,737)
Total stockholders' equity (deficit)	(20,547)	(15,337)	(9,888)	(1,764)	2,069	4,820

### MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

*The following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations should be read together with our financial statements and related notes included elsewhere in this registration statement. This discussion and analysis contains forward-looking statements that are based upon current expectations and involve risks, assumptions and uncertainties. You should review the "Risk Factors" section of this registration statement for a discussion of important factors that could cause actual results to differ materially from the results described in or implied by the forward-looking statements described in the following discussion and analysis.*

#### Overview

We are a medical device company that develops and commercializes innovative platforms for performing minimally invasive surgical procedures in the brain and heart under direct, intra-procedural MRI. We have two product platforms. Our ClearPoint system, which is in commercial use in the United States, is used to perform minimally invasive surgical procedures in the brain. We anticipate that the ClearTrace system, which is still in development, will be used to perform minimally invasive surgical procedures in the heart. Both systems utilize intra-procedural magnetic resonance imaging to guide the procedures. Both systems are designed to work in a hospital's existing MRI suite. We believe that our two product platforms, subject to appropriate regulatory clearance and approval, will deliver better patient outcomes, enhance revenue potential for both physicians and hospitals, and reduce costs to the healthcare system.

In 2010, we received regulatory clearance from the FDA to market our ClearPoint system in the United States for general neurological procedures. In February 2011, we also obtained CE marking approval for the ClearPoint system, which enables us to sell the ClearPoint system in the European Union. Substantially all \$0.7 million in 2011 product revenues relate to sales of our ClearPoint system products in the United States. We do not have regulatory clearance or approval to sell our ClearTrace system and, therefore, we have not generated revenues from sales of that product candidate. In 2008, we received licensing fees totaling \$13.0 million from Boston Scientific for our MRI-safety technologies, which we used to finance our operations and internal growth. We have also financed our operations and internal growth through private placements of securities, borrowings and interest earned on the net proceeds from our private placements and the Boston Scientific licensing fees. Prior to 2008, we were a development stage enterprise. We have incurred significant losses since our inception in 1998 as we have devoted substantially all of our efforts to research and development. As of September 30, 2011, we had an accumulated deficit of \$57.9 million. We may continue to incur significant operating losses as we commercialize our ClearPoint system products, continue to develop our product candidates and expand our business generally. We also expect that our general and administrative expenses will increase due to additional operational and regulatory costs and burdens associated with operating as a public company.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Factors Which May Influence Future Results of Operations**

The following is a description of factors which may influence our future results of operations, including significant trends and challenges that we believe are important to an understanding of our business and results of operations.

#### ***Revenues***

In June 2010, we received 510(k) clearance from the FDA to market our ClearPoint system in the United States for general neurological procedures. Future revenues from sales of our ClearPoint system products are difficult to predict and may not be sufficient to offset our continuing and increasing research and development expenses and selling, general and administrative expenses for the next several years. We cannot sell any of our product candidates until we receive regulatory clearance or approval.

The generation of recurring revenues through sales of our disposable components is an important part of our business model for our ClearPoint system. We first generated revenues through the sale of ClearPoint system disposable components in the third quarter of 2010. We anticipate that recurring revenues will constitute an increasing percentage of our total revenues as we leverage each new installation of our ClearPoint system to generate recurring sales of these disposable components. With respect to a single hospital, we do not anticipate that sales of the reusable components of our ClearPoint system will generate recurring revenues.

Since inception, our revenues relate primarily to our collaborative agreements with Boston Scientific, principally from recognition of portions of the \$13.0 million of licensing fees, which we received in 2008. Revenues associated with these licensing fees are recognized on a straight-line basis over a five year period, which is our estimated period of continuing involvement in the development activities. Additional payments related to substantive, performance-based milestones that may be received under the agreement regarding implantable cardiac leads will be deferred upon receipt and achievement of the specified milestones and recognized over our estimated period of continuing involvement. These revenue recognition policies are more fully described in the “Critical Accounting Policies and Significant Judgments and Estimates” section below. We did not report any revenues in 2007 or 2006.

#### ***Research and Development Costs***

Our research and development costs consist primarily of costs associated with the conceptualization, design, testing and prototyping of our ClearPoint system products and our product candidates. This includes: the salaries, travel and benefits of research and development personnel; materials and laboratory supplies used by our research personnel; consultant costs; sponsored contract research and product development with third parties; and licensing costs. From our inception through September 30, 2011, we have incurred approximately \$34 million in research and development expenses. We anticipate that research and development expenses will increase as we: (1) continue to develop enhancements to our ClearPoint system; (2) continue our product development efforts for the ClearTrace system; and (3) expand our research to apply our technologies to additional product applications.

Product development timelines, likelihood of success and total costs vary widely by product candidate. At this time, due to the risks inherent in the product clearance and approval process and given the stage of development of the ClearTrace system, we are unable to estimate with any certainty the costs that we will incur in the continued development of that product candidate for commercialization.

#### ***Selling, General and Administrative Expenses***

Our selling, general and administrative expenses consist primarily of: salaries, sales incentive payments, travel and benefits; share-based compensation; professional fees, including fees for attorneys and outside accountants; occupancy costs; insurance; marketing costs; and other general and administrative expenses, which include corporate licenses and taxes, postage, office supplies and meeting costs. Our selling, general and administrative expenses are expected to increase due to costs associated with the commercialization of our ClearPoint system, increased headcount necessary to support our continued growth in operations, and the additional operational and regulatory burdens and costs associated with operating as a publicly traded company. In addition, we expect to incur additional costs associated with protecting our intellectual property rights as necessary to support our product offerings.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Critical Accounting Policies and Significant Judgments and Estimates**

Our management's discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations are based on our financial statements, which have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States, or GAAP. The preparation of these financial statements requires us to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and the disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities as of the date of the financial statements as well as the reported expenses during the reporting periods. The accounting estimates that require our most significant, difficult and subjective judgments include revenue recognition, impairment of long-lived assets, computing the fair value of our derivative liability and the determination of share-based compensation and financial instruments. We evaluate our estimates and judgments on an ongoing basis. Actual results may differ materially from these estimates under different assumptions or conditions.

While our significant accounting policies are more fully described in note 2 to our financial statements included elsewhere in this registration statement, we believe that the following accounting policies and estimates are most critical to a full understanding and evaluation of our reported financial results.

*Revenue Recognition.* Our revenues arise from: (1) the sale of ClearPoint system reusable components, including associated installation services; (2) the sale of ClearPoint disposable products; and (3) license and development arrangements. We evaluate the various elements of our arrangements based upon GAAP for multiple element arrangements to determine whether the various elements represent separate units of accounting. This evaluation requires subjective determinations about the fair value or estimated selling price of each element and whether delivered elements have stand alone value and, therefore, are separable from the undelivered contract elements for revenue recognition purposes. In addition, we evaluated repayment provisions associated with one of the license agreements which, under certain conditions, would require us to return payments received under the agreement. We recognize revenue, in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification, or ASC, 605-10-S99, Revenue Recognition, when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the fee is fixed or determinable, collection of the fee is probable and delivery has occurred. For all sales, we require either a purchase agreement or a purchase order as evidence of an arrangement.

(1) *Sale of ClearPoint system reusable components* — Revenues related to ClearPoint system sales are recognized upon installation of the system and the completion of training of at least one of the customer's physicians, which typically occurs concurrently with the ClearPoint system installation. ClearPoint system reusable components include software. This software is incidental to the utility of the ClearPoint system as a whole, and as such, the provisions of ASC 985-605, Software Revenue Recognition, are not applicable.

(2) *Sales of ClearPoint disposable products* — Revenues from the sale of ClearPoint disposable products utilized in procedures performed using the ClearPoint system, which occurs after the system installation is completed for a given customer, are recognized at the time risk of loss passes, which is generally at shipping point or the customer's location, based on the specific terms with that customer.

(3) *License and development arrangements* — Historically we have evaluated revenue recognition on an agreement-by-agreement basis, which has principally involved two license agreements with Boston Scientific. Both agreements provide various revenue streams for us, including an up-front licensing fee for one of the licenses, various milestone payments, payments for research and development and consulting services, and royalties. In both license agreements, we concluded that all of the contract elements should be treated as a single unit of accounting. As such, all amounts received were initially recorded as deferred revenue and thereafter recognized as revenue over our estimated period of performance on a straight-line basis. In the case of the license with possible repayment obligation provisions, revenue recognition will not occur until the repayment obligation period expires. Note 2 to our financial statements, "Significant Accounting Policies—Revenue Recognition", more fully describes the deliverables under these license agreements including our rights, obligations and cash flows.

---

## Table of Contents

*Inventory.* Inventory is carried at the lower of cost (first-in, first-out method) or net realizable value. All items included in inventory relate to our ClearPoint system. We periodically review our inventory for obsolete items and provide a reserve upon identification of potential obsolete items.

*Valuation Allowance for Deferred Tax Assets and Liabilities.* Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the estimated future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective income tax bases. Deferred tax assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect on deferred tax assets and liabilities of a change in tax rates is recognized in the period that included the enactment date.

Valuation allowances are recorded for deferred tax assets when the recoverability of such assets is not deemed more likely than not.

We have evaluated the effect of guidance provided by GAAP regarding accounting for uncertainty in income taxes. In that regard, we have evaluated all tax positions that could have a significant effect on the financial statements and determined that we have no uncertain tax positions at September 30, 2011 that could have a significant effect on our financial statements. Our returns after 2006 remain open for examination.

*Impairment of long-lived assets.* We evaluate the recoverability of our long-lived assets (finite lived intangible assets and property and equipment) whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of such assets may not be fully recoverable. When this occurs, the expected undiscounted future cash flows are compared to the net book value of the related assets. If the net book value of the related assets exceeds the expected undiscounted future cash flows of the assets, the carrying amount will be reduced to the present value of the expected future cash flows and an impairment loss would be recognized. As of September 30, 2011, we have not recorded any impairment losses.

*Share-based compensation.* We account for compensation for all arrangements under which employees and others receive shares of stock or equity instruments (including options and warrants) in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 718 “*Compensation – Stock Compensation*”, or ASC Topic 718. Under ASC Topic 718, the fair value of each award is estimated and amortized as compensation expense over the requisite service period. The fair value of our share-based awards is estimated on the grant date using the Black-Scholes valuation model. This valuation model requires the input of highly subjective assumptions, including the expected price volatility and estimated option term. As we have been operating as a private company, we are unable to use actual price volatility and option life data as input assumptions within our Black-Scholes valuation model. Prior to October 2009, we used expected volatilities based on the historical volatility of the industry sector in which we operate, in accordance with the guidance set forth in ASC Topic 718.

Beginning in October 2009, we based our estimate of expected volatility on the average historical volatilities of publicly traded companies we deemed similar due to our lack of historical volatility data of our own. We will consistently apply this methodology until a sufficient amount of historical information regarding the volatility of our share price becomes available.

To estimate the expected term, we chose to utilize the “simplified” method for “plain vanilla” options as discussed in the Securities and Exchange Commission’s Staff Accounting Bulletin 107, or SAB 107. We believe that all factors listed in SAB 107 as pre-requisites for utilizing the simplified method are true for us and for our share-based payment arrangements. We intend to utilize the simplified method for the foreseeable future until more detailed information about exercise behavior becomes available.

Our risk-free interest rates are based on a zero-coupon U.S. treasury instrument, the term of which is consistent with the expected term of the stock options. We have not paid and do not anticipate paying cash dividends on our shares of common stock; therefore, the expected dividend yield is assumed to be zero. The fair value of share-based payments are generally amortized on a straight-line basis over the requisite service periods of the awards, which are generally the vesting periods.

## [Table of Contents](#)

We believe there is a high degree of subjectivity involved when using option pricing models to estimate share-based compensation under ASC Topic 718. Currently, there is not a market-based mechanism or other practical application to verify the reliability and accuracy of the estimates stemming from these valuation models, nor is there a means to compare and adjust the estimates to actual values. Although the fair value of stock option awards is determined in accordance with ASC Topic 718 using an option pricing model, that value may not be indicative of the fair value observed in a market transaction between a willing buyer and a willing seller. If factors change and we employ different assumptions in the application of ASC Topic 718 in future periods than those currently applied under ASC Topic 718, the compensation expense we record in future periods under ASC Topic 718 may differ significantly from what we have historically reported.

Total share-based compensation expense for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 and 2010 was \$0.8 million and \$0.2 million, respectively, and for years ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008, it was \$0.2 million, \$0.1 million and \$0.1 million, respectively. As of September 30, 2011 there was \$2.1 million of unrecognized compensation cost related to nonvested share-based compensation arrangements. That cost is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 2.1 years.

*Research and development costs.* Expenses related to research, design and development of products are charged to research and development costs as incurred. These expenditures include direct salary costs for research and development personnel, costs for materials used in research and development activities and costs for outside services.

*Derivative Financial Instruments.* We account for derivative instruments in accordance with FASB ASC Topic 815, which establishes accounting and reporting standards for derivative instruments and hedging activities, including certain derivative instruments embedded in other financial instruments or contracts and requires recognition of all derivatives on the balance sheet at fair value. We calculate the fair value of these instruments using the Black-Scholes valuation model. Changes in the fair value of derivatives are recorded each period as a gain or loss in the statement of operations unless the derivative qualifies for hedge accounting. At September 30, 2011, at December 31, 2010 and at December 31, 2009, we did not have any derivative instruments that were designated as hedges.

## Results of Operations

### *Comparison of the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2011 to the Nine Months Ended September 30, 2010*

<i>(\$s in thousands)</i>	<u>Nine Months Ended September 30,</u>		<u>Percentage Change</u>
	<u>2011</u>	<u>2010</u>	
<b>Revenues</b>	\$ 2,654	\$ 1,960	35%
<b>Cost of product revenues</b>	421	2	NM
<b>Research and development costs</b>	3,134	4,589	(32)%
<b>Selling, general and administrative expenses</b>	3,709	3,066	21%
<b>Costs of withdrawn IPO</b>	—	1,789	NM
<b>Other income (expense), net</b>	(1,845)	88	NM
<b>Net loss</b>	(6,423)	(7,397)	13%

**NM = not meaningful**

*Revenues.* Revenues were \$2.7 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2011, compared to \$2.0 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2010. Licensing fee revenues related to our license agreement with Boston Scientific for implantable cardiac leads was \$2.0 million during both periods. Product revenues for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 and 2010 were \$0.7 million and \$10,000, respectively. The increase relates to sales of our ClearPoint system reusable and disposable components. We initiated the commercial launch of our ClearPoint system in 2010 after receiving FDA regulatory clearance in June 2010. Higher ClearPoint product sales during the nine months ended September 30, 2011 reflect increased adoption and use of our ClearPoint system.

*Cost of Product Revenues.* Cost of product revenues was \$0.4 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2011, compared to \$2,000 for the nine months ended September 30, 2010. The increase in cost of product revenues was due to the increase in product revenues and the change in our sales mix. All product revenues for the

## [Table of Contents](#)

nine months ended September 30, 2010 were related to sales of our ClearPoint system disposable products. On the other hand, approximately one-half of our product revenues for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 were from sales of our disposable products and approximately one-half from sales of our reusable components. Gross margin is significantly higher on our sales of ClearPoint system disposable products than sales of our ClearPoint system reusable products.

*Research and Development Costs.* Research and development costs were \$3.1 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2011, compared to \$4.6 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2010. This decrease of \$1.5 million, or 32%, was due primarily to: (i) a decrease of \$0.7 million in software development expenses related to our ClearPoint system software, as very little development work was left to be completed in 2011; (ii) a decrease of \$0.5 million in ClearTrace system software development expenses related to the timing of achievement of development milestones by Siemens, which is developing the software based on our specifications; and (iii) a decrease of \$0.2 million due to a reduction in the use of outside consultants.

*Selling, General and Administrative Expenses.* Selling, general and administrative expenses were \$3.7 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2011, compared to \$3.1 for the nine months ended September 30, 2010. The increase of \$0.6 million, or 21%, relates mostly to an increase in share-based compensation expense of \$0.6 million.

*Costs of Withdrawn IPO.* Costs of withdrawn IPO were \$1.8 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2010. In December 2009, we filed a registration statement with the Securities and Exchange Commission relating to the initial public offering, or IPO, of shares of our common stock. In September 2010 we made the decision to withdraw that registration statement and to cancel the planned IPO. Costs which had been deferred during 2009 totaling \$0.4 million and \$1.4 million of costs incurred during 2010 related to the IPO effort were expensed to costs of withdrawn IPO in September 2010.

*Other Income (Expense), Net.* Net other expense was \$1.8 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2011, compared to net other income of \$88,000 for the nine months ended September 30, 2010. Net interest expense was \$1.8 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2011, compared to \$1.1 million for the nine months ended September 30, 2010. The increase in interest expense relates to interest on increased borrowings and related amortization of debt discount and deferred financing costs. We issued notes payable in the aggregate principal amount of \$7.1 million during 2010 that were outstanding for full nine month period ended September 30, 2011. In addition, we issued notes payable during the first nine months of 2011 in the aggregate principal amount of \$3.3 million. Net interest expense for the nine months ended September 30, 2010 was more than offset by a gain of \$1.2 million recorded on the revaluation of our derivative liability.

### *Comparison of the Year Ended December 31, 2010 to the Year Ended December 31, 2009*

(\$s in thousands)	Year Ended December 31,		Percentage Change
	2010	2009	
<b>Revenues</b>	\$ 2,669	\$ 2,600	3%
<b>Cost of product revenues</b>	16	—	NM
<b>Research and development costs</b>	5,681	6,068	(6)%
<b>Selling, general and administrative expenses</b>	4,699	3,596	31%
<b>Costs of withdrawn IPO</b>	1,789	—	NM
<b>Other income (expense), net</b>	61	(46)	NM
<b>Net loss</b>	(9,454)	(7,159)	(32)%

**NM = not meaningful**

*Revenues.* Revenues were \$2.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2010 compared to \$2.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2009, an increase of 3%. Licensing fee revenues related to our license agreement with Boston Scientific for implantable medical leads was \$2.6 million during both periods. Sales of ClearPoint system disposable products of \$0.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2010 comprised the increase.

*Research and Development Costs.* Research and development costs were \$5.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2010, compared to \$6.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2009, a decrease of \$0.4 million, or



## [Table of Contents](#)

6%. This decrease was due primarily to: (i) a decrease in personnel related costs of \$0.6 million related mostly to reallocation of resources from development related activities in 2009 to selling and operational activities in 2010; (ii) a reduction in prototyping, testing and third party engineering services related to our ClearPoint system of approximately \$0.5, as more ClearPoint system development work was being performed in 2009; and (iii) a decrease of \$0.2 million in software development expenses related to our ClearPoint system, as more software development work was performed in 2009. These decreases were partially offset by an increase in ClearTrace system software development expenses related to the timing of achievement of development milestones and an increase of \$0.3 million in compensation expense related to incentive compensation earned under our Key Personnel Incentive Program.

*Selling, General and Administrative Expenses.* Selling, general and administrative expenses were \$4.7 million for the year ended December 31, 2010 compared to \$3.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2009, an increase \$1.1 million, or 31%. The increase was due primarily to: (i) an increase of \$0.9 million in selling, marketing, and other operations costs associated with our commercial launch of our ClearPoint system; (ii) an increase of \$0.4 million related to settlement of a trademark dispute; (iii) an increase of \$0.1 in professional services related to patent filings; and (iv) a \$0.1 million increase in share-based compensation expense. These increases were partially offset by a decrease in bonus and related expenses of \$0.4 million.

*Other Income (Expense), Net.* Net other income was \$61,000 for the year ended December 31, 2010, compared to net other expense of \$46,000 for the year ended December 31, 2009. Net interest expense was \$1.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2010, compared to \$0.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2009. The increase in interest expense relates to interest on increased borrowings and related amortization of debt discount and deferred financing costs. We issued notes payable in the aggregate principal amount of \$3.5 million in the fourth quarter of 2009 that were outstanding for all of 2010. In addition, we issued notes payable during 2010 in the aggregate principal amount of \$7.1 million. Net interest expense for the year ended December 31, 2010 was more than offset by the combination of a gain of \$1.2 million recorded on the revaluation of our derivative liability and other income of \$0.4 million related to grants received under the Qualifying Therapeutic Discovery Project provided by the United States Treasury Department.

### *Comparison of the Year Ended December 31, 2009 to the Year Ended December 31, 2008*

<i>(\$s in thousands)</i>	<b>Year Ended December 31,</b>		<b>Percentage Change</b>
	<b>2009</b>	<b>2008</b>	
<b>Revenues</b>	\$ 2,600	\$ 1,950	33%
<b>Research and development costs</b>	6,068	4,258	43%
<b>Selling, general and administrative expenses</b>	3,596	2,920	23%
<b>Other income (expense), net</b>	(46)	(201)	NM
<b>Net loss</b>	(7,159)	(5,430)	(32)%

**NM = not meaningful**

*Revenues.* Revenues were \$2.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2009 compared to \$2.0 million for the year ended December 31, 2008, an increase of 33%. Revenues for both periods relate solely to our licensing agreement with Boston Scientific for implantable cardiac leads. The increase in revenues resulted from the recognition of a full year of licensing fee revenues during the year ended December 31, 2009 compared to the recognition of only nine months of licensing fee revenues for the year ended December 31, 2008 (as the license commenced in March 2008).

*Research and Development Costs.* Research and development costs were \$6.1 million for the year ended December 31, 2009, compared to \$4.3 million for the year ended December 31, 2008, an increase of 43%. This increase was due primarily to: (i) an increase of \$1.2 million related to the employment of additional research and development personnel for ClearPoint product development efforts; (ii) an increase of \$0.7 million related to the use of third-parties for research and development services; and (iii) an increase of \$0.4 million for materials and supplies necessary for product candidate testing and prototyping, depreciation and miscellaneous research and development expenses. These increases in research and development expenses was partially offset by decreases in third party engineering design costs and software development costs of \$0.4 million and \$0.3 million, respectively.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

*Selling, General and Administrative Expenses.* Selling, general and administrative expenses were \$3.6 million for the year ended December 31, 2009 compared to \$2.9 million for the year ended December 31, 2008, an increase of 23%. The increase was due primarily to: (i) an increase of \$0.5 million in corporate and operations personnel costs; (ii) an increase of \$0.3 million in sales and marketing costs incurred in preparation of the anticipated commercial launch of our ClearPoint system; and (iii) an increase of \$0.1 million in occupancy costs. Increases in corporate and operating personnel costs were caused mostly by additional hires. The increase in occupancy costs was associated with a full year of lease expense for the year ended December 31, 2009 for both our Irvine and Memphis offices as compared to only occupying these offices a portion of the year during 2008. Increases in general and administrative expenses were partially offset by an approximate \$0.4 million reduction in professional fees during the year ended December 31, 2009 related to the timing of patent filings.

*Other Income (Expense), Net.* Net interest expense was \$46,000 for the year ended December 31, 2009 compared to net interest expense of \$0.2 million for the year ended December 31, 2008. Interest expense decreased for the year ended December 31, 2009 as compared to the year ended December 31, 2008 as a result of the amortization of a debt discount related to a convertible note converted in June 2008 of \$0.4 million as compared to amortization of debt discount of \$0.1 million since inception of the related party convertible note payable in October 2009 through December 31, 2009. Interest income in 2009 decreased from 2008 by approximately \$0.1 million due to lower average cash balances.

### **Liquidity and Capital Resources**

We received \$13.0 million in licensing fees in 2008 under one of our agreements with Boston Scientific. We recognize revenue from these licensing fees over the estimated time period to complete our development work under the agreement. In addition, under the terms of the agreements, we could receive up to \$20.8 million in future milestone-based payments, subject to our achievement of the milestones stipulated in the agreements and the issuance of certain patents licensed to Boston Scientific, of which there can be no assurance. In addition to payments received from Boston Scientific, we have financed our operations and internal growth almost exclusively through private placements of preferred stock and borrowings. We have incurred significant losses since our inception in 1998. As of September 30, 2011, we had an accumulated deficit of \$57.9 million. Our accumulated deficit resulted primarily from research and development activities and the costs to support such efforts as recorded in general and administrative costs.

During 2009, Boston Scientific loaned us \$3.5 million pursuant to the terms of three convertible promissory notes. Each loan accrued interest at the rate of 10% per year, compounded annually, and each loan was scheduled to mature on the second anniversary of the date on which the funds were advanced. Effective February 2, 2012, we entered into a loan amendment with Boston Scientific which extended the maturity dates of each loan by three years and also reduced the interest rate of each loan from 10% to 0%, beginning February 2, 2012. As of February 2, 2012, the outstanding aggregate loan balance owed to Boston Scientific was approximately \$4.3 million. The Boston Scientific loans are secured by a first priority security interest in all of our assets. Under the terms of the loans, we will be required to prepay all or a portion of the loans upon the consummation of any qualified financing, which is any equity financing in which shares of our preferred stock are issued in exchange for cash proceeds. Upon consummation of a qualified financing from Medtronic, Inc., St. Jude Medical, Inc., or Johnson & Johnson, or any of their respective subsidiaries or affiliates, up to 100% of the cash proceeds from such qualified financing must be used to prepay the outstanding amount of the loans. Upon consummation of a qualified financing from any other investor, up to 25% of the cash proceeds from such qualified financing must be applied by us to prepay the outstanding amount of the loans. To date, we have not consummated a qualified financing. We can prepay each loan at any time prior to its respective maturity date. These loans are currently convertible, at the option of Boston Scientific, into 542,325 shares of our preferred stock, based on a current conversion price of \$8.00 per share. The terms of the preferred stock into which Boston Scientific may elect to convert its loans must be agreed upon between us and Boston Scientific.

In March 2010, we issued 10% senior unsecured convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$4.1 million in a private placement. The notes mature two years from the date of issuance and accrue interest at the rate of 10% per year. When issued, the notes did not provide for conversion into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement. However, as of January 31, 2012, holders of \$3.4 million in principal amount of the notes have amended their notes to provide for the automatic conversion of their notes, including the principal and all accrued interest, into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, based on a conversion price of \$1.00 per share. At that conversion price, those notes would have converted into 4,039,964 shares of our common stock as of January 31, 2012. The holders of the remaining \$0.7 million in principal amount of the notes have not agreed to convert their notes into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement. We continue to negotiate with those holders to amend their notes to provide for that conversion.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

In November 2010, we closed a private placement in which we sold units to existing stockholders and other existing investors in the company. Each unit consisted of a junior secured note and one share of our common stock. In the aggregate, we issued 10,714,286 units and received proceeds of \$3.0 million, meaning we issued 10,714,286 shares of common stock and promissory notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$3.0 million. The notes mature 10 years from the date of issuance and accrue interest at the rate of 3.5% per year. The notes are secured by a security interest in all our assets. The notes are not convertible into shares of our common stock or any other securities. All outstanding principal and interest on the notes will be due and payable in a single payment upon maturity.

In April 2011, we issued a 10% subordinated secured convertible note in the principal amount of \$2.0 million to Brainlab. The note matures in April 2016, unless earlier converted, and it accrues interest at the rate of 10% per year. All outstanding principal and interest on the note will be due and payable in a single payment upon maturity. The note is secured by a security interest in all our assets. In the event we close a financing transaction in which we issue shares of our preferred stock and receive at least \$10.0 million in net proceeds, the principal and accrued interest of Brainlab's note will automatically convert into shares of the preferred stock issued in the financing, based on the lower of the price paid by investors in the financing or \$0.60 per share, if the number of shares to be issued upon conversion represents at least 10% of our outstanding shares of stock on a fully diluted basis. If the number of shares that would be issued upon conversion represents less than 10% of our outstanding shares of stock on a fully diluted basis, the note will convert into the shares of preferred stock that are issued in the financing, based on the lower of the price paid by investors in the financing or \$0.60 per share, only upon Brainlab's election to convert.

In June through September 2011, we issued unsecured convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$1.3 million to six of our non-employee directors. The note holders also received common stock warrants to purchase 1,310,000 shares of our common stock. The notes mature two years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at 15% per year. The warrants vest immediately, have a term of five years, and have an exercise price of \$0.01 per share. When issued, the notes provided for conversion into shares of our common stock (i) upon consummation of an initial public offering, based on a conversion price equal to 60% of the public offering price, or (ii) upon consummation of a reverse merger of our company into a publicly held shell company, based on a conversion price equal to 60% of the fair market value of our common stock at the time of the merger. The notes were subsequently amended to provide that the principal and all accrued interest under the notes will automatically convert into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share. At that conversion price, the notes would have converted into 2,350,631 shares of our common stock as of January 31, 2012.

In October 2011, we began a private placement of our securities in which we are offering units, with each unit consisting of a 10% secured convertible note in the principal amount of \$100,000 and a warrant to purchase 50,000 shares of our common stock. The notes mature three years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at 10% per year. The notes are secured by a security interest in all our assets. The notes, including the principal and all accrued interest, convert automatically into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share. Likewise, a note holder may elect at any time to convert the note into shares of our common stock, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share. The warrants vest immediately, have a term of five years, and have an exercise price of \$0.75 per share. As of January 31, 2012, we had received gross proceeds of \$2.7 million in connection with the unit offering. The placement agent for the financing will receive a cash fee equal to 10% of the gross proceeds, as well as a warrant to purchase that number of shares of our common stock equal to 8% of the number of shares of our common stock issuable upon conversion of the notes and exercise of the warrants sold in this financing. We intend to use the proceeds from the financing for working capital and general corporate purposes. As of January 31, 2012, the notes issued in the unit offering were convertible into 4,560,155 shares of our common stock, and the warrants issued in the unit offering were exercisable for 1,351,000 share of our common stock.

*Net Cash Flows from Operating Activities.* Net cash flows from operating activities for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 and 2010 and the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008 was \$(4.8) million, \$(6.2) million, \$(7.5) million, \$(9.5) million, and \$7.3 million, respectively. The use of cash in the nine months ended September 30, 2011 and 2010 and the years ended December 31, 2010 and 2009 resulted primarily from funding research and development activities and from incurring supporting selling, general and administrative expenses. The positive net cash for the year ended December 31, 2008 resulted from the \$13.0 million in licensing fees under one our license agreement with Boston Scientific for implantable cardiac leads.

---

## Table of Contents

*Net Cash Flows from Investing Activities.* Net cash flows from investing activities for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 and 2010 and the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008 was \$(17,000), \$(0.1) million, \$(0.2) million, \$(0.3) million, and \$(0.9) million, respectively. Net cash used in investing activities for each of the periods was primarily related to the purchase of property and equipment to establish and support operations at our Irvine, California facility and the acquisition of intellectual property licenses.

*Net Cash Flows from Financing Activities.* Net cash flows from financing activities for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 and 2010 and the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008 was \$3.3 million, \$3.8 million, \$6.8 million, \$2.4 million, and zero, respectively. Net cash flows from financing activities for each period noted above related primarily to the proceeds from our issuance the notes and other securities described above.

*Operating Capital and Capital Expenditure Requirements.* To date, we have not achieved profitability. We could continue to incur substantial net losses for the next several years as we commercialize our ClearPoint system products, continue to develop the ClearTrace system, expand our corporate infrastructure and pursue additional applications for our technology platforms.

As of September 30, 2011, we had \$70,000 in cash and cash equivalents. Our cash balances are typically held in a variety of interest bearing instruments, including interest bearing demand accounts and certificates of deposit. Cash in excess of immediate requirements is invested primarily with a view to liquidity and capital preservation. As described above, we are in the process of conducting a private placement of securities to raise capital for our business. We believe that our existing cash resources, together with cash generated from sales of our products and cash generated from our current financing transaction, will be sufficient to meet our anticipated cash requirements into June 2012. If our available cash and cash equivalents, cash generate from product sales and the net proceeds from our current financing transaction are insufficient to satisfy our liquidity requirements, we may seek to sell additional equity or debt securities or enter into a credit facility. The sale of additional equity and debt securities may result in dilution to our stockholders. If we raise additional funds through the issuance of debt securities, these securities could have rights senior to those of our common stock and could contain covenants that would restrict our operations. We may require additional capital beyond our currently forecasted amounts. Any such required additional capital may not be available on reasonable terms, if at all. If we are unable to obtain additional financing, we may be required to reduce the scope of, delay, or eliminate some or all of, our planned commercialization, research and development activities, which could materially harm our business.

Our forecast of the period of time through which our financial resources will be adequate to support our operations, the costs to commercialize our ClearPoint system products and the costs to complete development of our product candidates are forward-looking statements and involve risks and uncertainties, and actual results could vary materially and negatively as a result of a number of factors, including the factors discussed in the "Risk Factors" section of this registration statement. We have based these estimates on assumptions that may prove to be wrong, and we could deplete our available capital resources sooner than we currently expect.

Because of the numerous risks and uncertainties associated with the development and commercialization of medical devices, we are unable to estimate the exact amounts of capital outlays and operating expenditures necessary to successfully commercialize our products and complete the development of our product candidates. Our future capital requirements will depend on many factors, including but not limited to the following:

- the cost and timing of expanding our sales, marketing and distribution capabilities and other corporate infrastructure;
- the cost of establishing inventories;
- the effect of competing technological and market developments;
- the scope, rate of progress and cost of our research and development activities;
- the achievement of milestone events under, and other matters related to, our agreements with Boston Scientific and Siemens;
- the terms and timing of any future collaborative, licensing or other arrangements that we may establish;
- the cost and timing of any clinical trials;
- the cost and timing of regulatory filings, clearances and approvals; and
- the cost of filing, prosecuting, defending and enforcing any patent claims and other intellectual property rights.

## [Table of Contents](#)

The following table summarizes our outstanding future contractual obligations as of December 31, 2010 and the effect those obligations are expected to have on our liquidity and cash flows in future periods:

(\$s in thousands)	Payments Due by Period				
	Total	Less than 1 year	1-3 years	3-5 years	After 5 years
Operating Leases	\$ 427	\$ 169	\$ 200	\$ 58	\$ —
Notes Payable	13,170	—	9,120	—	4,050
Shared Research	877	690	187	—	—
Co-Development	1,309	240	1,069	—	—
Software Licenses	1,050	—	700	350	—
Incentive Compensation Plan	2,700	—	1,350	1,350	—
Minimum Royalty Payments	1,530	70	165	190	1,105
Total	<u>\$ 21,063</u>	<u>\$ 1,169</u>	<u>\$ 12,791</u>	<u>\$ 1,948</u>	<u>\$ 5,155</u>

Our commitments under operating leases shown above consist of payments relating to our facilities under leases that as of December 31, 2010 expire in 2011, 2012 and 2014. Our note payable obligations consist of the principal amounts and interest that will be payable under the convertible promissory notes we issued to Boston Scientific, the senior unsecured convertible notes we issued in March 2010, and the junior secured notes we issued in November 2010. Shared research obligations consist of amounts payable under research agreements with certain universities. Co-development obligations consist of the payment obligations to Siemens in connection with the ClearTrace system software development. Software license obligations represent minimum purchase commitments under a master service and license agreement for the license of software code that is used in our ClearPoint system. Incentive compensation plan obligations represent amounts payable to participants under a key personnel incentive program. Minimum royalty payment obligations consist of the minimum royalty payments due to a licensor.

### **Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures about Market Risk**

Our exposure to market risk for changes in interest rates relates to our cash equivalents on deposit in demand deposit accounts and certificates of deposit. The primary objective of our cash investment activities is to preserve principal while at the same time maximizing the income we receive from our invested cash without significantly increasing risk of loss. We do not currently use derivative financial instruments. Our cash and investments policy emphasizes liquidity and preservation of principal over other portfolio considerations. As of September, substantially all of our transactions have been denominated in United States dollars, accordingly, we do not have any material exposure to foreign currency rate fluctuations.

### **Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

Since our inception, we have not engaged in any off-balance sheet arrangements, including the use of structured finance, special purpose entities or variable interest entities.

### **Recent Accounting Pronouncements**

In May 2011, the Financial Accounting Standards Board, or FASB, issued additional guidance on fair value measurements. The updated guidance provides a consistent definition of fair value and aligns the fair value measurement and disclosure requirements between U.S. GAAP and International Financial Reporting Standards, or IFRS, amends certain guidance primarily related to fair value measurements for financial instruments, and enhances disclosure requirements particularly for Level 3 fair value measurements. The guidance is effective prospectively for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2011 and interim periods within those years. Early adoption is permitted. We do not expect the adoption of this guidance will have a material impact on our financial statements.

In June 2011, the FASB issued new accounting guidance related to the presentation of comprehensive income that increases comparability between U.S. GAAP and IFRS. This guidance will require companies to present the components of net income and other comprehensive income either as one continuous statement or as two consecutive statements, eliminating the option to present components of other comprehensive income as part of the statement of changes in stockholders' equity. Public entities are required to apply this guidance for fiscal years and

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2011. Nonpublic entities should begin applying these requirements for fiscal years ending after December 15, 2012, and interim and annual periods thereafter. We do not believe the adoption of this guidance will materially impact our results of operations or financial position.

### **Item 3. *Properties***

We lease approximately 7,400 square feet of space in Irvine, California under a lease that expires in September 2012, which we use as our principal research and development facility and for the assembly of certain of our products. We have the right to extend our Irvine lease for three additional years upon prior written notice and the fulfillment of certain conditions.

We lease approximately 3,300 square feet of office space in Memphis, Tennessee, which we use as our executive offices. Our Memphis lease expires in November 2014. We also have a license to use approximately 1,400 square feet of space in Baltimore, Maryland, which we have used for advanced research and development activities. The term of our license agreement for our Baltimore facility expires at the end of February 2012.

We believe that our Irvine, California and Memphis, Tennessee facilities are sufficient to meet our needs for the foreseeable future.

### **Item 4. *Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management***

The following table sets forth information as of January 31, 2012 regarding the beneficial ownership of our common stock by:

- each person, or group of affiliated persons, who is known by us to own beneficially five percent or more of our common stock;
- each of our directors;
- each of our named executive officers; and
- all our directors and executive officers as a group.

Percentage ownership calculations for beneficial ownership are based on 35,000,731 shares outstanding as of January 31, 2012, which includes and assumes:

- 16,084,981 shares of common stock outstanding as of January 31, 2012;
- conversion of all outstanding shares of our preferred stock into 7,965,000 shares of common stock, upon the effectiveness of this registration statement; and
- conversion of \$8,186,437 in principal amount of, and interest on, convertible promissory notes into 10,950,750 shares of common stock, upon the effectiveness of this registration statement.

Except as otherwise indicated below, the address of each officer, director and five percent stockholder listed below is c/o MRI Interventions, Inc., One Commerce Square, Suite 2550, Memphis, TN 38103.

We have determined beneficial ownership in accordance with the rules of the Securities and Exchange Commission. These rules generally attribute beneficial ownership of securities to persons who possess sole or shared voting power or investment power with respect to those securities. In addition, the rules include shares of common stock issuable pursuant to the exercise of stock options and warrants that are either immediately exercisable or exercisable within 60 days of January 31, 2012. Likewise, the rules also include shares of common stock issuable pursuant to the conversion of convertible promissory notes that are either immediately convertible or convertible within 60 days of January 31, 2012. These shares are deemed to be outstanding and beneficially owned by the person holding those options, warrants or convertible notes for the purpose of computing the percentage ownership of that person, but they are not treated as outstanding for the purpose of computing the percentage ownership of any other person. Unless otherwise indicated, the persons or entities identified in this table have sole voting and investment power with respect to all shares shown as beneficially owned by them.

## Table of Contents

<u>Beneficial Owner</u>	<u>Number of Shares Owned</u>	<u>% of Shares Outstanding</u>
<b>5% Stockholders</b>		
None		
<b>Directors and Named Executive Officers</b>		
Kimble L. Jenkins <sup>(1)</sup>	1,276,070	3.6
David W. Carlson <sup>(2)</sup>	175,418	*
Paul A. Bottomley <sup>(3)</sup>	214,833	*
Bruce C. Conway <sup>(4)</sup>	3,244,583	9.3
Charles E. Koob <sup>(5)</sup>	570,737	1.6
James K. Malernee, Jr. <sup>(6)</sup>	223,083	*
Michael A. Pietrangelo <sup>(7)</sup>	85,444	*
Andrew K. Rooke <sup>(8)</sup>	5,101,874	14.2
Michael J. Ryan	—	—
John N. Spencer, Jr. <sup>(9)</sup>	44,028	*
Peter G. Piferi <sup>(10)</sup>	232,418	*
Oscar L. Thomas <sup>(11)</sup>	208,352	*
John T. Keane <sup>(12)</sup>	30,000	*
All directors and executive officers as a group (14 persons) <sup>(13)</sup>	11,437,173	31.0

\* Represents beneficial ownership of less than 1% of our outstanding common stock.

- (1) Includes 226,601 shares that Mr. Jenkins has the right to acquire through the exercise of options.
- (2) Includes 86,133 shares that Mr. Carlson has the right to acquire through the exercise of options.
- (3) Includes 87,667 shares that Dr. Bottomley has the right to acquire through the exercise of options.
- (4) Includes 14,141 shares jointly held with his spouse, 56,562 shares held solely by his spouse, 59,444 shares issuable upon the conversion of a convertible note in the principal amount of \$50,000, 404,913 shares issuable upon the conversion of convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$225,000, and 20,661 shares in the aggregate owned by Alden M. Conway Trust, the Chase T. Conway Trust, the Merritt Elizabeth Conway Trust, the Edna N. Conway Irrevocable Trust FBO Alden M. Conway, the Edna N. Conway Irrevocable Trust FBO Chase T. Conway and the Edna N. Conway Irrevocable Trust FBO Merritt Elizabeth Conway. Mr. Conway is the trustee of each of the aforementioned trusts and has voting and investment power of each trust's shares, which are held in trust for the benefit of his children.
- (5) Includes 50,000 shares that Mr. Koob has the right to acquire through the exercise of warrants and 21,417 shares that Mr. Koob has the right to acquire through the exercise of options, and 88,055 shares issuable upon the conversion of a convertible note in the principal amount of \$50,000.
- (6) Includes 75,000 shares that Dr. Malernee has the right to acquire through the exercise of warrants, 12,667 shares that Dr. Malernee has the right to acquire through the exercise of options, and 132,083 shares issuable upon the conversion of a convertible note in the principal amount of \$75,000.
- (7) Includes 25,000 shares that Mr. Pietrangelo has the right to acquire through the exercise of warrants, 12,667 shares that Mr. Pietrangelo has the right to acquire through the exercise of options, and 44,027 shares issuable upon the conversion of a convertible note in the principal amount of \$25,000.
- (8) Includes 500,000 shares owned by Payne Partners, LLC, 260,102 shares owned by Withington Foundation, 925,000 shares that Rooke Fiduciary Management has the right to acquire through the exercise of warrants, and 1,663,940 shares issuable upon the conversion of convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$925,000 held by Rooke Fiduciary Management. Mr. Rooke has voting and investment power over the shares owned by Payne Partners, LLC and Withington Foundation, as well as any shares acquired by Rooke Fiduciary Management through the exercise of warrants or the conversion of convertible notes. Also includes 827,832 shares owned by 12 trusts established for the benefit of Mr. Rooke and his family members. Mr. Rooke is the trustee of each of those trusts and he has voting and investment power of each trust's shares.
- (9) Includes 10,000 shares that Mr. Spencer has the right to acquire through the exercise of warrants, 12,667 shares that Mr. Spencer has the right to acquire through the exercise of options, and 17,611 shares issuable upon the conversion of a convertible note in the principal amount of \$10,000 held jointly by Mr. Spencer and his spouse.
- (10) Includes 143,133 shares that Mr. Piferi has the right to acquire through the exercise of options.
- (11) Includes 119,067 shares that Mr. Thomas has the right to acquire through the exercise of options.
- (12) Includes 30,000 shares that Mr. Keane has the right to acquire through the exercise of options.
- (13) Includes 760,102 shares owned by entities controlled by a director, 848,493 shares owned by trusts for which a director serves as trustee, 2,410,073 shares issuable upon conversion of convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of

\$1,360,000, 942,351 shares issuable upon the exercise of options and warrants, and 925,000 shares issuable upon the exercise of warrants held by an entity controlled by a director.



## [Table of Contents](#)

### Item 5. *Directors and Executive Officers*

The following table sets forth information about our directors, executive officers and other key employees as of January 31, 2012.

<u>Name</u>	<u>Age</u>	<u>Position(s)</u>
<b><i>Directors and Executive Officers</i></b>		
Kimble L. Jenkins	49	President, Chief Executive Officer and Chairman of Board of Directors
Paul A. Bottomley	58	Director
Bruce C. Conway	60	Director
Charles E. Koob	67	Director
James K. Malemee, Jr.	64	Director
Michael A. Pietrangelo	69	Director
Andrew K. Rooke	55	Director
Michael J. Ryan	33	Director
John N. Spencer, Jr.	71	Director
Peter G. Piferi	52	Chief Operating Officer
David W. Carlson	47	Chief Financial Officer
Carol J. Barbre	51	Vice President, Product Management
John T. Keane	45	Vice President, Sales
Oscar L. Thomas	41	Vice President, Business Affairs and Secretary

**Kimble L. Jenkins** joined our Board of Directors in September 2002 and presently serves as our Chairman. Mr. Jenkins has served as our President since January 2003, and he has also served as our Chief Executive Officer since September 2004. Mr. Jenkins served in those offices on a part-time basis until May 2008, at which time Mr. Jenkins began serving as our President and Chief Executive Officer on a full-time basis. Prior to May 2008, Mr. Jenkins was also a Managing Director with the investment bank Morgan Keegan & Company, Inc., where he founded that firm's Private Equity Group in 1998. Mr. Jenkins has over 20 years of experience building and working with growth stage companies. Mr. Jenkins holds a Bachelor of Arts from Brown University and a Juris Doctorate from Georgetown University Law Center. As our Chief Executive Officer, Mr. Jenkins offers unique insight and vision into our operations, our competition and the medical device industry.

**Paul A. Bottomley** is a founder of the company and has been a member of our Board of Directors since December 1998. Dr. Bottomley joined Johns Hopkins in 1994. Since 1997, Dr. Bottomley has served as the Director of the Division of MR Research in the Department of Radiology at Johns Hopkins. Previously, Dr. Bottomley worked at General Electric Company's Research and Development Center from 1980 to 1994 where he played a key role in the development of their MRI clinical product and was awarded the Center's highest honor, its Coolidge Medal and Fellowship, for these developments in 1990. He was awarded the Society of Magnetic Resonance in Medicine's Gold Medal for his contributions to MRI in 1989. He holds over 30 U.S. patents and has written more than 150 scientific journal publications. Dr. Bottomley also serves as a consultant to us. As a pioneer in MR research, Dr. Bottomley offers expertise in the practical application of our technologies and the commercial opportunities for our products and product candidates.

**Bruce C. Conway** joined our Board of Directors in May 2011. From 1992 to 2010, Mr. Conway served as a consultant for numerous early stage companies in creating and implementing individualized business strategies designed to result in a liquidity event. He has significant experience working with companies in the biomedical, alternative energy, oil and gas exploration, agriculture, water and real estate industries. Mr. Conway previously served on the board of directors for Whitehall Corporation, a publicly traded defense and electronics company prior to its acquisition by Aviation Sales Company in 1998. As a consultant to, and investor with, numerous early stage companies, Mr. Conway offers substantial expertise in the area of formation and implementation of corporate and operational strategy.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

**Charles E. Koob** joined our Board of Directors in August 2008. From 1970 to 2008, Mr. Koob practiced competition, trade regulation and antitrust law at the law firm of Simpson Thacher & Bartlett and served as the co-head of the firm's litigation department for a portion of his tenure. For much of his career, Mr. Koob served as a strategic advisor for the boards of directors of many public companies. Mr. Koob also serves on the board of directors of MiMedx Group, Inc., a publicly traded biomedical products company, and DemeRx, Inc., a privately held biotechnology company. As a byproduct of Mr. Koob's sophisticated former legal practice, Mr. Koob offers expertise in the areas of corporate governance, contract negotiation and organizational and strategic leadership.

**James K. Malernee, Jr.** joined our Board of Directors in March 2010. Dr. Malernee is a cofounder of Cornerstone Research, Inc., a consulting firm specializing in analytical support to attorneys in all phases of commercial litigation and regulatory proceedings, and he currently serves as Chairman and Managing Director of that firm. Over the last twenty years with Cornerstone Research, he has directed research on complex business issues related to a wide variety of cases. In recent years, Dr. Malernee has specialized in securities matters, supervising hundreds of cases dealing with material disclosure, loss causation, insider trading, mergers and acquisitions, targeted repurchases, minority buyouts, stock trading behavior, valuation and class certification. Dr. Malernee has served as a board member and consultant to major corporations, and he has taught finance at the University of Texas at Austin and business strategy at the Stanford Graduate School of Business. Through his academic and professional pursuits, Dr. Malernee offers expertise in finance and business strategy as well as an understanding of corporate disclosure and governance practices.

**Michael A. Pietrangelo** joined our Board of Directors in March 2010. From 1972 through 1989, Mr. Pietrangelo was employed by Schering-Plough Corporation in various capacities including President of the Personal Care Products Group. From 1989 to 1990, he served as President and Chief Operating Officer of Western Publishing Company. From 1990 to 1994, Mr. Pietrangelo was the President and Chief Executive Officer of CLEO, Inc., a subsidiary of Gibson Greetings, Inc. From 1994 until 1998, he served as President of Johnson Products Company, a subsidiary of IVAX Corporation. Since 1998, Mr. Pietrangelo has practiced law at Pietrangelo Cook PLC. Mr. Pietrangelo is also a director of Medicis Pharmaceutical Corporation, a publicly traded pharmaceutical company, serving on the executive committee (Chair), compliance committee (Chair), and nominating and governance committee. Mr. Pietrangelo also serves on the board of directors of the American Parkinson Disease Association, a not-for-profit organization focused on serving the Parkinson's community, and Universal Insurance Holdings, Inc., a publicly traded insurance holding company. Mr. Pietrangelo currently serves as the managing partner of Theraplex Company LLC, a privately held company. As a result of his diverse professional background, Mr. Pietrangelo offers a unique combination of legal expertise and operational acumen.

**Andrew K. Rooke** joined our Board of Directors in July 2011. Mr. Rooke owns and manages a private trust company, which specializes in the investment management of publicly held securities and the oversight of a multitude of trust investments. Over the years, he has acquired, managed and sold a number of private companies as well as commercial real estate properties. Mr. Rooke was also previously employed by the former securities firm Kidder, Peabody & Co. With significant experience in financing, analyzing, investing in and managing investments in public and private companies, Mr. Rooke offers expertise in strategic and financial matters.

**Michael J. Ryan** joined our Board of Directors in May 2011. Mr. Ryan is Director of Corporate Business Development at Boston Scientific, where he leads business development activities in the field of neuromodulation. Prior to joining Boston Scientific in 2005, Mr. Ryan was a Senior Consultant at Decision Resources, providing management consulting services to the pharmaceutical and biotech industries. With his background, Mr. Ryan offers insight into the medical device industry, particularly as it relates to neurological applications.

**John N. Spencer, Jr.** joined our Board of Directors in March 2010. Mr. Spencer is a certified public accountant and was a partner of Ernst & Young LLP where he spent more than 38 years until his retirement in 2000. Mr. Spencer serves on the board of directors of GeoVax Labs, Inc., a publicly traded biotechnology company, and until April 2009, served on the board of directors of Firstwave Technologies, Inc., formerly a publicly traded customer relationship management software company. In addition, he serves as a consultant to various companies, primarily relating to financial accounting and reporting matters. By virtue of his experience at Ernst & Young, where he was the partner in charge of its life sciences practice for the southeastern United States, together with his continuing expertise as a director of, and a consultant to, other publicly traded and privately held companies, Mr. Spencer offers expertise in accounting, finance and the medical device industry.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

**Peter G. Piferi** joined us in December 2006 as our Chief Operating Officer. Mr. Piferi has over 20 years of experience in the areas of product development, operations, engineering and production in the medical device industry. From March 2003 to December 2006, Mr. Piferi served as Vice President, Endovascular Technologies for Edwards Lifesciences Corporation. In addition, Mr. Piferi has served as Vice President at Kriton Medical Inc. and Orbus Medical Technologies, Inc. and as Director of Advanced Engineering at Cordis Corporation.

**David W. Carlson** joined us in February 2010 as Vice President, Finance and was promoted to Chief Financial Officer in April 2010. Mr. Carlson has 18 years of experience in financial leadership roles in the medical device industry. From 1999 to 2009, he served in various financial management positions as a Vice President of Finance and Senior Finance Director at Medtronic, Inc., a global leader in medical technologies. He was serving as the Corporate Controller of Sofamor Danek, Inc., a then publicly traded medical device company, when it was acquired by Medtronic, Inc. in 1999. Mr. Carlson is a certified public accountant, and was formerly an auditor for PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP.

**Carol J. Barbre** joined us in May 2008 as Vice President, Product Management. Ms. Barbre has 20 years of experience in the medical device industry in the areas of marketing and business development, with a focus on new medical therapies. From May 2007 to May 2008, Ms. Barbre served as Senior Director of Marketing for Edwards Lifesciences Corporation, a publicly traded medical device company. From 2002 to May 2007, Ms. Barbre served as Global Marketing Director for Bolton Medical, Inc., a privately held medical device company.

**John T. Keane** joined us in April 2010 as Vice President, Sales. Mr. Keane has over 20 years of sales experience in the medical device industry. From October 2006 until April 2010, Mr. Keane served as the Worldwide Director of Sales for Stereotactic Surgery, Radiosurgery, Image Guided Surgery, Brain Mapping and Service Agreements for Integra Radionics, Inc., a subsidiary of Integra Lifesciences Corporation, a publicly traded medical device manufacturer. From 2004 to 2006, Mr. Keane served as an Academic Center Representative for I-Flow Corporation, formerly a publicly traded medical device company that merged with a subsidiary of Kimberly-Clark Corporation, a publicly traded corporation, in 2009. From 1996 to 2004, Mr. Keane was the National Leader of Academic Sales Representatives at Baxter International Inc., a publicly traded global, diversified health care company.

**Oscar L. Thomas** joined us in April 2008 as Vice President, Business Affairs. In addition, Mr. Thomas serves as our Secretary. From January 2003 to April 2008, Mr. Thomas was a partner in the Corporate and Securities Practice Group of the law firm Bass, Berry & Sims PLC.

### **Board Composition**

Our Board of Directors consists of nine members. Each director's term of office runs from the time of his election until the next following annual meeting of our stockholders and until a successor has been elected or until the director's earlier death, resignation or removal. Our certificate of incorporation that will become effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement provides that the authorized number of directors may be changed only by resolution of the Board of Directors and that a director may be removed only for cause by the affirmative vote of the holders of a majority of our voting stock.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Item 6. *Executive Compensation***

#### **Compensation Risks**

We have assessed our compensation programs and have concluded that our compensation policies and practices do not create risks that are reasonably likely to have a material adverse effect on us. Our compensation program is relatively simple and has only three material elements: base salary; annual bonus; and long-term equity compensation. Base salary represents a fixed amount of payment and therefore does not encourage any excessive risk taking. The compensation committee has determined annual bonus amounts by subjectively analyzing company and individual performance for the prior year and only rewarding individual and company performance that, in the opinion of the compensation committee, had a positive effect on stockholder value. The subjective nature of the compensation committee's determinations regarding both the award and the amount of annual bonuses and equity grants provides a significant control over the incentive of an employee to take undue risk in order to receive a larger annual bonus or equity grant. Finally, our long-term equity compensation program generally involves only the issuance of options to our employees. We believe that the equity component of our compensation program serves to align the interest of management with the interests of stockholders and does not encourage excessive risk taking. Based on the foregoing, we believe that our compensation policies and practices do not create inappropriate or unintended significant risk to the company as a whole. We also believe that our compensation arrangements provide incentives that do not encourage risk-taking beyond the organization's ability to effectively identify and manage significant risks; are compatible with effective internal controls and the risk management practices of the company; and are supported by the oversight and administration of the compensation committee with regard to executive compensation programs.

#### **Compensation Discussion and Analysis**

##### ***Introduction***

Our compensation discussion and analysis discusses the total compensation for our named executive officers, and it describes our overall compensation philosophy, objectives and practices. Our compensation philosophy and objectives generally apply to all of our employees and all of our employees are eligible to participate in the main components of our compensation program: salary; annual bonus; and equity compensation. The relative value of each of these components for individual employees varies based on job role and responsibility, as well as our financial performance.

##### ***Compensation Philosophy and Objectives***

Our compensation approach is necessarily tied to our stage of development. Our compensation philosophy is to offer our executive officers, including our named executive officers, compensation and benefits that meet our goals of attracting, retaining and motivating highly skilled management, which is necessary to achieve our financial and strategic objectives and create long-term value for our stockholders. Accordingly, our executive officer compensation program is designed to link compensation to corporate and individual performance and to align executive officers' interests with stockholder value creation by subjectively analyzing both corporate and individual performance in determining appropriate base salary, bonus and equity compensation awards.

---

## Table of Contents

We believe compensation should be determined within a framework that is intended to reward individual contribution and the achievement of company objectives. Within this overall philosophy, our objectives are to:

- attract, retain and motivate our executives by providing a total compensation program that takes into consideration our strategic business needs;
- align the financial interests of the executive officers with those of our stockholders, both in the short and long term;
- provide incentives for achieving and exceeding performance expectations; and
- appropriately reward executive officers for creating long-term stockholder value.

Each of our named executive officers is an “at-will” employee. However, some of our named executive officers have employment letters that set forth the basic terms of their employment. The compensation committee is considering the advisability of entering into formal employment agreements with of our named executive officers prior to the effectiveness of this registration statement.

On an annual basis, our compensation committee has utilized its business judgment to establish:

- base salaries for our named executive officers based on the recommendations of our Chief Executive Officer and the compensation committee’s exercise of its subjective judgment;
- annual cash bonuses based on the recommendations of our Chief Executive Officer and a subjective analysis by the compensation committee of both the company’s performance and each named executive officer’s performance for the most recently completed fiscal year; and
- any long term equity compensation awards to the named executive officers based on the recommendations of the Chief Executive Officer and the compensation committee’s exercise of its subjective judgment.

### ***Role of Directors and Executive Officers in Setting Compensation***

Prior to September 2008, we did not have a compensation committee and compensation decisions for our named executive officers were approved by our Board of Directors upon the recommendation of our Chief Executive Officer. The compensation recommendations of our Chief Executive Officer have been largely discretionary, based on our Chief Executive Officer’s subjective assessment of the particular executive officer, publicly available data relating to compensation of executive officers at other medical device companies and input from our other executive officers. There is no particular mathematical formula for deriving executive compensation from these sources. As we gain experience as a public company, we expect that the specific direction, emphasis and components of our executive compensation program will continue to evolve. For example, over time, we expect to reduce our reliance upon subjective determinations made by our Chief Executive Officer in favor of a more empirically-based approach that could involve benchmarking the compensation paid to our named executive officers against peer companies that we identify and the use of clearly defined, objective targets to determine incentive compensation awards.

The compensation committee typically considers, but is not required to accept, the recommendations of our Chief Executive Officer regarding the performance and proposed base salary and bonus and equity awards for the other named executive officers, as well as himself. The compensation committee may also request the assistance of our Chief Financial Officer in evaluating the financial, accounting and tax implications of various compensation awards paid to the named executive officers. However, our Chief Financial Officer does not recommend or determine the amounts or types of compensation paid to the named executive officers. Our Chief Executive Officer and certain of our other named executive officers may attend compensation committee meetings, as requested by the compensation committee. None of our named executive officers, including our Chief Executive Officer, attend any portion of the compensation committee meetings during which his or her compensation is established and approved.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

We believe that the levels of compensation we provide should be appropriate for our business needs and circumstances. To date, the compensation committee has not engaged a compensation consultant. Rather, the compensation committee and our Chief Executive Officer applied subjective discretion to make compensation decisions and they have not used a specific formula or matrix to set compensation in relation to compensation paid by other medical device companies. Our compensation committee designed our executive compensation program based on the compensation committee's general knowledge of compensation practices and the application of such knowledge to successfully attract and retain the named executive officers. Our compensation committee has not established any percentile targets for the levels of compensation provided to our named executive officers. To date, the compensation committee has not performed reviews of our compensation programs with those of similarly-situated companies, nor has it engaged in benchmarking of compensation paid to our named executive officers. Our historical approach has been to consider compensation practices and relevant factors rather than establishing compensation at specific benchmark percentiles. This enabled us to respond to dynamics in the labor market and provided us with flexibility in maintaining and enhancing our named executive officers' engagement, focus, motivation and enthusiasm for our future. However, as mentioned above, we expect to build some of these objective practices into our compensation approach over time.

The amount of past compensation, including annual discretionary bonus awards, and amounts realizable from prior stock option awards, is generally not a significant factor in the compensation committee's considerations, because these awards would have been earned based on prior years' performances or granted in connection with a named executive officer's initial hire.

Our named executive officers are not subject to mandated stock ownership or stock retention guidelines. It is the belief of the compensation committee that the equity component of our executive compensation program ensures that our named executive officers are also owners and those components work to align the named executive officers' goals with the best interests of stockholders.

### *Elements of Our Executive Compensation Program*

The principal elements of our executive compensation program have been base salary, a discretionary cash bonus and long-term equity compensation in the form of stock options. Each of these compensation elements satisfies one or more of our compensation objectives.

We have not adopted any policies with respect to long-term versus currently-paid compensation, but feel that both elements are necessary for achieving our compensation objectives. Currently-paid compensation provides financial stability for each of our named executive officers and an immediate reward for short-term company and individual performance, while long-term compensation rewards achievement of strategic long-term objectives and contributes toward overall stockholder value. Similarly, while we have not adopted any policies with respect to cash versus equity compensation, we feel that it is important to encourage or provide for a meaningful amount of equity ownership by our named executive officers as to help align their interests with those of stockholders, one of our compensation objectives. We combine the compensation elements for each named executive officer in a manner that the compensation committee believes, in its discretion and judgment, is consistent with the executive's contributions to our company and our overall goals with respect to executive compensation.

#### *Base Salary*

We believe that base salary is an important component of compensation as it provides a degree of financial stability for our named executive officers and is critical to recruiting and retaining our named executive officers. Base salary is also designed to recognize the scope of responsibilities placed on each named executive officer and reward each executive for his or her unique leadership skills, management experience and contributions. We make a subjective determination of base salary after considering such factors collectively.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### *Annual Cash Bonuses*

Our cash bonus compensation is designed to motivate executives to achieve superior performance in their areas of responsibility. To date, we have awarded only discretionary annual cash bonuses based upon a subjective evaluation of corporate and individual performance by the compensation committee or, prior to its creation, our Board of Directors.

### *Long-Term Equity Compensation*

We grant stock options to our named executive officers, as we believe that such grants further our compensation objectives of aligning the interests of our named executive officers with those of our stockholders, encouraging long-term performance, and providing a simple and easy-to-understand form of equity compensation that promotes executive retention. We view such grants both as incentives for future performance and as compensation for past accomplishments.

We generally have used stock options, rather than other forms of long-term incentives, because they create value for the executive only if stockholder value is increased through an increased share price. Our Board of Directors determined the exercise price based on internal or third-party valuation reports. In the future, the exercise price of stock options will be the fair market value of our common stock on the grant date. We have made discretionary grants of equity compensation, from time to time, as determined by the Board of Directors or after its creation, the compensation committee, taking into consideration such factors as individual performance and market conditions. The timing of any such equity grants was determined based on achievement by the named executive officer, and not any effort to time the grants in coordination with changes in our stock price.

### *Stock Ownership Guidelines*

We currently do not have stock ownership guidelines.

### *Perquisites and Other Benefits*

As a general matter, we do not intend to offer perquisites or other benefits to any executive officer, including the named executive officers, with an aggregate value in excess of \$10,000, because we believe we can provide better incentives for desired performance with compensation in the forms described above. We recognize that, from time to time, it may be appropriate to provide some perquisites or other benefits in order to attract, motivate and retain our executives, with any such decision to be reviewed and approved by the compensation committee as needed.

Our named executive officers are eligible to participate in standard employee benefit plans, including medical, dental, vision, life and any other employee benefit or insurance plan made available to employees. We maintain a 401(k) plan, which is intended to be a tax-qualified defined contribution plan under Section 401(k) of the Internal Revenue Code, or the Code. In general, all of our U.S. employees are eligible to participate in this plan. The 401(k) plan includes a salary deferral arrangement pursuant to which participants may elect to reduce their current compensation by up to 90% or the statutory limit, \$16,500 in 2010, whichever is less, and have the amount of the reduction contributed to the 401(k) plan. We made no matching contributions during 2010; however, we may add this benefit in the future for all employees.

### *Analysis of 2011 Compensation for Named Executive Officers*

#### *Base Salary*

The 2011 salaries for our named executive officers were established as follows:

- The base salary of Mr. Kimble L. Jenkins, our President and Chief Executive Officer, remained unchanged at \$325,000 per year.

---

## Table of Contents

- The base salary of David W. Carlson, our Chief Financial Officer, remained unchanged at \$225,000 per year.
- The base salary of Mr. Peter G. Piferi, our Chief Operating Officer, remained unchanged at \$250,000 per year.
- The salary of Mr. Oscar L. Thomas, our Vice President, Business Affairs, remained unchanged at \$175,000 per year. Mr. Thomas is also entitled to receive guaranteed bonus payments equal to \$12,500 per calendar quarter in accordance with the initial terms of his hiring. Since those bonus payments are guaranteed, they are considered to be part of Mr. Thomas' base salary, which totals \$225,000 per year.
- The base salary of Mr. John T. Keane, our Vice President, Sales, remained unchanged at \$220,000 per year.

However, effective October 1, 2010 and continuing through December 31, 2011, Messrs. Jenkins, Carlson, Piferi and Thomas voluntarily agreed to reduce their salaries temporarily to conserve cash for our operations. Taking into account the salary reductions, the actual base salaries paid to each of our named executive officers in 2011 and the amount of salary reductions were as follows:

<u>Named Executive Officer</u>	<u>2011 Actual Base Salary Paid</u>	<u>2011 Salary Reductions</u>
Kimble L. Jenkins	\$260,000	65,000
David W. Carlson	175,000	50,000
Peter G. Piferi	200,000	50,000
Oscar L. Thomas	190,000	35,000
John T. Keane	220,000	—

### *Annual Cash Bonuses*

No annual cash bonuses were paid to our named executive officers for 2011.

### *Long-Term Equity Compensation*

No long-term equity compensation was awarded to our named executive officers for 2011.



---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### *Effect of Accounting and Tax Treatment on Compensation Decisions*

In the review and establishment of our compensation programs, we consider the anticipated accounting and tax implications to us and our executives. While we consider the applicable accounting and tax treatment, these factors alone are not dispositive, and we also consider the cash and non-cash impact of the programs and whether a program is consistent with our overall compensation philosophy and objectives.

Section 162(m) of the Code imposes a limit on the amount of compensation that we may deduct in any one year with respect to covered employees, unless specific and detailed criteria are satisfied. Performance-based compensation, as defined in the Code, is fully deductible if the programs are approved by stockholders and meet other requirements. In general, we have determined that we will not seek to limit executive compensation so that all of such compensation is deductible under Section 162(m). However, from time to time, we monitor whether it might be in our interests to structure our compensation programs to satisfy the requirements of Section 162(m). We seek to maintain flexibility in compensating our executives in a manner designed to promote our corporate goals and, as a result, our compensation committee has not adopted a policy requiring all compensation to be deductible. Our compensation committee will continue to assess the impact of Section 162(m) on our compensation practices and determine what further action, if any, is appropriate.

### *Conclusion*

The compensation committee believes that our executive leadership is a key element to our success and that the compensation package offered to our named executive officers is a key element in attracting and retaining the appropriate personnel.

The Board of Directors and, since its creation, the compensation committee each believes it has maintained compensation for our named executive officers at levels that are reflective of the talent and success of the individuals being compensated, and with the inclusion of additional compensation directly tied to performance, the compensation committee believes executive compensation will be sufficiently comparable to our industry peers to allow us to retain our key personnel at costs which are appropriate for us.

The compensation committee will continue to develop, analyze and review its methods for aligning executive officers' long-term compensation with the benefits generated for stockholders. The compensation committee believes the idea of creating ownership helps align management's interests with the interests of stockholders. The compensation committee has no pre-determined timeline for implementing new or ongoing long-term incentive plans. New plans are reviewed, discussed and implemented as the compensation committee feels it is necessary or appropriate as a measure to incent, retain and reward our named executive officers.

### **Summary Compensation Table**

The following table shows the compensation awarded or paid to, or earned by, our Chief Executive Officer, our Chief Financial Officer, and our three other most highly compensated executive officers for the years ended December 31, 2011, 2010 and 2009. We refer to these executive officers in this registration statement as our "named executive officers".

## Table of Contents

Name and Principal Position	Year	Salary (\$)	Bonus (\$)	Option Awards \$( <sup>1</sup> )	All Other Compensation \$( <sup>2</sup> )	Total (\$)
Kimble L. Jenkins	2011	\$260,000	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 7,194	\$267,194
Chief Executive Officer and President	2010	308,750	—	556,100 <sup>(3)</sup>	6,527	871,377 <sup>(4)</sup>
	2009	325,000	110,000	192,060 <sup>(5)</sup>	5,355	632,415 <sup>(5)</sup>
David W. Carlson	2011	175,000	—	—	8,170	183,170
Chief Financial Officer	2010	179,327	—	282,200 <sup>(6)</sup>	5,084	466,611 <sup>(7)</sup>
	2009	—	—	—	—	—
Peter G. Piferi	2011	200,000	—	—	3,558	203,558
Chief Operating Officer	2010	241,667	—	468,950 <sup>(8)</sup>	3,355	713,972 <sup>(9)</sup>
	2009	250,000	100,000	—	2,860	352,860
Oscar L. Thomas	2011	190,000	—	—	6,938	196,938
Vice President, Business Affairs	2010	212,500	—	390,100 <sup>(10)</sup>	5,757	608,357 <sup>(11)</sup>
	2009	225,000	80,000	—	5,355	310,355
John T. Keane	2011	220,000	57,000 <sup>(12)</sup>	—	7,158	284,150
Vice President, Sales	2010	165,000	54,000 <sup>(12)</sup>	74,700 <sup>(13)</sup>	4,750	298,450 <sup>(14)</sup>
	2009	—	—	—	—	—

- (1) These amounts do not represent cash compensation paid to the named individual. These non-cash amounts represent only the aggregate grant date fair value of the option awards as computed in accordance with ASC Topic 718. For a discussion of the assumptions made in the valuation of the awards, see the discussion under “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—Critical Accounting Policies and Significant Judgments and Estimates—Share-based Compensation” and note 2 to the financial statements included elsewhere in this registration statement.
- (2) These amounts consist of the group medical, life and disability premiums that we paid.
- (3) Does not represent cash compensation. Represents only the aggregate grant date fair value in accordance with ASC Topic 718 for options to purchase an aggregate of 670,000 shares of our common stock issued to Mr. Jenkins.
- (4) Of this amount, the cash compensation paid to Mr. Jenkins totaled only \$308,750.
- (5) In September 2004, Mr. Jenkins purchased 500,000 shares of our common stock, which he paid for by delivering to us a non-recourse promissory note. In December 2009, we filed a registration statement for a planned initial public offering of our common stock. Section 402(a) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act required that the note be repaid prior to the filing of that registration statement. Our Board of Directors formed a special committee of independent directors to review and evaluate any potential transaction with Mr. Jenkins with respect to his loan. The special committee approved, and our Board of Directors ratified, a transaction pursuant to which, on December 22, 2009, Mr. Jenkins sold us 66,652 shares of common stock valued at \$9.64 per share and we issued to Mr. Jenkins an option to purchase 66,652 shares of common stock with an exercise price of \$9.64 per share. Our Board of Directors determined that the fair market value of our common stock as of December 22, 2009 was \$9.64 per share. We paid most of the stock purchase price for Mr. Jenkins’ shares by cancelling Mr. Jenkins’ promissory note and we paid the remaining portion of approximately \$47,833 in cash. See “Certain Relationships and Related Party Transactions—Related Person Transactions.” The purpose of the transaction was to satisfy Mr. Jenkins’ promissory note to enable us to file our registration statement for the planned initial public offering while maintaining as closely as possible the original economics of Mr. Jenkins’ loan transaction. The December 22, 2009 stock option we issued to Mr. Jenkins, when computed in accordance with ASC Topic 718, resulted in \$183,960 of non-cash compensation to Mr. Jenkins.
- (6) Does not represent cash compensation. Represents only the aggregate grant date fair value in accordance with ASC Topic 718 for options to purchase an aggregate of 340,000 shares of our common stock issued to Mr. Carlson.
- (7) Of this amount, the cash compensation paid to Mr. Carlson totaled only \$179,327.
- (8) Does not represent cash compensation. Represents only the aggregate grant date fair value in accordance with ASC Topic 718 for options to purchase an aggregate of 565,000 shares of our common stock issued to Mr. Piferi.
- (9) Of this amount, the cash compensation paid to Mr. Piferi totaled only \$241,667.
- (10) Does not represent cash compensation. Represents only the aggregate grant date fair value in accordance with ASC Topic 718 for options to purchase an aggregate of 470,000 shares of our common stock issued to Mr. Thomas.
- (11) Of this amount, the cash compensation paid to Mr. Thomas totaled only \$212,500.
- (12) Represents commissions paid to Mr. Keane in connection with his ClearPoint sales activities.
- (13) Does not represent cash compensation. Represents only the aggregate grant date fair value in accordance with ASC Topic 718 for options to purchase an aggregate of 90,000 shares of our common stock issued to Mr. Keane.

(14) Of this amount, the cash compensation paid to Mr. Keane totaled only \$219,000.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**Grants of Plan-Based Awards**

There were no grants of plan-based awards to our named executive officers in 2011.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### Outstanding Equity Awards at December 31, 2011

The table below sets forth information regarding the outstanding equity awards held by our named executive officers at December 31, 2011.

Name	Option Awards			Option Expiration Date
	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options (#) Exercisable	Number of Securities Underlying Unexercised Options (#) Unexercisable	Option Exercise Price (\$)	
Kimble L. Jenkins	5,000 <sup>(1)</sup>	— <sup>(1)</sup>	3.20	March 28, 2017
	2,500 <sup>(2)</sup>	— <sup>(2)</sup>	9.64	September 16, 2018
	2,500 <sup>(3)</sup>	— <sup>(3)</sup>	9.64	November 8, 2018
	2,500 <sup>(4)</sup>	— <sup>(4)</sup>	9.64	December 10, 2019
	44,435 <sup>(5)</sup>	22,217 <sup>(5)</sup>	9.64	September 1, 2013
	169,734 <sup>(6)</sup>	339,466 <sup>(6)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020
	— <sup>(7)</sup>	160,800 <sup>(7)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020
David W. Carlson	86,134 <sup>(6)</sup>	172,266 <sup>(6)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020
	— <sup>(7)</sup>	81,600 <sup>(7)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020
Peter G. Piferi	143,134 <sup>(6)</sup>	286,266 <sup>(6)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020
	— <sup>(7)</sup>	135,600 <sup>(7)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020
Oscar L. Thomas	119,067 <sup>(6)</sup>	238,133 <sup>(6)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020
	— <sup>(7)</sup>	112,800 <sup>(7)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020
John T. Keane	15,000 <sup>(6)</sup>	30,000 <sup>(6)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020
	15,000 <sup>(6)</sup>	30,000 <sup>(6)</sup>	1.80	December 13, 2020

- (1) The vesting of shares subject to this option occurred on the date of grant, March 28, 2007.
- (2) The vesting of shares subject to this option occurred on the date of grant, September 16, 2008.
- (3) The vesting of shares subject to this option occurred on the first anniversary of the date of grant, November 8, 2009.
- (4) The vesting of shares subject to this option occurred on April 22, 2010, which was the day immediately preceding the 2010 annual meeting of our stockholders.
- (5) One-third of the shares subject to this option vested on the first anniversary of the grant date, December 22, 2010. An additional one-third of the shares subject to this option vested on the second anniversary of the grant date, December 22, 2011. The remaining shares subject to this option vest on the third anniversary of the grant date, December 22, 2012.
- (6) One-third of the shares subject to this option vested on the first anniversary of the grant date, December 13, 2011. The remaining shares subject to this option vest ratably on the second and third anniversaries of the grant date, December 13, 2012 and December 13, 2013.
- (7) The shares subject to this option vest ratably on the first, second and third anniversaries of the grant date, December 13, 2011, December 13, 2012 and December 13, 2013, provided that no shares vest until such time as we have closed a target equity financing, which is defined as one or more equity financing transactions that results in cumulative gross proceeds of at least \$10 million.

### Option Exercises

None of our named executive officers exercised stock options in 2011.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### Employment Agreements

Each of our named executive officers is an “at-will” employee. However, some of our named executive officers have employment letters that set forth the basic terms of their employment. The compensation committee is considering the advisability of entering into formal employment agreements with some of our named executive officers prior to or following the effectiveness of this registration statement.

### Potential Payments Upon Change of Control

<u>Name</u>	<u>Benefit</u>	<u>Change of Control</u>
Kimble L. Jenkins	Stock option acceleration <sup>(1)</sup>	—
David W. Carlson	Stock option acceleration <sup>(1)</sup>	—
Peter G. Piferi	Stock option acceleration <sup>(1)</sup>	—
Oscar L. Thomas	Stock option acceleration <sup>(1)</sup>	—
John T. Keane	Stock option acceleration <sup>(1)</sup>	—

- (1) Assumes change of control effective as of December 31, 2011 and excludes vested options and stock held as of such date. Stock option acceleration is calculated as the intrinsic value of the unvested options on December 31, 2011. The intrinsic value is calculated as the difference between the market value of our common stock as of December 31, 2011, and the exercise price of the stock option. We do not believe that the fair market value as of December 31, 2011, exceeds the exercise price of the options. There was no public market for our common stock in 2011.

For purposes of these benefits, a change of control is deemed to occur, in general, if there is: (1) a change in our ownership; (2) a change in our effective control; or (3) a change in the ownership of a substantial portion of our assets. For purposes of this definition, a change in our ownership will occur on the date on which any one person, or more than one person acting as a group, acquires ownership of our stock that, together with stock already held by such person or group, constitutes more than 50% of the total fair market value or total voting power of our stock. A change in our effective control will occur on the date on which either (i) a person, or more than one person acting as a group, acquires ownership of our stock possessing 30% or more of the total voting power of our stock, taking into account all such stock acquired during the 12-month period ending on the date of the most recent acquisition, or (ii) a majority of the members of our Board of Directors is replaced during any 12-month period by directors whose appointment or election is not endorsed by a majority of the members of our Board of Directors prior to the date of the appointment or election. A change in the ownership of a substantial portion of our assets will occur on the date on which any one person, or more than one person acting as a group, other than a person or group of persons that is related to us, acquires assets from us that have a total gross fair market value equal to or more than 40% of the total gross fair market value of all of our assets immediately prior to such acquisition or acquisitions, taking into account all such assets acquired during the 12-month period ending on the date of the most recent acquisition.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### 2011 Director Compensation

The following table sets forth information with respect to the compensation of our non-employee directors in 2011.

Name	Fees Earned or Paid in Cash (\$)	Option Awards \$( <sup>1</sup> )	All Other Compensation (\$)	Total (\$)
Lenox D. Baker <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 2,625	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 2,625
Paul A. Bottomley	8,500	—	60,000 <sup>(3)</sup>	68,500
Bruce C. Conway	5,750	—	—	5,750
Charles E. Koob	11,750	—	—	11,750
James K. Malernee, Jr.	11,500	—	—	11,500
Michael A. Pietrangelo	11,750	—	—	11,750
Andrew K. Rooke	4,250	—	—	4,250
Michael J. Ryan	4,000	—	—	4,000
John N. Spencer, Jr.	12,500	—	—	12,500
John C. Thomas, Jr <sup>(4)</sup>	4,250	—	—	4,250

- (1) These amounts do not represent cash compensation paid to the named individual. These non-cash amounts represent the aggregate grant date fair value of such options as computed in accordance with ASC Topic 718. For a discussion of the assumptions made in the valuation of the awards, see the discussion under “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations—Critical Accounting Policies and Significant Judgments and Estimates—Share-based Compensation” and note 2 to the financial statements included elsewhere in this registration statement.
- (2) In connection with his retirement as a director, Dr. Baker did not stand for re-election to the Board of Directors at our 2011 annual meeting of stockholders which was held on May 13, 2011.
- (3) This amount was compensation paid under Dr. Bottomley’s consulting agreement.
- (4) Mr. Thomas ceased serving as our Chief Financial Officer in April 2010. In June 2011, Mr. Thomas, who had been a director since April 2004, made the decision to step down from our Board of Directors. Accordingly, Mr. Thomas submitted his resignation from our Board of Directors effective June 27, 2011.

### Benefit Plans

#### *1998 Stock Option Plan*

We adopted the 1998 Stock Option Plan on June 24, 1998 to enable us to attract, retain and motivate our officers, directors, employees and consultants. Of the 375,000 shares of common stock that were eligible for issuance pursuant to awards made under this plan, 287,500 shares of common stock were subject to outstanding options as of December 31, 2011. As of such date, the outstanding options had a weighted average exercise price of \$0.89 per share and had expiration dates ranging from April 12, 2014 to October 21, 2014. We terminated this plan, effective June 24, 2008, with respect to future grants such that no new options may be awarded under this plan.

#### *2007 Stock Incentive Plan*

We adopted the 2007 Stock Incentive Plan on March 28, 2007 to enable us to attract, retain and motivate our officers, directors, employees and consultants. Of the 625,000 shares of common stock that were eligible for issuance pursuant to awards made under this plan, 129,875 shares of common stock were subject to options outstanding as of December 31, 2011. As of such date, the outstanding options had a weighted average exercise price of \$6.77 per share and had expiration dates ranging from March 28, 2017 to December 10, 2019. Although this plan remains in effect and options under the plan remain outstanding, we ceased making awards under the plan upon the adoption of our 2010 Incentive Compensation Plan.

#### *2010 Equity Plans*

We adopted our 2010 Incentive Compensation Plan on April 23, 2010, and we adopted our 2010 Non-Qualified Stock Option Plan on December 13, 2010. The principal purpose of both plans was to attract, retain and motivate selected employees, consultants and directors through the granting of stock-based compensation awards.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

Of the 1,250,000 shares of common stock that were eligible for issuance pursuant to awards made under the 2010 Incentive Compensation Plan, 824,950 shares of common stock were subject to options outstanding as of December 31, 2011. As of such date, the outstanding options had exercise prices of \$1.80 per share and had expiration dates of December 13, 2020. Of the 2,565,675 shares of common stock that were eligible for issuance pursuant to awards made under the 2010 Non-Qualified Stock Option Plan, 2,371,000 shares of common stock were subject to options outstanding as of December 31, 2011. As of such date, the outstanding options had exercise prices of \$1.80 per share and had expiration dates of December 13, 2020. Although these plans remain in effect and options under the plans remain outstanding, we will cease making awards under these plans as of the adoption and effectiveness of our 2012 Incentive Compensation Plan.

### ***2012 Incentive Compensation Plan***

We intend to adopt a 2012 Incentive Compensation Plan, or the 2012 Plan. The principal purpose of the 2012 Plan is to attract, retain and motivate selected employees, consultants and directors through the granting of stock-based compensation awards and cash-based performance bonus awards. The 2012 Plan is also designed to permit us to make cash-based awards and equity-based awards intended to qualify as “performance-based compensation” under Section 162(m) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or the Code.

The following summary is qualified in its entirety by reference to the text of the 2012 Plan, which is filed as an exhibit to this registration statement.

*Eligibility.* Awards may be granted under the 2012 Plan to officers, directors (including non-employee directors) and other employees of our company or any of our subsidiaries or other affiliates, to any individual who is an advisor, consultant or other provider of services to us or any of our subsidiaries or other affiliates and to any other individuals who are approved by our Board of Directors as eligible to participate in the plan. Only our employees or those of any of our subsidiaries are eligible to receive incentive stock options.

*Administration, Amendment and Termination.* Our compensation committee will have the power and authority to administer the 2012 Plan. The compensation committee will have the authority to interpret the terms and intent of the 2012 Plan, determine eligibility for and terms of awards for participants and make all other determinations necessary or advisable for the administration of the 2012 Plan. To the extent permitted by law, our compensation committee may delegate authority under the 2012 Plan to our Chief Executive Officer or to our other executive officers under conditions and limitations the compensation committee may establish.

The compensation committee may amend, suspend or terminate the 2012 Plan at any time with respect to any shares of common stock as to which awards have not been made. No such action may amend the 2012 Plan without the approval of stockholders if the amendment is required to be submitted for stockholder approval by applicable law, rule or regulation.

*Awards.* Awards under the 2012 Plan may be made in the form of: options, SARs, stock awards, restricted share units, cash bonuses or other incentive award granted under the 2012 Plan, whether singly, in combination, or in tandem. Any of the foregoing awards may be made subject to attainment of performance goals over any applicable performance period.

*Shares Subject to the Plan.* The aggregate number of shares of our common stock that may be issued initially pursuant to awards under the 2012 Plan is 3,000,000 shares. The maximum number of shares that may be issued pursuant to the exercise of incentive stock options under the 2012 Plan is 3,000,000. Shares issued under the 2012 Plan may be authorized but unissued shares or treasury shares. Any shares covered by an award, or portion of an award, granted under the 2012 Plan that is forfeited or canceled, expires or is settled in cash will be deemed not to have been issued for purposes of determining the maximum number of shares available for issuance under the plan.

*Adjustment of Shares Subject to 2012 Plan.* In the event of certain changes in our capitalization, the compensation committee will adjust, among other award terms, the number and kind of shares or property that may be delivered in connection with awards and the exercise price, grant price or purchase price relating to any award in such manner as the compensation committee determines to be necessary to prevent dilution or enlargement of the rights of participants.



---

## Table of Contents

*Effect of Change of Control. Upon the occurrence of a change of control, the compensation committee may:*

- accelerate, vest or cause the restrictions to lapse with respect to all or any portion of an award under the 2012 Plan;
- cancel such awards for fair value (as determined by the compensation committee);
- provide for the issuance of substitute awards that will substantially preserve the otherwise applicable terms of any affected awards previously granted under the 2012 Plan, as determined by the compensation committee; or
- provide that for a period of at least 10 days prior to the change of control, option awards will be exercisable as to all shares of common stock subject thereto and that upon the occurrence of the change of control, such awards will terminate and be of no further force or effect.

*Corporate Performance Objectives.* Section 162(m) of the Code limits public companies to an annual deduction for federal income tax purposes of \$1,000,000 for compensation paid to their Chief Executive Officer and, based on recent IRS interpretation, the three most highly compensated executive officers determined at the end of each year. Performance-based compensation is excluded from this limitation. The 2012 Plan is designed to permit the compensation committee to grant awards that qualify as performance-based for purposes of satisfying the conditions of Section 162(m) at such time as the 2012 Plan becomes subject to Section 162(m).

### ***Key Personnel Incentive Program***

We have adopted the Key Personnel Incentive Program, or the program, to provide a key employee and consultant with the opportunity to receive incentive bonus payments based on future performance of services to the company or upon a consummation of a sale transaction, as defined in the program. The compensation committee of our Board of Directors is responsible for administering the program, and the only participants in the program are Paul A. Bottomley and Parag Karmarkar. The program will terminate on the earlier of December 31, 2015 or the occurrence of a sale transaction.

### ***Service Bonuses***

Until the occurrence of a sale transaction, each participant will be entitled to receive semi-annual service bonuses beginning on June 30, 2012 and continuing through December 31, 2015 if the participant continues to provide services to us as our consultant or employee as of the respective payment dates. Pursuant to their awards, Dr. Bottomley and Mr. Karmarkar would receive service bonuses totaling up to \$1,700,000 and \$1,000,000, respectively, payable in eight equal semi-annual installments. If the participant's consultancy or employment is (i) terminated due to the participant's death or disability, or (ii) involuntarily terminated by us other than for cause, as defined in the program, then the participant will be deemed vested, as of the termination date, in all future service bonus payments, and we will pay that aggregate amount no later than March 15 of the year following the year in which the termination occurred.

### ***Bonus Upon a Sale Transaction***

In the event of a sale transaction, each of the participants will be entitled to receive a bonus payment under the program if the participant continues to provide services to us as our consultant or employee as of the date of the transaction. Mr. Karmarkar would receive a bonus equal to \$1,000,000, less any service bonus payments made to Mr. Karmarkar as described above. Dr. Bottomley would receive a bonus equal to (i) \$1,000,000, plus (ii) 1.4% of the amount by which the "net proceeds" from the sale transaction exceed \$50,000,000, but not to exceed \$700,000, less (iii) any service bonus payments made to Dr. Bottomley as described above. Following a sale transaction, neither participant will be entitled to receive any further service bonuses.

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

For purposes of the program, the “net proceeds” from a sale transaction will be the portion of the aggregate cash and non-cash consideration paid or payable in connection with the consummation of the sale transaction that is distributed, or otherwise available for distribution, to holders of our common stock.

### ***Cardiac EP Business Participation Plan***

We have adopted the Cardiac EP Business Participation Plan, or the plan, to enable us to provide a key product development advisor and consultant with financial rewards in the event that we sell our business operations relating to catheter-based MRI-guided cardiac ablation to treat cardiac arrhythmias, which we refer to as our cardiac EP business operations. The cardiac EP business operations include our operations relating to the ClearTrace system for MRI-guided cardiac ablation to treat cardiac arrhythmias, but it does not include our operations relating to our ClearPoint system or any other product or product candidate. The sole participant in the plan is Dr. Nassir F. Marrouche.

In the event that we sell our cardiac EP business operations, whether on a stand-alone basis or as part of the sale of our entire company, the participant will receive a payment under the plan equal to (i) the transaction value paid for or allocated to the cardiac EP business operations in the sale, multiplied by (ii) the participant’s “participation interest” at the time of the sale. The participant was initially awarded a participation interest of 6.6%. Pursuant to the terms of the plan, that percentage interest is equitably reduced from time to time to take into account equity financing transactions in which we issue shares of our common stock or securities convertible into shares of our common stock in exchange for cash proceeds. As of September 30, 2011, the participant’s participation interest was 6.6%. However, the participant’s participation interest will be appropriately reduced to take into account the shares of common stock issuable in connection with conversions upon the effectiveness of this registration statement. The plan will terminate on June 2, 2025.

### ***401(k) Plan***

We offer a 401(k) Plan pursuant to Section 401(k) of the Code. All full time United States employees are eligible to participate in the plan. The plan permits pretax contributions by participants not to exceed annual amounts allowable under the Code. Participants are fully vested in their contributions.

### **Limitations on Directors’ Liability and Indemnification Agreements**

As permitted by Delaware law, we have adopted provisions in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, both of which will become effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, that limit or eliminate the personal liability of directors for a breach of their fiduciary duty of care as a director. The duty of care generally requires that, when acting on behalf of the corporation, a director exercise an informed business judgment based on all material information reasonably available to him or her. Consequently, a director will not be personally liable to us or our stockholders for monetary damages or breach of fiduciary duty as a director, except for liability for any:

- breach of the director’s duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;
- act or omission not in good faith or that involves intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of law;
- act related to unlawful stock repurchases, redemptions or other distributions or payments of dividends; or
- transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit.

These limitations of liability do not limit or eliminate our rights or any stockholder’s rights to seek non-monetary relief, such as injunctive relief or rescission. These provisions will not alter a director’s liability under federal securities laws. Our certificate of incorporation that will become effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement also authorizes us to indemnify our officers, directors and other agents to the fullest extent permitted under Delaware law.

---

## Table of Contents

As permitted by Delaware law, our bylaws also provide that:

- we will indemnify our directors, officers, employees and other agents to the fullest extent permitted by law;
- we may advance expenses to our directors, officers, employees and other agents in connection with a legal proceeding to the fullest extent permitted by law; and
- the rights provided in our bylaws are not exclusive.

We believe that indemnification under our bylaws covers at least negligence and gross negligence on the part of indemnified parties. Our bylaws also permit us to secure insurance on behalf of any officer, director, employee or other agent for any liability arising out of his or her actions in connection with their services to us, regardless of whether our bylaws permit such indemnification. We have obtained such insurance.

In addition to the indemnification provided for in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, we have entered into separate indemnification agreements with each of our directors and executive officers. These indemnification agreements may require us, among other things, to indemnify our directors and officers for some expenses, including attorneys' fees, judgments, fines and settlement amounts incurred by a director or officer in any action or proceeding arising out of his or her service as one of our directors or officers, or any of our subsidiaries or any other company or enterprise to which the person provides services at our request. We believe that these provisions and agreements are necessary to attract and retain qualified individuals to serve as directors and officers. There is no pending litigation or proceeding involving any of our directors or officers to which indemnification is required or permitted, and we are not aware of any threatened litigation or proceeding that may result in a claim for indemnification.

### **Item 7. *Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence***

#### **Policies and Procedures for Related Person Transactions**

Prior to the effectiveness of this registration statement, we will adopt a related person transactions policy, to be effective upon effectiveness of this registration statement, pursuant to which our executive officers, directors and principal stockholders, including their immediate family members, are not permitted to enter into a related person transaction with us without the consent of our audit committee. Any request for us to enter into a transaction with an executive officer, director, principal stockholder or any of such persons' immediate family members, in which the amount involved exceeds the lesser of \$120,000 or 1% of the average of our total assets at year end for the last two completed fiscal years, must be presented to our audit committee for review, consideration and approval. All of our directors, executive officers and employees are required to report to our audit committee any such related person transaction. In approving or rejecting the proposed agreement, our audit committee will take into account, among other factors it deems appropriate, whether the proposed related person transaction is on terms no less favorable than terms generally available to an unaffiliated third party under the same or similar circumstances, the extent of the person's interest in the transaction and, if applicable, the impact on a director's independence. After consideration of these and other factors, the audit committee may approve or reject the transaction. Under the policy, if we should discover related person transactions that have not been approved, the audit committee will be notified and will determine the appropriate action, including ratification, rescission or amendment of the transaction.

#### **Related Person Transactions**

The following is a description of transactions since January 1, 2008 to which we have been a party, in which the amount involved in the transaction exceeds \$46,000, which is 1% of the average of our total assets at year end for our last two completed fiscal years, and in which any of our executive officers, directors and principal stockholders, including their immediate family members, had or will have a direct or indirect material interest.

In September 2004, Mr. Jenkins, our Chief Executive Officer, purchased 500,000 shares of our common stock for an aggregate purchase price of \$480,000. Mr. Jenkins paid the purchase price by delivering to us a non-recourse promissory note in the principal amount of \$480,000, and Mr. Jenkins pledged the purchased shares as security for the note. The note was amended and restated on September 30, 2008 to extend the maturity date. As of December

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

22, 2009, the outstanding balance on the note was \$594,687 (including \$114,687 of accrued interest). In December 2009, we filed a registration statement for a planned initial public offering of our common stock. Section 402(a) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act required that Mr. Jenkin's note be repaid prior to the filing of that registration statement. Our Board of Directors formed a special committee of independent directors to review and evaluate any potential transaction with Mr. Jenkins with respect to his loan. The special committee approved, and our Board of Directors ratified, a transaction pursuant to which, on December 22, 2009, Mr. Jenkins sold us 66,652 shares of common stock valued at \$9.64 per share and we issued to Mr. Jenkins an option to purchase 66,652 shares of common stock with an exercise price of \$9.64 per share. Our Board of Directors determined that the fair market value of our common stock as of December 22, 2009 was \$9.64 per share. We paid a portion of the stock purchase price, approximately \$594,687, by cancelling Mr. Jenkins' promissory note and the remainder, approximately \$47,833, was paid in cash. The purpose of the transaction was to satisfy Mr. Jenkins' promissory note to enable us to file of our registration statement for the planned initial public offering while maintaining as closely as possible the original economics of Mr. Jenkins' loan transaction.

In November 2010, we issued an aggregate of 10,714,286 units in a private offering in which we received gross proceeds of approximately \$3,000,000. We issued the units to existing stockholders and other existing investors. Each unit consisted of a junior secured note and one share of our common stock. We issued 10,714,286 shares of common stock and junior secured notes in the aggregate principal amount of approximately \$3,000,000. The notes mature 10 years from the date of issuance and accrue interest at the rate of 3.5% per year. The notes are secured by a security interest in all of our assets. All outstanding principal and interest on the notes is due in a single payment upon maturity. Four of our executive officers, Kimble L. Jenkins, David W. Carlson, Peter G. Piferi and Oscar L. Thomas, purchased an aggregate of 882,726 units in the offering for \$247,164. In addition, three of our non-employee directors, Paul A. Bottomley, Charles E. Koob and John C. Thomas, Jr., also purchased an aggregate of 567,203 units for \$158,816 in the offering. Five other non-employee directors had advanced a total of \$190,000 to the company in anticipation of the offering. However, due to the investment allocations for the offering, those five non-employee directors were not able to purchase units. We returned all funds advanced by the five non-employee directors without interest.

In June through September 2011, we issued unsecured convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$1,310,000 to five of our directors, Bruce C. Conway, Charles E. Koob, James K. Malernee, Jr., Michael A. Pietrangelo, John N. Spencer, Jr., and an entity controlled by another director, Andrew K. Rooke. The note holders also received warrants to purchase shares of our common stock. The notes mature two years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at the rate of 15% per year. The warrants were immediately exercisable, have a term of five years, and have an exercise price of \$0.01 per share. Upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, all principal and accrued interest on the notes will automatically convert into shares of our common stock at a conversion price of \$0.60 per share.

Dr. Paul Bottomley, one of our directors, serves as a consultant to the company. Under his agreement, Dr. Bottomley's consulting fee is \$60,000 per year.

In addition to the disclosure above, the terms of the Key Personnel Incentive Plan, which is more fully described in the section entitled "Benefit Plans—Key Personnel Incentive Plan", is incorporated and restated herein.

### **Third Amended and Restated Investors Rights' Agreement**

Pursuant to our Third Amended and Restated Investors Rights' Agreement, or Rights Agreement, certain of our stockholders and their affiliates and transferees have registration rights. For more information concerning the Rights Agreement and other registration rights we have granted, please see "Description of Capital Stock—Registration Rights."

### **Indemnification Agreements**

We have entered into separate indemnification agreements with each of our directors and executive officers, in addition to the indemnification provided for in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws. See "Management—Limitations on Directors' Liability and Indemnification Agreements".

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Board Independence**

We have not applied to list our securities on a national securities exchange or an inter-dealer quotation system which has requirements that a majority of our Board of Directors be independent. However, for purposes of determining independence, we have adopted the provisions of Nasdaq Marketplace Rule 5605. Our Board of Directors undertook a review of the composition of our Board of Directors and its committees and the independence of each director. Based upon information requested from and provided by each director concerning his or her background, employment and affiliations, including family relationships, our Board of Directors has determined that none of Drs. Bottomley or Malernee or Messrs. Conway, Koob, Pietrangelo, Rooke or Spencer, representing seven of our nine directors, has a relationship that would interfere with the exercise of independent judgment in carrying out the responsibilities of a director and that each of these directors is “independent” as that term is defined under Rule 5605(a)(2) of the Nasdaq Marketplace Rules. In making such determination, our Board of Directors considered the relationships that each such director has with us and all other facts and circumstances the Board of Directors deemed relevant in determining independence, including the beneficial ownership of our capital stock by each director.

### **Item 8. *Legal Proceedings***

In the ordinary course of our business, we may be subject to various claims, pending and potential legal actions for damages, investigations relating to governmental laws and regulations and other matters arising out of the normal conduct of our business. We are not aware of any material pending legal proceedings to which we are a party or of which any of our properties is the subject.

### **Item 9. *Market Price of and Dividends on the Registrant’s Common Equity and Related Stockholder Matters***

#### **Market Information**

There is no established public trading market for our common stock.

#### **Holders**

As of January 31, 2012, we had 16,084,981 shares of common stock outstanding and 7,965,000 shares of preferred stock outstanding that are convertible into 7,965,000 shares of common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement. As of January 31, 2012, we also had convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of approximately \$7.4 million outstanding that are convertible into 10,950,750 shares of common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement. As of January 31, 2012, we had approximately 600 stockholders, assuming the conversion of all outstanding shares of our preferred stock, as well as convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of approximately \$7.4 million, into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement. In addition, as of January 31, 2012, options and warrants to purchase 6,021,421 shares of common stock were issued and outstanding, as were convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of approximately \$6.2 million that do not automatically convert into shares of common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement.

#### **Dividends**

We have never declared or paid cash dividends on our capital stock. We currently intend to retain all future earnings for the operation and expansion of our business and, therefore, do not anticipate declaring or paying cash dividends in the foreseeable future. The payment of dividends will be at the discretion of our Board of Directors and will depend on our results of operations, capital requirements, financial condition, prospects, contractual arrangements, any limitations on payments of dividends present in any of our future debt agreements and other factors our Board of Directors may deem relevant.

## [Table of Contents](#)

### Equity Compensation Plan Information

Plan Category	Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights	Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options, warrants and rights	Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a))
	(a)	(b)	(c)
Equity compensation plans approved by security holders	1,242,325	\$ 2.11	425,050
Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders(1)	2,371,000	\$ 1.80	194,675
Total	3,613,355	\$ 1.91	619,725

- (1) Our Board of Directors adopted our 2010 Non-Qualified Stock Option Plan on December 13, 2010. That plan has not been approved by our stockholders. The plan provided for the issuance of non-qualified stock options to purchase up to 2,565,675 shares of our common stock. We will no longer make awards under this plan as of the adoption and effectiveness of our 2012 Incentive Compensation Plan.

#### Item 10. Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities

The following sets forth information regarding all unregistered securities sold since December 31, 2007:

1. We granted stock options to employees, consultants and directors to purchase an aggregate of 184,125 shares of common stock under our 2007 Stock Incentive Plan, 851,450 shares of common stock under our 2010 Incentive Compensation Plan, and 2,395,000 shares of common stock under our 2010 Non-Qualified Stock Option Plan. The issuance of these options was exempt from registration under Section 4(2) of the Securities Act, as a sale not involving a public offering, or pursuant to Rule 701 under the Securities Act.

2. On December 22, 2009, we issued to Mr. Jenkins an option to purchase 66,652 shares of our common stock at an exercise price of \$9.64 per share. The issuance of this option was exempt from registration under 4(2) of the Securities Act, as a sale not involving a public offering.

3. During 2009, Boston Scientific loaned us \$3.5 million pursuant to the terms of three convertible promissory notes. Each loan accrued interest at the rate of 10% per year, compounded annually, and each loan was scheduled to mature on the second anniversary of the date on which the funds were advanced. Effective February 2, 2012, we entered into a loan amendment with Boston Scientific which extended the maturity dates of each loan by three years and also reduced the interest rate of each loan from 10% to 0%, beginning February 2, 2012. The Boston Scientific loans are secured by a first priority security interest in all of our assets. Under the terms of the loans, we will be required to prepay all or a portion of the loans upon the consummation of any qualified financing, which is any equity financing in which shares of our preferred stock are issued in exchange for cash proceeds. Upon consummation of a qualified financing from Medtronic, Inc., St. Jude Medical, Inc., or Johnson & Johnson, or any of their respective subsidiaries or affiliates, up to 100% of the cash proceeds from such qualified financing must be used to prepay the outstanding amount of the loans. Upon consummation of a qualified financing from any other investor, up to 25% of the cash proceeds from such qualified financing must be applied by us to prepay the outstanding amount of the loans. We can prepay each loan at any time prior to its respective maturity date. At the option of Boston Scientific, the loans are convertible at any time into one share of a new series of our preferred stock for every \$8.00 outstanding under the loans at the time of conversion. The shares of the new series of preferred stock issuable upon such an optional conversion by Boston Scientific must be agreed upon between us and Boston Scientific. In addition, in the event we conduct a qualified financing, Boston Scientific may elect to convert the loans into shares of the series of preferred stock that we issue in the qualified financing, based on a conversion price equal to the lowest price paid by investors in the qualified financing for a share of preferred stock. In the event Boston Scientific has not converted the loans into shares of preferred stock prior to the time we consummate an initial public offering of shares of our common stock in which we receive gross cash proceeds of at least \$20 million, Boston Scientific will lose its right to convert the loans into equity.

---

## Table of Contents

4. In March 2010, we issued 10% senior unsecured convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of approximately \$4.1 million to 50 accredited investors in a private placement. The notes automatically convert into shares of our common stock upon the closing of an initial public offering of shares of our common stock at the lesser of \$8.00 per share or 80% of the public offering price. In addition, subject to prior maturity, prepayment and/or certain adjustments, holders of the notes may convert the outstanding principal amount of their notes into shares of our common stock at any time, based on a conversion price of \$8.00 per share. The notes mature two years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at the rate of 10% per year. When issued, the notes did not provide for conversion into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement. However, as of January 31, 2012, holders of approximately \$3.4 million in principal amount of the notes have amended their notes to provide for the automatic conversion of their notes, including the principal and all accrued interest, into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, based on a conversion price of \$1.00 per share. We continue to negotiate with the holders of the remaining \$0.7 million in principal amount of the notes to amend their notes in the same manner. In connection with the financing transaction in which the notes were originally issued, we engaged Gilford Securities Incorporated to serve as our placement agent. As placement agent, Gilford Securities Incorporated received a cash fee of approximately \$285,000 and a warrant exercisable for 25,444 shares of our common stock at a price equal to the lesser of \$8.00 per share or 80% of the public offering price in an initial public offering.

5. In November 2010, we issued an aggregate of 10,714,286 units in a private placement and received gross proceeds of approximately \$3,000,000. We issued the units to existing stockholders and other existing investors. Each unit consisted of a junior secured note and one share of our common stock. We issued 10,714,286 shares of common stock and junior secured notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$3,000,000. The notes mature 10 years from the date of issuance and accrue interest at the rate of 3.5% per annum. The notes are secured by a security interest in all of our assets. The notes are not convertible into shares of our common stock or any other securities. All outstanding principal and interest on the notes will be due in a single payment upon maturity.

6. In April 2011, we issued a 10% subordinated secured convertible promissory note in the principal amount of \$2,000,000 to Brainlab. The note matures in April 2016, unless earlier converted, and it accrues interest at the rate of 10% per year. All outstanding principal and interest on the note will be due in a single payment upon maturity. In the event we close an equity financing in which we issue shares of our preferred stock and receive at least \$10,000,000 in net proceeds, the note will automatically convert into the shares of preferred stock that are issued in the financing, based on the lower of the price paid by investors in the financing or \$0.60 per share, if the number of shares to be issued upon conversion represents at least 10% of our outstanding shares of stock on a fully diluted basis. If the number of shares that would be issued upon conversion represents less than 10% of our outstanding shares of stock on a fully diluted basis, the note will convert into the shares of preferred stock that are issued in the financing, based on the lower of the price paid by investors in the financing or \$0.60 per share, only upon Brainlab's election to convert.

7. In June through September 2011, we issued unsecured convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$1,310,000 to six non-employee directors. The note holders also received warrants to purchase shares of common stock. The notes mature two years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at the rate of 15% per year. The warrants were immediately exercisable, have a term of five years, and have an exercise price of \$0.01 per share. When issued, the notes provided for conversion into shares of our common stock (i) upon consummation of an initial public offering, of shares of our common stock, based on a conversion price equal to 60% of the public offering price, or (ii) upon consummation of a reverse merger of our company into a publicly held shell company, based on a conversion price equal to 60% of the fair market value of our common stock at the time of the merger. The notes were subsequently amended to provide that the principal and all accrued interest under the notes will automatically convert into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share.

8. In October 2011, we began a private placement of our securities to accredited investors in which we are offering units, with each unit consisting of a 10% secured convertible note in the principal amount of \$100,000 and a warrant to purchase 50,000 shares of our common stock. The notes mature three years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at 10% per year. The notes are secured by a security interest in all our assets. The

---

## [Table of Contents](#)

notes, including the principal and all accrued interest, convert automatically into shares of our common stock upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share. Likewise, a note holder may elect at any time to convert the note into shares of our common stock, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share. The warrants are immediately exercisable, have a term of five years, and have an exercise price of \$0.75 per share. As of January 31, 2012, we had received gross proceeds of \$2.7 million in connection with this financing, or the unit offering, from 26 accredited investors. The placement agent for the unit offering will receive a cash fee equal to 10% of the gross proceeds, as well as a warrant to purchase that number of shares of our common stock equal to 8% of the number of shares of our common stock issuable upon conversion of the notes and exercise of the warrants sold in the offering, at an exercise price of \$0.60 per share.

We claimed exemption from registration under the Securities Act for the sales and issuances of securities in the transactions described in paragraphs (3) through (8) by virtue of Section 4(2) of the Securities Act and/or Rule 506 of Regulation D. Such sales and issuances did not involve any public offering, were made without general solicitation or advertising and each purchaser was a sophisticated investor with access to all relevant information necessary to evaluate the investment and represented to us that the shares were being acquired for investment.

### **Item 11. *Description of Registrant's Securities to be Registered***

#### **Common Stock**

As of December 31, 2011, we had 70,000,000 authorized shares of common stock, \$0.01 par value per share. Under our certificate of incorporation that will become effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, we will have 125,000,000 authorized shares of common stock, \$0.01 par value per share.

#### ***Voting Rights***

Each holder of our common stock is entitled to one vote for each share on all matters submitted to a vote of the stockholders, including the election of directors. Under our certificate of incorporation and bylaws, our stockholders will not have cumulative voting rights. Because of this, the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock entitled to vote in any election of directors can elect all of the directors standing for election, if they should so choose.

#### ***Dividends***

Subject to preferences that may be applicable to any then outstanding preferred stock, holders of common stock are entitled to receive ratably those dividends, if any, as may be declared from time to time by the Board of Directors out of legally available funds.

#### ***Liquidation***

In the event of our liquidation, dissolution or winding up, holders of common stock will be entitled to share ratably in the net assets legally available for distribution to stockholders after the payment of all of our debts and other liabilities and the satisfaction of any liquidation preference granted to the holders of any outstanding shares of preferred stock.

#### ***Rights and Preferences***

Holders of common stock have no preemptive, conversion or subscription rights, and there are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to the common stock. The rights, preferences and privileges of the holders of common stock are subject to, and may be adversely affected by, the rights of the holders of shares of any series of preferred stock that we may designate in the future.

#### ***Fully Paid and Nonassessable***

All of our outstanding shares of common stock are fully paid and nonassessable.



---

## [Table of Contents](#)

### **Preferred Stock**

Under our certificate of incorporation that will become effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, we will have 25,000,000 authorized shares of preferred stock, \$0.01 par value per share. The Board of Directors will have the authority, without further action by the stockholders, to issue up to that number of shares of preferred stock in one or more series, to establish from time to time the number of shares to be included in each such series, to fix the rights, preferences and privileges of the shares of each wholly unissued series and any qualifications, limitations or restrictions thereon, and to increase or decrease the number of shares of any such series, but not below the number of shares of such series then outstanding. The Board of Directors may authorize the issuance of preferred stock with voting or conversion rights that could adversely affect the voting power or other rights of the holders of the common stock. The issuance of preferred stock, while providing flexibility in connection with possible acquisitions and other corporate purposes, could, among other things, have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of MRI Interventions and may adversely affect the market price of the common stock and the voting and other rights of the holders of common stock. Upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, no shares of preferred stock will be issued or outstanding.

### **Registration Rights**

#### ***Rights Agreement***

In 1998 shortly following our formation, some of our initial investors entered into an investor rights agreement with us, which, among other things, provided demand and piggyback registration rights. We amended the investor rights agreement from time to time thereafter to extend the registration rights under the investor rights agreement to new investors. The investor rights agreement was most recently amended in 2006 in connection with a preferred stock offering, and it remains in place as the Rights Agreement.

#### ***Demand and Form S-3 Registration Rights***

Pursuant to the Rights Agreement, at any time beginning six months after the consummation of the initial public offering of shares of our common stock, the holders of approximately 11,800,000 shares of our common stock, or registrable shares, will have the right to require us to register the registrable shares under the Securities Act under specified circumstances. We will not be required to effect a demand registration for 120 days following the effectiveness of a registration statement relating to an underwritten public offering of our securities. Under specified circumstances, we also have the right to defer filing of a requested registration statement for a period of not more than 120 days, which right may not be exercised more than twice during any period of 12 consecutive months. These registration rights are subject to additional conditions and limitations, including the right of the underwriters to limit the number of shares included in any such registration under certain circumstances.

If we are eligible to file a registration statement on Form S-3, each holder of registrable shares of our common stock has the right to demand that we file additional registration statements, including a shelf registration statement, for such holders on Form S-3. We will not be required to effect more than four demand registrations in total, of which no more than two may be required to be effected by us at any time after the second anniversary of this offering and then only on Form S-3.

#### ***Piggyback Registration Rights***

Pursuant to the Rights Agreement, at any time beginning six months after the consummation of the initial public offering of shares of our common stock, whenever we propose to file a registration statement under the Securities Act, other than with respect to a registration related to employee benefit plans, debt securities, or corporate reorganizations, the holders of registrable shares are entitled to notice of the registration and have the right to include their registrable shares in such a registration. As of December 31, 2011, the holders of approximately 11,800,000 shares of our common stock and common stock issuable upon conversion of our preferred stock would have been entitled to notice of the registration and would have been entitled to include their shares of common stock in the registration statement. The underwriters of any underwritten offering will have the right to limit the number of shares having registration rights to be included in the registration statement.

---

## **Table of Contents**

### *Rule 144 Transfers*

Despite the demand and piggyback registration rights described above, we will not be obligated to register any holder's registrable shares pursuant to the Rights Agreement to the extent such holder can sell all of such holder's registrable shares pursuant to Rule 144 promulgated under the Securities Act in a single transaction without registration or any other restrictions.

### *Additional Piggyback Registration Rights*

Whenever we propose to file a registration statement under the Securities Act in connection with the secondary offering of shares of our common stock by any of our stockholders, the holders of the notes and warrants issued in the unit offering, or any shares of common stock issued upon conversion of the notes or exercise of the warrants, will be entitled to notice of the registration and will have the right to include their shares of common stock issued or issuable upon conversion of the notes or exercise of the warrants in the registration. The underwriters of any underwritten offering will have the right to limit the number of shares having registration rights to be included in the registration statement.

### *Expenses of Registration*

We are required to pay all expenses relating to any demand or piggyback registration, other than underwriting discounts and commissions.

## **Delaware Anti-Takeover Law and Certain Provisions of our Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaws**

### *Delaware Law*

We are governed by Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law. In general, Section 203 prohibits a public Delaware corporation from engaging in a "business combination" with an "interested stockholder" for a period of three years after the date of the transaction in which the person became an interested stockholder, unless the business combination is approved in a prescribed manner. A "business combination" includes mergers, asset sales or other transactions resulting in a financial benefit to the stockholder. An "interested stockholder" is a person who, together with affiliates and associates, owns, or within three years, did own, 15% or more of the corporation's outstanding voting stock. These provisions may have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in our control.

### *Certificate of Incorporation and Bylaw Provisions*

Our certificate of incorporation that will become effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement:

- permits our Board of Directors to issue shares of preferred stock, with any rights, preferences and privileges as they may designate, including the right to approve an acquisition or other change in our control;
- provides that the authorized number of directors may be changed only by resolution of the Board of Directors;
- provides that all vacancies, including newly created directorships, may, except as otherwise required by law, be filled by the affirmative vote of a majority of directors then in office, even if less than a quorum;
- requires that any action to be taken by our stockholders must be effected at a duly called annual or special meeting of stockholders and not be taken by written consent;

---

## Table of Contents

- provides that stockholders seeking to present proposals before a meeting of stockholders or to nominate candidates for election as directors at a meeting of stockholders must provide notice in writing in a timely manner, and also specify requirements as to the form and content of a stockholder's notice;
- does not provide for cumulative voting rights (therefore allowing the holders of a majority of the shares of common stock entitled to vote in any election of directors to elect all of the directors standing for election, if they should so choose);
- provides that special meetings of our stockholders may be called only by the chairman of the Board of Directors, our Chief Executive Officer or by the Board of Directors pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the total number of authorized directors; and
- provides that stockholders will be permitted to amend our amended and restated bylaws only upon receiving at least 66 2/3% of the votes entitled to be cast by holders of all outstanding shares then entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class.

These and other provisions contained in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws could delay or discourage some types of transactions involving an actual or potential change in our control or change in our management, including transactions in which stockholders might otherwise receive a premium for their shares over then current prices, and may limit the ability of stockholders to remove current management or approve transactions that stockholders may deem to be in their best interests and, therefore, could adversely affect the price of our common stock.

### **Item 12. *Indemnification of Directors and Officers***

Our certificate of incorporation, which will become effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, contains provisions permitted under Delaware law relating to the liability of directors. These provisions eliminate a director's personal liability for monetary damages resulting from a breach of fiduciary duty, except in circumstances involving wrongful acts, such as any:

- breach of the director's duty of loyalty to us or our stockholders;
- act or omission not in good faith or that involves intentional misconduct or a knowing violation of the law;
- act related to unlawful stock repurchases, redemptions or other distribution or payments of dividends; or
- transaction from which the director derived an improper personal benefit.

These provisions do not limit or eliminate our rights or any stockholder's rights to seek non-monetary relief, such as an injunction or rescission, in the event of a breach of director's fiduciary duty. These provisions will not alter a director's liability under federal securities laws.

As permitted by Section 145 of the Delaware General Corporation Law, our bylaws, which will become effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement, require us to indemnify our directors and executive officers to the fullest extent not prohibited by the Delaware law. We may limit the extent of such indemnification by individual contracts with our directors and executive officers. Further, we may decline to indemnify any director or executive officer in connection with any proceeding initiated by such person or any proceeding by such person against us or our directors, officers, employees or other agents, unless such indemnification is expressly required to be made by law or the proceeding was authorized by our Board of Directors.

We have entered into indemnity agreements with each of our current directors and certain of our executive officers to give such directors and officers additional contractual assurances regarding the scope of the indemnification set forth in our certificate of incorporation and bylaws and to provide additional procedural protections. At present, there is no pending litigation or proceeding involving any of our directors, officers or employees for which indemnification is sought, nor are we aware of any threatened litigation that may result in claims for indemnification.

## Table of Contents

We have the power to indemnify our other officers, employees and other agents, as permitted by Delaware law, but we are not required to do so.

We maintain a directors' and officers' insurance and company reimbursement policy. The policy insures directors and officers against unindemnified losses arising from certain wrongful acts in their capacities as directors and officers and reimburses us for those losses against which we have lawfully indemnified the directors and officers. The policy contains various exclusions and limitations.

Reference is made to the following documents filed as exhibits to this registration statement regarding relevant indemnification provisions described above and elsewhere herein:

<u>Exhibit Document</u>	<u>Number</u>
Form of Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation	3.3
Form of Amended and Restated Bylaws	3.4
Third Amended and Restated Investor Rights' Agreement dated September 20, 2006	3.5
Form of Indemnification Agreement	10.8

### **Item 13. *Financial Statements and Supplementary Data***

Our financial statements appear on pages F-1 through F-61 of this registration statement.

### **Item 14. *Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure***

We have not had a change in our independent registered public accounting firm during its last two fiscal years or through the date of this filing. We have not had any disagreements with our current public accounting firm during the last two fiscal years or through the date of this filing on any matter of accounting principles or practices, financial statement disclosure, or auditing scope or procedure, which disagreement, if not resolved to the satisfaction of the public accounting firm, would have caused it to make reference to the subject matter of the disagreement in connection with its report on the registrant's financial statements.

### **Item 15. *Financial Statements and Exhibits***

#### (a) Financial Statements

Our financial statements appear on pages F-1 through F-61 of this registration statement.

#### (b) Exhibits

<u>Number</u>	<u>Description</u>
3.1**	Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation, as amended
3.2**	By-laws, as amended
3.3*	Form of Amended and Restated Certificate of Incorporation of MRI Interventions, Inc. to be effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement
3.4	Form of Amended and Restated Bylaws of MRI Interventions, Inc. to become effective upon the effectiveness of this registration statement
3.5**	Third Amended and Restated Investor Rights' Agreement dated September 20, 2006
3.6**	Certificate of Designation, Preferences and Rights of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock, as amended
3.7**	Form of Subscription Agreement for 10% Secured Convertible Promissory Note Due 2014

---

## Table of Contents

4.1	Reference is made to Exhibits 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4, 3.5, 3.6 and 3.7
4.2	Specimen of Common Stock Certificate
4.3**	Form of 10% Senior Unsecured Convertible Note Due 2012
4.4**	Form of Junior Secured Promissory Note Due 2020, as amended by that certain Omnibus Amendment dated as of April 5, 2011, as further amended by that certain Second Omnibus Amendment dated as of October 14, 2011
4.5**	10% Subordinated Secured Convertible Note Due 2016 issued to Brainlab AG, as amended
4.6**	Form of Unsecured Convertible Promissory Note Due 2013, as amended
4.7**	Form of 10% Secured Convertible Promissory Note Due 2014
4.8**	Form of Amendment to 10% Senior Unsecured Convertible Note Due 2012
10.1**	1998 Stock Option Plan
10.2**	2007 Stock Incentive Plan
10.3**	Amended and Restated Key Personnel Incentive Program
10.4**	2010 Incentive Compensation Plan
10.5**	2010 Non-Qualified Stock Option Plan
10.6**	Junior Security Agreement by and between MRI Interventions, Inc. and Landmark Community Bank, in its capacity as collateral agent, dated as of November 5, 2010, as amended by that certain First Amendment dated April 5, 2011, and as further amended by that certain Second Amendment dated October 14, 2011
10.7**	Security Agreement by and between MRI Interventions, Inc. and Landmark Community Bank, in its capacity as collateral agent, dated as of October 14, 2011
10.8**	Form of Indemnification Agreement
10.9†**	License Agreement by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and The Johns Hopkins University entered into on or around June 20, 1998, as amended by that certain Amendment to License Agreement dated as of January 15, 2000, and as further amended by that certain Addendum to License Agreement entered into on or around December 7, 2004
10.10†**	License Agreement by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and The Johns Hopkins University entered into on or around December 7, 2006
10.11†**	Technology License Agreement dated as of December 30, 2005 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Boston Scientific Neuromodulation Corporation (formerly known as Advanced Bionics Corporation), as amended by that certain Omnibus Amendment dated June 30, 2007, as further amended by that certain Omnibus Amendment #2 dated March 19, 2008
10.12†**	System and Lead Development and Transfer Agreement dated as of December 30, 2005 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Boston Scientific Neuromodulation Corporation (formerly known as Advanced Bionics Corporation), as amended by that certain Amendment No. 1 dated May 31, 2006, as further amended by that certain Omnibus Amendment dated June 30, 2007, as further amended by that certain Omnibus Amendment #2 dated March 19, 2008

---

## Table of Contents

- 10.13†\*\* Technology License Agreement dated as of March 19, 2008 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Cardiac Pacemakers, Inc.
- 10.14†\*\* Development Agreement dated as of March 19, 2008 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Cardiac Pacemakers, Inc.
- 10.15†\*\* Cooperation and Development Agreement, dated as of May 4, 2009, by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Siemens Aktiengesellschaft, Healthcare Sector
- 10.16\* Consulting Agreement with Dr. Paul Bottomley
- 10.17†\*\* Co-Development and Distribution Agreement dated as of April 5, 2011 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Brainlab AG, as amended by that certain First Amendment dated as of July 18, 2011
- 10.18†\*\* Master Security Agreement dated April 5, 2011 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Brainlab AG
- 10.19†\*\* Patent License Agreement – Nonexclusive entered into on or around April 27, 2009 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and National Institutes of Health
- 10.20†\*\* Master Services and Licensing Agreement dated as of July 20, 2007 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Cedara Software Corp., as amended by that certain First Amendment dated January 18, 2011
- 10.21†\*\* Exclusive License Agreement entered into on or around June 30, 2008 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and The Johns Hopkins University
- 10.22†\*\* Exclusive License Agreement entered into on or around June 30, 2008 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and The Johns Hopkins University
- 10.23†\*\* Exclusive License Agreement entered into on or around June 30, 2008 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and The Johns Hopkins University
- 10.24\*\* Loan Agreement dated as of October 16, 2009 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Boston Scientific Corporation
- 10.25†\*\* Patent Security Agreement dated as of October 16, 2009 by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Boston Scientific Corporation
- 10.26†\*\* Research Agreement by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and The University of Utah entered into on or around July 2, 2007, as amended by that certain First Amendment to the Research Agreement entered into on or around January 8, 2008, as further amended by that certain Second Amendment to the Research Agreement dated April 24, 2009, as further amended by that certain Third Amendment to the Research Agreement dated May 1, 2009, as further amended by that certain Fourth Amendment to the Research Agreement entered into on or around February 25, 2010, as further amended by that certain Fifth Amendment to the Research Agreement dated December 31, 2010, and as further amended by that certain Sixth Amendment to the Research Agreement dated November 28, 2011
- 10.27\*\* Lease Agreement, dated as of April 21, 2008, by and between Shaw Investment Company, LLC and Surgi-Vision, Inc., as amended by that certain Amendment to Lease dated January 20, 2011
- 10.28\*\* Separation Agreement, dated as of April 30, 2010, by and between John Thomas and SurgiVision, Inc.

---

## Table of Contents

10.29**	SurgiVision, Inc. Cardiac EP Business Participation Plan
10.30**	Cardiac EP Business Participation Plan Award Agreement, dated June 3, 2010, by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Nassir F. Marrouche
10.31**	Amended and Restated Key Personnel Incentive Award Agreement, dated June 2, 2010, by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Paul A. Bottomley
10.32**	Key Personnel Incentive Award Agreement, dated June 2, 2010, by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Paul A. Bottomley
10.33**	Amended and Restated Key Personnel Incentive Award Agreement, dated June 2, 2010, by and between SurgiVision, Inc. and Parag V. Karmarkar
10.34	MRI Interventions, Inc. 2012 Incentive Compensation Plan
10.35	MRI Interventions, Inc. 2012 Incentive Compensation Plan Form of Incentive Stock Option Agreement
10.36	MRI Interventions, Inc. 2012 Incentive Compensation Plan Form of Non-Qualified Stock Option Agreement
10.37*	Amendment No. 1 to Loan Agreement Secured Convertible Promissory Notes and Patent Security Agreement effective February 2, 2012, between MRI Interventions, Inc. and Boston Scientific Corporation
10.38*	Omnibus Amendment No. 3 to Technology License Agreement and System and Lead Development and Transfer Agreement effective February 2, 2012, between MRI Interventions, Inc. and Boston Scientific Neuromodulation Corporation

\* To be filed by amendment.

\*\* Previously filed.

† Confidential treatment requested under Rule 24b-2 under the Exchange Act. The confidential portions of this exhibit have been omitted and are marked accordingly. The confidential portions have been filed separately with the Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to the confidential treatment request.

---

## Table of Contents

### **MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

#### Financial Statements

#### Index to Financial Statements

	<u>Page</u>
<b>Audited Financial Statements</b> <i>(as of December 31, 2010 and 2009 and for the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009, and 2008)</i>	
<a href="#">Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</a>	F-2
<a href="#">Balance Sheets</a>	F-3
<a href="#">Statements of Operations</a>	F-4
<a href="#">Statements of Stockholders' Equity (Deficit)</a>	F-5
<a href="#">Statements of Cash Flows</a>	F-6
<a href="#">Notes to Financial Statements</a>	F-8
<b>Unaudited Financial Statements</b> <i>(as of September 30, 2011 and December 31, 2010 and for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 and 2010)</i>	
<a href="#">Balance Sheets</a>	F-39
<a href="#">Statements of Operations</a>	F-40
<a href="#">Statements of Stockholders' Deficit</a>	F-41
<a href="#">Statements of Cash Flows</a>	F-42
<a href="#">Notes to Financial Statements</a>	F-44



---

[Table of Contents](#)

**Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

To the Board of Directors and Stockholders of  
MRI Interventions, Inc.

We have audited the accompanying balance sheets of MRI Interventions, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the "Company"), as of December 31, 2010 and 2009, and the related statements of operations, stockholders' equity (deficit) and cash flows for the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States of America). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. Our audits included consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purposes of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. An audit also includes assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the accompanying financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of MRI Interventions, Inc. as of December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the results of its operations and its cash flows for the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008 in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 3 to the financial statements, the Company incurred net losses during the three years ended December 31, 2010 of approximately \$22,043,000 and had an accumulated stockholders' deficit at December 31, 2010 of approximately \$51,477,000 and will require additional financing to fund the continued development of products subject to its technologies. The availability of such financing cannot be assured. These conditions raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans with regard to these matters are described in Note 3. The financial statements do not include any adjustments with respect to the possible future effects on the recoverability and classification of assets or the amounts and classification of liabilities that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

/s/ Cherry, Bekaert & Holland, L.L.P.  
Tampa, Florida

February 8, 2012

[Table of Contents](#)**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.****Balance Sheets**

	December 31,	
	2010	2009
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>Current Assets</b>		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 1,577,314	\$ 2,569,129
Accounts receivable	31,540	—
Inventory	1,610,442	569,350
Prepays and other current assets	16,540	55,027
Total current assets	3,235,836	3,193,506
<b>Property and equipment, net</b>	979,509	992,158
<b>Deferred costs</b>	263,495	366,503
<b>Licenses, net</b>	45,000	63,000
<b>Other assets</b>	39,001	58,521
Total assets	<u>\$ 4,562,841</u>	<u>\$ 4,673,688</u>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT</b>		
<b>Current liabilities</b>		
Accounts payable	\$ 3,495,283	\$ 473,484
Accrued compensation	124,792	539,865
Accrued interest	344,395	—
Other accrued liabilities	2,079,574	650,027
Income taxes payable	—	49,250
Derivative liability	—	1,227,500
Related party deferred revenue	2,600,000	2,600,000
Total current liabilities	8,644,044	5,540,126
<b>Related party deferred revenue</b>	3,996,374	6,596,374
<b>Related party accrued interest</b>	410,425	53,973
<b>Other accrued liabilities (Note 11)</b>	278,060	—
<b>Related party BSC convertible notes payable, net of unamortized discount (2010, \$653,236; 2009, \$1,129,000)</b>	2,846,764	2,371,000
<b>2010 unsecured convertible notes payable, net of unamortized discount of \$571,275</b>	3,499,725	—
<b>2010 junior secured notes payable, net of unamortized discount of \$2,775,300</b>	224,700	—
Total liabilities	<u>19,900,092</u>	<u>14,561,473</u>
<b>Commitments and contingencies (Notes 2, 5, 11 and 12)</b>	—	—
<b>Stockholders' deficit</b>		
Series A convertible preferred stock; \$.01 par value; 8,000,000 authorized and 7,965,000 shares issued and outstanding	7,965,000	7,965,000
Common stock, \$.01 par value; 70,000,000 shares authorized; 16,185,820 (2010) and 5,455,110 (2009) issued; 15,859,990 (2010) and 5,129,280 (2009) outstanding	161,858	54,551
Additional paid-in capital	29,692,324	25,794,862
Treasury stock, at cost, 325,830 common shares	(1,679,234)	(1,679,234)
Accumulated deficit	<u>(51,477,199)</u>	<u>(42,022,964)</u>
Total stockholders' deficit	<u>(15,337,251)</u>	<u>(9,887,785)</u>
Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit	<u>\$ 4,562,841</u>	<u>\$ 4,673,688</u>

See notes to financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.****Statements of Operations**

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2010	2009	2008
<b>Revenues:</b>			
Related party license revenue	\$ 2,600,000	\$ 2,600,000	\$ 1,950,000
Product revenues	69,450	—	—
Total revenues	<u>2,669,450</u>	<u>2,600,000</u>	<u>1,950,000</u>
<b>Costs and operating expenses:</b>			
Cost of product revenues	16,314	—	—
Research and development	5,681,031	6,067,617	4,258,492
Selling, general, and administrative (Note 12)	4,698,786	3,595,917	2,920,311
Costs of withdrawn IPO (Note 2)	1,788,609	—	—
Total costs and operating expenses	<u>12,184,740</u>	<u>9,663,534</u>	<u>7,178,803</u>
Operating loss	<u>(9,515,290)</u>	<u>(7,063,534)</u>	<u>(5,228,803)</u>
<b>Other income (expense):</b>			
Gain on change in fair value of derivative liability	1,227,500	—	—
Other income, net (Note 2)	413,623	—	—
Interest income	10,403	106,197	193,756
Interest expense	<u>(1,590,471)</u>	<u>(152,473)</u>	<u>(394,738)</u>
<b>Loss before taxes</b>	<u>(9,454,235)</u>	<u>(7,109,810)</u>	<u>(5,429,785)</u>
<b>Income tax expense</b>	<u>—</u>	<u>49,250</u>	<u>—</u>
<b>Net loss</b>	<u><u>\$ (9,454,235)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (7,159,060)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (5,429,785)</u></u>
<b>Net loss per share attributable to common stockholders:</b>			
Basic and diluted	<u><u>\$ (1.40)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (1.34)</u></u>	<u><u>\$ (1.04)</u></u>
<b>Weighted average shares outstanding:</b>			
Basic	<u><u>6,773,714</u></u>	<u><u>5,336,633</u></u>	<u><u>5,245,081</u></u>

See notes to financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Statements of Stockholders' Equity (Deficit)**  
**Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009, and 2008**

	Convertible Preferred Stock Series A		Common Stock		Paid in Capital	Treasury Stock	Due from Stockholders	Accumulated Deficit	Total
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount	Amount				
Balances, January 1, 2008	7,965,000	\$7,965,000	5,033,817	\$ 50,338	\$24,039,925	\$ —	\$ (551,961)	\$ (29,434,119)	\$ 2,069,183
Employee share-based compensation	—	—	—	—	117,900	—	—	—	117,900
Accrued interest on note receivable	—	—	—	—	—	—	(21,659)	—	(21,659)
Conversion of convertible note payable	—	—	417,960	4,180	1,495,820	—	—	—	1,500,000
Net loss for the year	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(5,429,785)	(5,429,785)
Balances, December 31, 2008	7,965,000	7,965,000	5,451,777	54,518	25,653,645	—	(573,620)	(34,863,904)	(1,764,361)
Employee share-based compensation	—	—	—	—	130,587	—	—	—	130,587
Accrued interest on note receivable	—	—	—	—	—	—	(57,779)	—	(57,779)
Purchase of treasury stock for cash	—	—	(129,962)	—	—	(547,835)	—	—	(547,835)
Issuance of note receivable, stockholder	—	—	—	—	—	—	(500,000)	—	(500,000)
Options exercised for cash	—	—	3,333	33	10,630	—	—	—	10,663
Purchases of treasury stock through cancellation of notes and accrued interest	—	—	(195,868)	—	—	(1,131,399)	1,131,399	—	—
Net loss for the year	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(7,159,060)	(7,159,060)
Balances, December 31, 2009	7,965,000	7,965,000	5,129,280	54,551	25,794,862	(1,679,234)	—	(42,022,964)	(9,887,785)
Employee share-based compensation	—	—	—	—	245,462	—	—	—	245,462
Fair value of conversion feature of senior unsecured convertible notes payable	—	—	—	—	834,555	—	—	—	834,555
Warrants issued in connection with senior unsecured convertible notes payable	—	—	—	—	120,218	—	—	—	120,218
Elimination of fractional shares resulting from the reverse stock split	—	—	(103)	(1)	(514)	—	—	—	(515)
Issuance of common stock in payment of director fees	—	—	16,527	165	29,584	—	—	—	29,749
Issuance of common stock in connection with the sale of unit securities	—	—	10,714,286	107,143	2,668,157	—	—	—	2,775,300
Net loss for the year	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	(9,454,235)	(9,454,235)
Balances, December 31, 2010	<u>7,965,000</u>	<u>\$7,965,000</u>	<u>15,859,990</u>	<u>\$161,858</u>	<u>\$29,692,324</u>	<u>\$(1,679,234)</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ (51,477,199)</u>	<u>\$(15,337,251)</u>

See notes to financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Statements of Cash Flows**

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2010	2009	2008
<b>Cash flows from operating activities</b>			
Net loss	\$(9,454,235)	\$(7,159,060)	\$ (5,429,785)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash flows from operating activities:			
Depreciation and license amortization	266,223	168,710	84,484
Expenses paid through the issuance of common stock	29,749	—	—
Share-based compensation	245,462	130,587	117,900
Gain on change in fair value of derivative liability	(1,227,500)	—	—
Amortization of debt issuance costs and original issue discount	889,624	98,500	394,738
Write-off of costs of withdrawn IPO	1,788,609	—	—
Increase (decrease) in cash resulting from changes in:			
Accounts receivable	(31,540)	—	—
Inventory	(1,041,092)	(569,350)	—
Prepays and other current assets	38,487	(25,270)	(29,757)
Deposits	19,520	4,775	(24,226)
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	3,543,310	418,970	603,975
Accrued interest on notes receivable, stockholder	—	(57,779)	(21,659)
Related party deferred revenue	(2,600,000)	(2,488,725)	11,560,099
<b>Net cash flows from operating activities</b>	<u>(7,533,383)</u>	<u>(9,478,642)</u>	<u>7,255,769</u>
<b>Cash flows from investing activities:</b>			
Purchases of property and equipment	(235,574)	(282,362)	(856,782)
Purchase of licenses	—	—	(90,000)
<b>Net cash flows from investing activities</b>	<u>(235,574)</u>	<u>(282,362)</u>	<u>(946,782)</u>
<b>Cash flows from financing activities:</b>			
Purchase of treasury stock for cash	—	(547,835)	—
Issuance of note receivable, stockholder	—	(500,000)	—
Deferred offering costs paid	—	(53,496)	—
Proceeds from related party convertible notes	—	3,500,000	—
Proceeds from 2010 unsecured convertible notes, net of issuance costs	3,777,142	—	—
Proceeds from sale of unit securities	3,000,000	—	—
Proceeds from option exercises	—	10,663	—
<b>Net cash flows from financing activities</b>	<u>6,777,142</u>	<u>2,409,332</u>	<u>—</u>
<b>Net change in cash and cash equivalents</b>	(991,815)	(7,351,672)	6,308,987
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of year</b>	2,569,129	9,920,801	3,611,814
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, end of year</b>	<u>\$ 1,577,314</u>	<u>\$ 2,569,129</u>	<u>\$ 9,920,801</u>
<b>SUPPLEMENTAL CASH FLOW INFORMATION</b>			
<b>Cash paid for:</b>			
Income taxes	\$ 49,250	\$ —	\$ —
Interest	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —

See notes to financial statements.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Statements of Cash Flows (continued)**

**NON-CASH TRANSACTIONS**

- \* In 2008, convertible notes payable of \$1,500,000 were converted into 417,960 shares of common stock.
- \* In December 2009, related party notes receivable and accrued interest in the amount of \$1,131,399 were cancelled in exchange for 195,868 shares of treasury stock.
- \* At December 31, 2009, deferred offering costs in the amount of \$313,007 were included in accrued expenses.
- \* In March 2010, warrants (recorded as deferred financing costs and additional paid-in capital) were issued with a fair value of \$120,218 to the placement agent in connection with the sale of the senior unsecured convertible notes.

See notes to financial statements.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**1. Formation and Nature of Business**

MRI Interventions, Inc. (the “Company”), formerly SurgiVision, Inc., was formed on March 12, 1998. The Company registered its name change with the state of Delaware in May 2011 where the Company is incorporated.

The Company operates in the medical device industry and is focused on the development and commercialization of technology that enables physicians to see inside the brain and heart using direct, intra-procedural magnetic resonance imaging, or MRI guidance, while performing minimally invasive surgical procedures. Prior to 2008, the Company was a development stage entity.

The Company’s ClearPoint system, an integrated system comprised of reusable equipment, software, and disposable products, is designed to allow minimally invasive procedures in the brain to be performed in an MRI suite. In June 2010, the Company received 510(k) clearance from the Food and Drug Administration, or the FDA, to market the ClearPoint system in the United States for general neurological interventional procedures. The Company’s ClearTrace system is a product candidate that is designed to allow catheter-based minimally invasive procedures in the heart to be performed in an MRI suite. The Company has also licensed certain technologies (see Note 5) to affiliates of Boston Scientific Corporation (“BSC”) under the Company’s SafeLead Development Program, the purpose of which is to incorporate the Company’s MRI-safety technologies into BSC’s implantable leads for cardiac and neurological applications.

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies**

*Basis of Presentation and Use of Estimates*

The preparation of financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from those estimates.

The Company effectuated a 1-for-4 reverse stock split in July 2010. Accordingly, all share and per share amounts for all periods presented in these financial statements and notes thereto have been adjusted retroactively (see Note 9).

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

*Concentration of Credit Risk*

The Company places its cash and cash equivalents on deposit with financial institutions in the United States. On November 9, 2010, the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (“FDIC”) issued a Final Rule implementing section 343 of the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act that provides for unlimited insurance coverage of noninterest-bearing transaction accounts. Beginning December 31, 2010, through December 31, 2012, all noninterest-bearing transaction accounts are fully insured, regardless of the balance of the account, at all FDIC-insured institutions. The unlimited insurance coverage is available to all depositors, including consumers, businesses, and government entities. This unlimited coverage is separate from, and in addition to, the \$250,000 insurance coverage provided to a depositor’s other deposit accounts held at an FDIC-insured institution.

The Company’s bank deposits exceeded FDIC insured levels by \$85,349 at December 31, 2010, based on specified coverage.

Receivables at December 31, 2010 and all product revenues for 2010 relate to sales to two customers. These two customers are hospitals located in the United States. The Company may perform credit evaluations of its customers’ financial condition and, generally, requires no collateral from its customers. The Company will provide an allowance for doubtful accounts when collections become doubtful but has not experienced any credit losses to date.

*Cash and Cash Equivalents*

Cash and cash equivalents include all highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less.

*Fair Value Measurements*

The Company measures certain financial assets and liabilities at fair value on a recurring basis, including its derivative liability. Generally accepted accounting principles for fair value measurement provide a fair value hierarchy that prioritizes the inputs to valuation techniques used to measure fair value. The hierarchy gives the highest priority to unadjusted quoted prices in active markets for identical assets and liabilities (“Level 1”) and the lowest priority to unobservable inputs (“Level 3”).

The Company measures the fair value of its derivative liability (see Note 6) on a recurring basis using Level 3 inputs.



[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

The following table summarizes liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis:

	Fair Value Measurements Using			Total
	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	
Liabilities:				
Derivative liability, Note 6 (December 31, 2009)	\$ —	\$ —	\$1,227,500	\$1,227,500
Derivative liability, Note 6 (December 31, 2010)	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —

The following table summarizes changes in Level 3 Liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis:

	Level 3 Liabilities
Balance as of December 31, 2008	\$ —
Issuance of derivative liability, Note 6	1,227,500
Balance as of December 31, 2009	1,227,500
Gain on change in fair value	1,227,500
Balance as of December 31, 2010	\$ —

Carrying amounts of the Company's cash and cash equivalents, accounts receivable and accounts payable and accrued liabilities approximate fair value due to their short maturities.

The fair value of the Company's notes payable differ from their carrying value primarily as the result of certain unamortized debt discounts that have been recorded as it relates to those debt instruments as well as a less than market contract interest rate associated with the junior secured notes payable (see Notes 6, 7, and 8). The fair values of all outstanding notes payable other than the 2010 junior secured notes payable were determined to be equal to the face value of the notes payable as the contractual interest rate approximated the market interest rate. The contractual interest rate on the 2011 junior secured notes payable is 3.5% per year, and the Company determined the fair value of these notes by discounting the face value utilizing a 10% estimated market interest rate over the term of the notes. The carrying values and estimated fair values of notes payable are as follows at December 31, 2010:

	Carrying Value	Estimated Fair Value
Related party convertible notes payable	\$ 2,846,764	\$3,500,000
Senior unsecured convertible notes payable	3,499,725	4,071,000
Junior secured notes payable	224,700	1,561,000

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

*Inventory*

Inventory is carried at the lower of cost (first-in, first-out (“FIFO”) method) or net realizable value. All items included in inventory relate to the Company’s ClearPoint system. The Company periodically reviews its inventory for obsolete items and provides a reserve upon identification of potential obsolete items.

Inventory consists of the following as of December 31:

	<u>2010</u>	<u>2009</u>
Work in process	\$ 662,988	\$394,350
Software (Note 11)	664,300	175,000
Finished Goods	283,154	—
	<u>\$1,610,442</u>	<u>\$569,350</u>

*Property and Equipment*

Property and equipment are recorded at cost and are depreciated on a straight-line basis over their estimated useful lives, principally five to seven years. Leasehold improvements are depreciated on a straight line basis over the lesser of their estimated useful lives or the life of the related lease.

*Licenses*

Licenses are recorded at cost and are amortized using the straight-line method over their estimated useful lives. The carrying value of licenses at December 31, 2010 and 2009 was \$45,000 and \$63,000, respectively, net of accumulated amortization of \$45,000, and \$27,000 at those respective dates. Future amortization under licenses is expected to be approximately \$18,000 annually through June 2013. One of the licenses contains a requirement to pay the licensor an additional \$40,000 upon the issuance of a certain patent. The license arrangements also require certain minimum royalty payments to the licensor.

Future minimum royalty payments are as follows:

<u>Years Ending December 31,</u>	
2011	\$ 70,000
2012	70,000
2013	95,000
2014	95,000
2015	95,000
Thereafter	1,105,000
	<u>\$1,530,000</u>

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

Royalty payment amounts may be greater than the above amounts based on the negotiated royalty rates. If the Company sublicenses the intellectual property that is licensed from the licensor and the Company receives any royalty payment under or with respect to such sublicense, the Company is obligated to pay the licensor an agreed upon percentage of any such payment(s). Under the terms of these license agreements, the Company is required to reimburse the licensor for all costs associated with patent filing, prosecution and maintenance as well as expenses related to enforcing the related patent rights. The Company may terminate these license agreements for any reason, upon giving the licensor either 60 or 90 days' written notice, depending on the agreement. One of the licenses is cancelable by the licensor if, by the fourth anniversary of the effective date (June 30, 2012), there have been no commercial sales of a product subject to the license.

*Impairment of Long-Lived Assets*

The Company evaluates the recoverability of its long-lived assets (finite-lived intangible assets and property and equipment) whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount of such assets may not be fully recoverable. When this occurs, the expected undiscounted future cash flows are compared to the net book value of the related assets. If the net book value of the related assets exceeds the undiscounted expected future cash flows of the assets, the carrying amount would be reduced to the present value of the expected future cash flows and an impairment loss would be recognized. The Company has not recorded any impairment losses to date.

*Revenue Recognition*

The Company's revenues arise from: (1) the sale of ClearPoint system reusable components, including associated installation services; (2) sales of ClearPoint disposable products; and (3) license and development arrangements. The Company recognizes revenue, in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 605-10-S99, Revenue Recognition, when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the fee is fixed or determinable, collection of the fee is probable and delivery has occurred. For all sales, the Company requires either a signed purchase agreement or a binding purchase order as evidence of an arrangement.

(1) *Sale of ClearPoint system reusable components*—Revenues related to ClearPoint system sales are recognized upon installation of the system and the completion of training of at least one of the customer's physicians, which typically occurs concurrently with the ClearPoint system installation. There have been no ClearPoint system sales as of December 31, 2010. ClearPoint system reusable components include software. This software is incidental to the utility of the ClearPoint system as a whole, and as such, the provisions of ASC 985-605, Software Revenue Recognition, are not applicable.

(2) *Sales of ClearPoint disposable products*— Revenues from the sale of ClearPoint disposable products utilized in ClearPoint procedures, which occur after a ClearPoint installation is completed for a given customer, are recognized at the time risk of loss passes, which is generally at shipping point or the customer's location, based on the specific terms with that customer. All of the Company's 2010 product revenues are comprised of ClearPoint disposable products.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

(3) *License and development arrangements*—The Company analyzes revenue recognition on an agreement by agreement basis as discussed below.

- *Related Party Revenue Recognition under BSC Neuro Agreement (Note 5)*—The Company analyzed whether the components of the arrangement represent separate units of accounting as defined by Accounting Principles Generally Accepted in the United States (“GAAP”). Application of these standards requires subjective determinations and requires management to make judgments about the value of the individual elements and whether delivered elements are separable from the other aspects of the contractual relationship. The Company determined it does not have clear and objective evidence of fair value of the various elements of the agreement and, therefore, under GAAP regarding Multiple-Element Arrangements, the deliverables are being treated as one unit of accounting.

This agreement requires the achievement of specified milestones in the development of an MRI-safe implantable lead by December 31, 2012. If the milestones are not achieved by that date and this failure is not the result of BSC Neuro’s failure to reasonably cooperate with the Company in pursuing the milestones, the Company will be required to repay BSC Neuro certain amounts, including any development expenses and milestone payments previously made to the Company under this agreement and any patent prosecution costs incurred by BSC Neuro with respect to the intellectual property licensed under this agreement. The existence of this provision indicates the sales price is not fixed or determinable and all monies which have been or will be received prior to December 31, 2012 have and will be deferred until such time. If the repayment obligations are not triggered as of December 31, 2012, the related party deferred revenue related to this contract will be recognized over the estimated period of continuing involvement. If the repayment obligations are triggered as of December 31, 2012, the related party deferred revenue related to this contract will be repaid to BSC Neuro.

The agreement includes research and development service performance requirements. The Company has recorded deferred research and development services revenue along with the related costs (charged to expense) on a gross basis since the Company is obligated and bears all credit risk with respect to the cost of providing the services.

Future product royalty income related to the agreement will be recognized as the related products are sold and amounts are due to the Company.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

- *Related Party Revenue Recognition under BSC Cardiac Agreement (Note 5)*—The Company analyzed whether the components of the arrangement represent separate units of accounting as defined by GAAP. Application of these standards requires management to make subjective judgments about the value of the individual elements and whether delivered elements are separable from the other aspects of the contractual relationship. The Company determined it does not have clear and objective evidence of fair value of the various elements of the agreement and, therefore, under GAAP regarding Multiple-Element Arrangements, the deliverables are being treated as one unit of accounting.

The Company defers recognition of non-refundable upfront license fees if there are continuing performance obligations without which the technology, know-how, rights, products or services conveyed in conjunction with the non-refundable fees have no utility to the licensee that could be considered separate and independent of the Company's performance under other elements of the arrangement. Since the Company has continuing involvement through research and development services that is required because the Company's know-how and expertise related to the technology are proprietary to the Company, such upfront fees are deferred and recognized over the estimated period of continuing involvement on a straight line basis.

Amounts to be received related to substantive, performance-based milestones in research and development arrangements are recognized upon receipt in accordance with the Company's revenue recognition policy.

Future product royalty income related to the agreement will be recognized as the related products are sold and amounts are due to the Company.

*Research and Development Costs*

Costs related to research, design and development of products are charged to research and development expense as incurred. These costs include direct salary costs for research and development personnel, costs for materials used in research and development activities and costs for outside services.

*Costs of Withdrawn IPO*

During 2010 the Company withdrew its registration statement filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission for an initial public offering ("IPO") of shares of the Company's common stock. Costs which had been deferred during 2009 totaling \$366,503 and costs incurred during 2010 related to the IPO effort are recorded as costs of withdrawn IPO in the statement of operations for the year ended December 31, 2010.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

*Other Income (Expense)*

During 2010 the Company recorded other income related grants received under the Qualifying Therapeutic Discovery Project program administered under section 48D of the Internal Revenue Code. The other income recorded related to the grants was of \$415,615, which is net of expenses paid to a service firm that assisted the Company in completing the grant applications.

*Income Taxes*

Deferred income tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the estimated future tax consequences attributable to differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of existing assets and liabilities and their respective income tax bases. Such assets and liabilities are measured using enacted tax rates expected to apply to taxable income in the years in which those temporary differences are expected to be recovered or settled. The effect of a change in tax rates is recognized in the period that includes the enactment date.

Due to uncertainty surrounding realization of the deferred income tax assets in future periods, the Company has recorded a 100% valuation allowance against its net deferred tax assets. If it is determined in the future that it is more likely than not that any deferred income tax assets are realizable, the valuation allowance will be reduced.

Management has evaluated the effect of guidance provided by GAAP regarding accounting for uncertainty in income taxes. In that regard, management has evaluated all tax positions that could have a significant effect on the financial statements and determined the Company has no uncertain tax positions at December 31, 2010 or 2009. The Company's returns after 2006 remain open for examination.

*Net Loss Per Share*

The Company calculated net loss per share in accordance with ASC 260, Earnings per Share. Basic earnings per share ("EPS") is calculated by dividing the net income or loss attributable to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the period, without consideration for common stock equivalents. Diluted EPS is computed by dividing the net income or loss attributable to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the period plus the weighted average number of dilutive common stock equivalents outstanding for the period determined using the treasury stock method. For all periods presented, diluted net loss per share is the same as basic net loss per share. The following table sets forth potential shares of common stock that are not included in the calculation of diluted net loss per share because to do so would be anti-dilutive as of the end of each period presented:

---

[Table of Contents](#)

## MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.

## Notes to Financial Statements

December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008

## 2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)

	Years Ended December 31,		
	2010	2009	2008
Stock options	3,762,477	669,777	599,875
Warrants	435,986	410,542	828,501
Convertible preferred shares	1,991,250	1,994,250	1,991,250
Shares under convertible note agreements	997,678	444,247	—
	<u>7,187,391</u>	<u>3,518,816</u>	<u>3,419,626</u>

*Share-Based Compensation*

The Company accounts for compensation for all arrangements under which employees and others receive shares of stock or equity instruments (including options and warrants) in accordance with Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) ASC Topic 718 “Compensation – Stock Compensation”, or ASC Topic 718. Under ASC Topic 718, the fair value of each award is estimated and amortized as compensation expense over the requisite service period. The fair value of the Company’s share-based options and warrants is estimated on the grant date using the Black-Scholes valuation model. This valuation model requires the input of highly subjective assumptions, including the expected stock price volatility and estimated option term. To estimate the expected term, the Company utilizes the “simplified” method for “plain vanilla” options as discussed within the Securities and Exchange Commission’s Staff Accounting Bulletin 107, or SAB 107. The Company believes that all factors listed within SAB 107 as pre-requisites for utilizing the simplified method are true for the Company and for the Company’s share-based compensation arrangements. The Company intends to utilize the simplified method for the foreseeable future until more detailed information about exercise behavior becomes available.

The Company utilizes risk-free interest rates based on a zero-coupon U.S. treasury instrument, the term of which is consistent with the expected term of the stock options. The Company has not paid and does not anticipate paying cash dividends on its shares of common stock; therefore, the expected dividend yield is assumed to be zero.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

*Fair Value Determination of Privately-Held Equity Securities*

The fair values of the common stock as well as the common stock underlying options and warrants granted as compensation, or issued in connection with the settlement of liabilities, were estimated by management, with input from a third-party valuation specialist.

Determining the fair value of stock requires making complex and subjective judgments. The Company has used the income approach, the market approach, and the probability weighted expected return method to estimate the value of the enterprise for the dates on which securities are issued/granted and outstanding. The income approach was based on estimated future cash flows that utilized the Company's forecasts of revenue and costs. The assumptions underlying the revenue and cost estimates are consistent with the Company's business plan. The market approach was based on recent sales of the Company's common stock in privately negotiated transactions between stockholders or the anticipated initial public offering price of the Company's common stock. Once the Company began the process of preparing for its initial public offering of common stock, the Company began to utilize the probability weighted expected return method, which is based on identifying the most likely liquidity events for the Company, the probability of each occurring, and the equity values for each after applying different percentages to the likelihood of the different values assigned to each anticipated outcome of those events. Once the Company's initial public offering was withdrawn in the third quarter of 2010, the Company thereafter used the income and market approaches previously discussed. The assumptions used in each of the different valuation methods take into account certain discounts such as selecting the appropriate discount rate and control and lack of marketability discounts. The discount rates used in these valuations ranged from 22% to 35%. The discounts for lack of marketability ranged from 15% to 35% and the discount for lack of control ranged from 20% to 30%. If different discount rates or lack of marketability and control discounts had been used, the valuations would have been different. The enterprise value under each valuation method was allocated to preferred and common shares taking into account the enterprise value available to all stockholders and allocating that value among the various classes of stock based on the rights, privileges, and preferences of the respective classes in order to provide an estimate of the fair value of a share of the Company's common stock. There is inherent uncertainty in these estimates.

*Derivative Financial Instruments*

The Company accounts for derivative instruments in accordance with ASC Topic 815, which establishes accounting and reporting standards for derivative instruments and hedging activities, including certain derivative instruments embedded in other financial instruments or contracts and requires recording of all derivatives on the balance sheet at their fair values (Note 6). Changes in the fair values of derivatives are recorded each period as gains or losses in the statement of operations unless the derivatives qualify for hedge accounting. At December 31, 2010 and 2009, the Company did not have any derivative instruments that were designated as hedges.



**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

*New Accounting Pronouncements*

In October 2009, the Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) issued Accounting Standards Update No. 2009-13 (“ASU 2009-13”), which addresses the accounting for multiple-deliverable arrangements to enable vendors to account for products or services (deliverables) separately rather than as a combined unit. ASU 2009-13 is effective prospectively for revenue arrangements entered into or materially modified beginning in fiscal years on or after June 15, 2010. The adoption of this standard had no material impact on the Company’s financial statements.

In January 2010, the FASB released Accounting Standards Update No. 2010-06 (“ASU 2010-06”), Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures (Topic 820): Improving Disclosures about Fair Value Measurement. The update requires the Company to (a) disclose significant transfers in and out of Levels One and Two, in addition to transfers in and out of Level Three and (b) separately disclose purchases, sales, issuances, and settlements of our Level Three securities. Additionally, ASU 2010-06 clarifies the information we currently disclose regarding our valuation techniques, inputs used in those valuation models, and the level of detail at which fair value disclosures should be provided. ASU 2010-06 is effective for interim and annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2009, except for the disaggregation of the Level Three activity, which is effective for interim and annual periods beginning after December 15, 2010. The Company adopted ASU 2010-06 as of January 1, 2010 (with the exception of disaggregation of Level Three activity) with no material impact on its financial statements. See Note 2 for discussion of fair value.

In April 2010, the FASB issued Accounting Standards Update No. 2010-17 (“ASU 2010-17”) which provided guidance on defining a milestone and determining when it may be appropriate to apply the milestone method of revenue recognition for research or development transactions. ASU 2010-17 is effective prospectively for milestones achieved in fiscal years and interim periods within those years, beginning in fiscal years on or after June 15, 2010. The Company has adopted this standard and prospectively adjusted its revenue recognition policy to apply the milestone method of revenue recognition for research and development contracts.

In June 2011, the FASB issued new guidance regarding the presentation of comprehensive income. The new guidance requires the presentation of the total of comprehensive income, the components of net income and the components of other comprehensive income either in a single continuous statement of comprehensive income or in two separate but consecutive statements, eliminating the option to present other comprehensive income as part of the statement of stockholders’ equity. The new guidance also requires presentation of adjustments for items that are reclassified from other comprehensive income to net income in both net income and other comprehensive income. Public entities are required to apply this guidance for fiscal years and interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2011. Nonpublic entities should begin applying these requirements for fiscal years ending after December 15, 2012, and interim and annual periods thereafter. The Company does not believe the adoption of this guidance will have a material impact on its results of operations or financial position.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

In May 2011, the FASB issued additional guidance on fair value measurements. The updated guidance provides a consistent definition of fair value and aligns the fair value measurement and disclosure requirements between U.S. GAAP and International Financial Reporting Standards (“IFRS”), amends certain guidance primarily related to fair value measurements for financial instruments, and enhances disclosure requirements particularly for Level 3 fair value measurements. The guidance is effective prospectively for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2011 and interim periods within those years. Early adoption is permitted. We do not expect the adoption of this guidance will have a significant impact on the Company’s financial statements.

**3. Liquidity and Management’s Plans**

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming the Company will continue as a going concern. For the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008, the Company incurred net losses of \$9,454,235, \$7,159,060, and \$5,429,785, respectively, and the cumulative net loss since the Company’s inception through December 31, 2010 is \$51,477,199. In view of these matters, the ability of the Company to continue as a going concern is dependent upon the Company’s ability to generate additional financing sufficient to support its research and development activities, obtain future regulatory clearances or approvals, commercialize its developed products, and ultimately to generate revenue sufficient to cover all costs. Since inception, the Company has financed its activities principally from the sale of equity securities, borrowings, and license arrangements. The Company intends to finance its future development activities and its working capital needs largely from borrowings (Note 12) and from the sale of equity securities until funds provided by operations are sufficient to fund working capital requirements. There can be no assurance that the Company will be successful at achieving its financing goals on reasonable commercial terms, if at all, or if it will generate revenues sufficient to cover its costs.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**4. Property and Equipment**

Property and equipment consist of the following:

	December 31,	
	2010	2009
Equipment	\$ 906,485	\$ 884,591
Furniture and fixtures	106,053	112,984
Leasehold improvements	157,236	157,236
Computer equipment and software	103,150	100,687
Loaned systems	173,870	—
	1,446,794	1,255,498
Less accumulated depreciation and amortization	(467,285)	(263,340)
Total property and equipment, net	<u>\$ 979,509</u>	<u>\$ 992,158</u>

Depreciation and amortization expense for the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009, and 2008 was \$246,331, \$150,710, and \$71,928, respectively.

The Company may loan a ClearPoint system comprised of reusable equipment and software to a customer. Any such customer uses the loaned ClearPoint system to perform procedures using ClearPoint disposable products which are purchased from the Company. Accordingly, the \$173,870 of loaned systems at September 30, 2011 represents the historical cost of ClearPoint reusable equipment and software transferred from inventory to property and equipment. Depreciation on loaned ClearPoint systems is computed using the straight-line method based on an estimated useful life of five years. At December 31, 2010, no depreciation expense had been recorded on loaned systems as these systems had been shipped to customers, but were not yet installed.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**5. Related Party License Agreements**

License and development agreements have been entered into with affiliates of BSC. Because an affiliate of BSC is a stockholder and has a representative on the Company's board of directors, management has deemed all transactions with BSC and its affiliates to be of a related party nature.

*BSC Neuro Agreement*

On December 30, 2005, the Company entered into definitive license and development agreements (collectively, as amended, the "BSC Neuro Agreement") with Advanced Bionics Corporation, an affiliate of BSC. Advanced Bionics Corporation subsequently changed its name to Boston Scientific Neuromodulation Corporation ("BSC Neuro"). Under the BSC Neuro Agreement, the Company granted BSC Neuro an exclusive commercial license with respect to certain of the Company's owned and licensed intellectual property, in the neuromodulation field, to make, use, import, lease and sell neuro-related leads, neuro-related lead extensions, and neuro-related lead-type devices, such as implantable pulse generators. The Company has continuing research and development obligations pursuant to the BSC Neuro Agreement with respect to the development of MRI-compatible and MRI-safe implantable neuromodulation leads.

Under the BSC Neuro Agreement, in addition to prospective royalty payments on net sales of licensed products, the Company could receive up to \$1,600,000 in future milestone-based payments associated with successful development and regulatory approval of the leads (see Note 12 for modification of these terms). The Company did not receive any up-front license payments pursuant to this agreement. In addition, the Company could receive over \$500,000 in incentive payments for incremental development work BSC Neuro may request. This agreement requires specified milestones in the development of an MRI-safe implantable lead to be achieved by December 31, 2012. If the milestones are not achieved by that date and this failure is not the result of BSC Neuro's failure to reasonably cooperate with the Company in pursuing the milestones, the Company will be required to repay BSC Neuro certain amounts, including any development expenses and milestone payments previously made to the Company under this agreement and any patent prosecution costs incurred by BSC Neuro with respect to the intellectual property licensed under this agreement. As of December 31, 2010, the Company had received approximately \$750,000 of payments from BSC Neuro which would be subject to the repayment obligation described above. In addition, the Company would be responsible to reimburse BSC Neuro for out of pocket costs incurred by BSC Neuro in prosecuting patent applications and maintaining issued patents for the licensed technologies. As discussed in Note 2, Revenue Recognition, all amounts received have been recorded as deferred revenue.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**5. Related Party License Agreements (continued)**

*BSC Cardiac Agreement*

Effective March 19, 2008, the Company entered into definitive license and development agreements (collectively the “BSC Cardiac Agreement”) with Cardiac Pacemakers, Inc. (“BSC Cardiac”), an affiliate of Boston Scientific Corporation. Under the BSC Cardiac Agreement, the Company granted BSC Cardiac an exclusive commercial license with respect to certain of the Company’s owned and licensed intellectual property rights, in the field of implantable medical leads for cardiac applications, to make, have made, use, promote, market, import, distribute, lease, sell, offer for sale and commercialize products in the licensed field of use. The Company is required to continue to investigate the feasibility of its technology and, upon successful completion of feasibility studies, to work with BSC Cardiac to develop this technology for different types of MRI-compatible and MRI-safe implantable cardiac leads.

Pursuant to the BSC Cardiac Agreement, in addition to prospective royalty payments on net sales of licensed products, the Company received non-refundable licensing fees totaling \$13,000,000 in 2008, and the Company could receive up to \$20,000,000 in future milestone-based payments associated with the successful development and regulatory approval of the implantable cardiac leads, subject to certain patents being issued on patent applications licensed to BSC Cardiac. The Company initially recorded the payment as deferred revenue and is recognizing revenue over the five year estimated period of continuing involvement (see Note 2, Revenue Recognition). The Company determined the five year estimated period of continuing involvement based upon the Company’s internal development plan and projected timeline for the different implantable cardiac leads. The Company reevaluates it’s estimated remaining period of continuing involvement at each reporting period, and any changes would be incorporated into the determination of revenue recognition on a prospective basis.

Except as set forth below, the licensing provisions of the BSC Cardiac Agreement will terminate upon the expiration of the last issued patent that is licensed under the agreement, and the development provisions of the BSC Cardiac Agreement will expire upon FDA approval of a design for each of the different lead types described in the agreement. BSC Cardiac has the one-time option, within 60 days after successful completion of the first cardiac lead feasibility study, to cease further development work and to terminate the provisions of the BSC Cardiac Agreement. If BSC Cardiac elects to exercise its option under the BSC Cardiac Agreement to terminate further development efforts, the license the Company granted to BSC Cardiac will automatically become non-exclusive with respect to certain of the intellectual property, other intellectual property will be removed from the scope of the license and revert to the Company, and BSC Cardiac will not be obligated to pay the Company any future royalties on net sales of products containing intellectual property that remains subject to the non-exclusive license. Likewise, any unachieved future milestone-based payments will not be due to the Company.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**5. Related Party License Agreements (continued)**

Remaining related party deferred revenue is presently expected to be recognized as revenue as follows:

<u>Years Ending December 31,</u>	
2011	\$2,600,000
2012	2,600,000
2013	<u>1,396,374</u>
	<u>\$6,596,374</u>

**6. Related Party Notes Payable**

*Related Party Convertible Notes Payable (BSC)*

On October 16, 2009, the Company entered into a convertible note payable arrangement with BSC. During October, November and December of 2009, the Company borrowed an aggregate of \$3,500,000 from BSC under this arrangement. These borrowings bear interest at 10% per annum and mature on the second anniversary of the date on which the funds were advanced (October through December 2009 – however, see Note 12 regarding modification of these terms).

The Company will be required to prepay all or a portion of the convertible notes payable (the “BSC Notes”) upon the consummation of any qualified financing, which is defined as any equity financing in which shares of the Company’s preferred stock are issued in exchange for cash proceeds. Upon consummation of a qualified financing from Medtronic, Inc., St. Jude Medical, Inc., or Johnson & Johnson, or any of their respective subsidiaries or affiliates, up to 100% of the cash proceeds from such qualified financing must be used to prepay the outstanding principal and accrued interest of the BSC Notes. Upon consummation of a qualified financing from any other investor, up to 25% of the cash proceeds from such qualified financing must be applied by the Company to prepay the outstanding principal and accrued interest of the BSC Notes. The Company can prepay the BSC Notes at any time.

The principal and interest outstanding on each of the BSC Notes is convertible, at the option of the holder, at any time prior to the earlier of the maturity date or the consummation of a qualified initial public offering (a bona fide first underwritten public offering of the Company’s common stock on a firm commitment basis in which the aggregate gross proceeds received by the Company at the public offering price equals or exceeds \$20,000,000) into one share of the Company’s preferred stock at a conversion price equal to the lower of \$8.00 per share, or the price per share paid by investors in a future preferred stock financing conducted by the Company prior to the qualified public offering. The BSC Notes are secured by a first priority security interest in all of the Company’s assets.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**6. Related Party Notes Payable (continued)**

The Company analyzed the terms of the conversion feature of the BSC Notes under ASC Topic 815 and determined, based upon the conversion price reset provision, that the conversion feature should be accounted for as a derivative liability (see Note 2, Fair Value Measurements). Under this guidance the conversion feature was initially measured at fair value upon the issuance of the BSC Notes and will be adjusted to the current fair value at the end of each reporting period. Changes in fair value will be recorded as other income (expense) in the related statement of operations. The Company calculated the fair value of this derivative liability utilizing the Black-Scholes pricing model. The assumptions used in calculating the fair value of the derivative liability using this model as of the transaction date and December 31, 2010 were as follows:

	<u>December 31, 2010</u>	<u>Transaction Date</u>
Dividend yield	0%	0%
Expected volatility	44.84%	38.28%
Risk free interest rate	0.61%	1.14%
Expected remaining term	0.75 years	2 years
Common stock price	\$ 1.80	\$ 9.64

There was no adjustment of the derivative liability of \$1,227,500 at December 31, 2009 because the change in its fair value from the transaction date was insignificant. At December 31, 2010, the fair value of the derivative liability was \$0 (using Level 3 Inputs). Accordingly, the \$1,227,500 decrease in fair value during the year ended December 31, 2010 was recorded as a gain in the 2010 statement of operations.

The proceeds from the transaction were allocated as follows:

<b>Financial Instrument:</b>	
Related party convertible notes payable	\$2,272,500
Derivative liability	<u>1,227,500</u>
	<u>\$3,500,000</u>

The discount on the related party convertible notes payable is amortized through charges to interest expense based upon the effective interest method through the date of maturity. The unamortized discount at December 31, 2010 was \$653,236.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**6. Related Party Notes Payable (continued)**

*Related Party Convertible Notes Payable (BSC Neuro)*

During December 2005, BSC Neuro advanced the Company \$1,500,000 in the form of a convertible promissory note. The original maturity date of this note was December 31, 2007 or, if earlier, the expiration of a stipulated period of negotiations between BSC Neuro and the Company following the completion of certain product development work by the Company (the "Negotiation Period").

The calculation of BSC Neuro's conversion option under the note depended on whether BSC Neuro and the Company entered into a license agreement with respect to certain Company technology (the "Subsequent License"). If BSC Neuro and the Company did not enter into the Subsequent License, then the note was convertible into 10% of the Company's fully diluted common shares (all outstanding common stock, all outstanding preferred stock convertible into shares of common stock, all warrants and options to acquire shares of common stock (vested and unvested) and all shares of common stock issuable under the Company's equity compensation plans). If BSC Neuro and the Company did enter into the Subsequent License, then the note was convertible into 5% of the Company's fully diluted common shares. There was no beneficial conversion feature associated with this transaction.

The note was amended on June 30, 2007, wherein the maturity date was extended to June 30, 2008 or, if earlier, the expiration of the Negotiation Period. The lender's conversion option was then fixed at 5% of the Company's fully diluted common shares. However, if at the time of conversion BSC Neuro and the Company had not entered into the Subsequent License, the Company was also required to issue BSC Neuro a warrant to purchase an additional 5% of the Company's fully diluted common shares at an exercise price of \$0.04 per share. Such warrant would only be exercisable if BSC Neuro and the Company did not enter into the Subsequent License by the end of the Negotiation Period. The conversion option under the amended note was substantially the same as the conversion option under the original note.

The June 30, 2007 amendment was evaluated to determine if it qualified for debt extinguishment accounting. Based on the analysis performed, there was no debt extinguishment recorded as the fair value of the pre-amendment and post-amendment cash flows related to the notes did not differ by more than 10%. The fair value of the aforementioned \$0.04 warrant of approximately \$790,000 was recorded as a debt discount on the date of amendment and amortized through interest expense through the extended maturity date (June 30, 2008).

On June 30, 2008, BSC Neuro exercised its conversion option and converted the note in full into 417,960 shares of common stock. Upon conversion, BSC Neuro and the Company did not enter into the Subsequent License. Therefore, the number of shares subject to the aforementioned warrant was fixed at 417,960. The Negotiation Period expired during 2009, and BSC Neuro and the Company did not enter into the Subsequent License. BSC Neuro did not exercise the warrant and it expired in May 2009.



**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**7. 2010 Unsecured Convertible Notes Payable**

In March 2010, the Company issued 10% senior unsecured convertible notes (the "March 2010 Notes") in the aggregate principal amount of \$4,071,000. The March 2010 Notes contain a mandatory conversion feature upon the closing of an initial public offering of the Company's common stock that will automatically convert the March 2010 Notes into shares of the Company's common stock at the lesser of \$8.00 per share or 80% of the offering price, subject to a minimum \$4.00 per share conversion price. In addition, holders of the March 2010 Notes may convert the outstanding principal amount of their March 2010 Notes into shares of the Company's common stock at any time, based on a conversion price of \$8.00 per share, subject to certain adjustments. The March 2010 Notes mature two years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at the rate of 10% per annum. All accrued interest will be paid in cash upon the earlier to occur of maturity or conversion and will not be converted into shares of the Company's common stock.

The Company applied the guidance in ASC 815-40, "Derivatives and Hedging Contracts in an Entity's Own Equity," in determining that the conversion features of the March 2010 Notes did not require derivative liability accounting treatment. The Company relied upon guidance in ASC 470-20, "Debt with Conversion and Other Options," in determining that the non-mandatory conversion feature represented a beneficial conversion feature ("BCF") that should be recorded as equity based on its intrinsic value. Upon the issuance of the March 2010 Notes, the intrinsic value of the BCF was \$834,555 which represents the difference between the estimated fair value at the date of issuance of \$9.64 per common share and the conversion price of \$8.00 per share multiplied by the number of conversion shares. This BCF was recorded as debt discount, which is being amortized to interest expense using the effective interest method over the term of the March 2010 Notes.

The Company incurred approximately \$293,000 of costs related to the issuance of the March 2010 Notes, comprised of placement agent commissions and legal fees. In addition, warrants with a five year term were issued to the placement agent exercisable for 25,444 shares of the Company's common stock at a price equal to the lesser of \$8.00 per share or 80% of the offering price in the Company's initial public offering, subject to a minimum \$4.00 per share conversion price. The estimated fair value of the placement agent warrants at the date of issuance was \$120,218 (Note 8). The total costs incurred in connection with the issuance of the March 2010 Notes of approximately \$413,000 were capitalized as deferred financing costs and are being amortized using the effective interest method over the term of the March 2010 Notes. The unamortized balance at December 31, 2010 was \$263,495.

See Note 12 regarding the December 2011 modification of the conversion provisions for certain of these notes.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**8. 2010 Junior Secured Notes Payable**

In November 2010, the Company issued an aggregate of 10,714,286 units and received proceeds of \$3,000,000. The units were issued to existing stockholders of the Company and existing holders of other Company securities. Each unit consists of a junior secured note, and one share of the Company's common stock. The Company issued 10,714,286 shares of common stock and junior secured notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$3,000,000. The notes mature 10 years from the date of issuance and accrue interest at the rate of 3.5% per annum. The notes are secured by a security interest in the assets of the Company. This security interest is junior to that of the security interests associated with the BSC Notes. All outstanding principal and interest on the notes will be due and payable in a single payment upon maturity.

Under guidance in ASC 470, the Company allocated the \$3,000,000 in proceeds from the sale of the units proportionately between the junior secured notes and the shares of common stock issued based on their relative fair values with \$2,775,300 being recorded as equity. The junior secured notes were recorded at the principal amount of \$3,000,000 less a discount of \$2,775,300. This discount will be amortized to interest expense over the 10 year term of the notes using the effective interest method. The fair value of the notes was estimated based on an assumed market interest rate for notes of similar terms and risk. The fair value of the Company's common stock was estimated by management using a market approach, with input from a third-party valuation specialist.

Four officers of the Company purchased an aggregate of 882,726 units in the offering for \$247,164. In addition, three non-employee directors of the Company also purchased an aggregate of 567,203 units for \$158,816 in the offering.

Five other non-employee directors had advanced a total of \$190,000 to the Company in anticipation of the offering. However, due to the investment allocations for the offering, these five non-employee directors were not able to purchase units. All funds advanced to the Company by the five non-employee directors were returned, without interest, \$90,000 of which was returned prior to December 31, 2010 and \$100,000 of which was returned in January 2011. This \$100,000 is included in other accrued liabilities at December 31, 2010.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**9. Stockholders' Equity**

*Reverse Stock Split*

On April 23, 2010, the stockholders approved an amendment to the Company's certificate of incorporation giving the Board of Directors (the "Board") the discretion to effectuate a reverse split of the shares of the Company's common stock (the "Reverse Split"). On June 14, 2010, a duly authorized committee of the Board approved a 1-for-4 Reverse Split. On July 13, 2010, an amendment was filed to the Company's certificate of incorporation consummating the Reverse Split. The Reverse Split did not change the number of authorized shares or the par value of the Company's common stock. In connection with the Reverse Split, the Company's Series A Convertible Preferred Stock, outstanding convertible notes and outstanding options and warrants were adjusted so that the number of shares of common stock issuable upon their conversion or exercise was decreased proportionately, and the conversion or exercise price was increased proportionately. Accordingly, all share and per share amounts for all periods presented in these financial statements and notes thereto have been adjusted retroactively, where applicable, to reflect the Reverse Split.

*Series A Preferred Stock*

In 2006, the Company issued 7,965,000 shares of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock for net proceeds of \$7,335,787 (\$7,965,000 net of \$629,213 in transaction expenses). Additionally, the placement agent received detachable warrants to acquire up to 141,500 shares of the Company's common stock at \$4.00 per share with a fair value of \$28,696 on the date of issuance. The warrants expire on December 31, 2011. The holders of the Series A Convertible Preferred Stock have the following rights and privileges:

**Voting.** Each holder of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock is entitled to vote on all matters presented to holders of common stock, with each holder entitled to the number of votes equal to the number of shares of common stock into which his or her shares of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock could be converted.

**Dividend Rights.** There is no dividend rate on the Series A Convertible Preferred Stock; however, the Company will pay holders of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock any dividend it declares with respect to the common stock on an as converted basis.

**Conversion.** The holders of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock have the right to convert such shares, at any time, into shares of common stock. The current conversion rate of the Series A Convertible Preferred Stock is 1-for-4, subject to further adjustment for certain corporate events, including stock splits, stock dividends, and recapitalizations. The Series A Convertible Preferred Stock automatically converts into common stock at the then applicable conversion rate upon the closing of an initial public offering or the consent of holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of the Series A Convertible Preferred Stock.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**9. Stockholders' Equity (continued)**

Liquidation. In the event of the liquidation, dissolution or winding-up of the Company, the holders of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock would be entitled to receive \$1.00 per share before any liquidation distributions may be paid to holders of the Company's common stock.

Redemption. Shares of Series A Convertible Preferred Stock are not redeemable by the Company.

*Registration Rights Agreement*

The Company has an agreement with many of its current stockholders pursuant to which the Company has granted those stockholders certain registration rights. The stockholders who are parties to the agreement generally have two demand registration rights, which rights become effective as of the date that is six months after the Company's initial public offering (as such these registration rights are contingent upon the successful completion of an initial public offering). A requisite percentage of holders is required to exercise a demand registration right, and certain other restrictions apply. Stockholders also have the right to participate on a "piggyback basis" in certain registrations by the Company under the Securities Act of 1933, subject to certain restrictions, including underwriter holdbacks.

*Stock Incentive Plans*

At December 31, 2010, the Company has four share-based compensation plans (a "1998 Plan", a "2007 Plan", and two "2010 Plans", and referred to collectively herein as the "Plans"). The Plans provide for the granting of share-based awards, such as incentive and non-qualified stock options, to employees, directors, consultants and advisors. One of the 2010 Plans also provides for cash-based awards. Awards may be subject to a vesting schedule as set forth in each individual award agreement. The Company terminated the 1998 Plan, effective June 24, 2008, with respect to future grants such that no new options may be awarded under the 1998 Plan on or after June 24, 2008. Upon adoption of the 2010 Plans, the Company also ceased making awards under its 2007 Plan. A total of 3,815,675 shares of the Company's common stock have been reserved for issuance under the 2010 Plans. At December 31, 2010, 3,246,450 awards have been issued under the 2010 Plans.

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**9. Stockholders' Equity (continued)**

Activity with respect to stock options issued by the Company is summarized as follows:

	Options Outstanding	Options Exercisable	Range of Exercise Price		Weighted- average Exercise price per share	Intrinsic Value <sup>(1)</sup>
Balance at January 1, 2008	451,250		\$0.88	- \$24.00	\$ 2.20	\$ 331,500
Options exercisable at January 1, 2008		<u>361,250</u>	0.88	- 24.00	\$ 1.96	331,500
Options granted	154,875		6.04	- 9.64	7.84	
Options cancelled or forfeited	(6,250)			6.00	6.00	
Balance at December 31, 2008	599,875		0.88	- 24.00	3.62	3,742,700
Options exercisable at December 31, 2008		<u>432,083</u>	0.88	- 24.00	2.70	3,133,667
Options granted	93,402			9.64	9.64	
Options exercised	(3,333)			3.20	3.20	
Options cancelled or forfeited	(20,167)		1.64	- 20.00	9.60	
Balance at December 31, 2009	669,777		0.88	- 24.00	4.28	3,694,400
Options exercisable at December 31, 2009		<u>483,364</u>	0.88	- 24.00	2.78	3,424,333
Options granted	3,246,450			1.80	1.80	
Options cancelled or forfeited	(153,750)					
Balance at December 31, 2010	3,762,477		0.88	- 24.00	2.11	262,500
Options exercisable at December 31, 2010		<u>411,529</u>	0.88	- 24.00	2.68	262,500

- (1) Intrinsic value is calculated as the estimated fair value of the Company's stock at the end of the related period less the option exercise price of in-the-money options.
- (2) All options granted during the years ended December 31, 2009 and 2010 were granted with exercise prices of \$9.64 and \$1.80 per share, respectively, which was deemed to be the fair market value of the Company's stock on the date of grant.

The following table summarizes information about stock options at December 31, 2010:

Range of Exercise Prices	Options Outstanding			Options Exercisable	
	Number Outstanding	Weighted - Average Remaining Contractual Life	Weighted - Average Exercise Price	Number Exercisable	Weighted - Average Exercise Price
\$0.88 -3.20	3,593,950	9.37	\$ 1.75	347,500	\$ 1.29
6.04 -9.64	163,527	5.81	9.33	59,029	9.06
24.00	5,000	0.50	24.00	5,000	24.00
	<u>3,762,477</u>	9.20	2.11	<u>411,529</u>	2.68

[Table of Contents](#)

MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.

Notes to Financial Statements

December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008

9. Stockholders' Equity (continued)

The following table summarizes information about stock options at December 31, 2009:

Range of Exercise Prices	Options Outstanding			Options Exercisable	
	Number Outstanding	Weighted - Average Remaining Contractual Life	Weighted - Average Exercise Price	Number Exercisable	Weighted - Average Exercise Price
\$0.88 -3.20	427,500	5.30	\$ 1.64	414,167	\$ 1.59
6.04 -9.64	234,777	7.30	8.46	61,697	8.15
24.00	7,500	1.00	24.00	7,500	24.00
	<u>669,777</u>	5.95	4.28	<u>483,364</u>	2.78

The weighted-average grant date fair value of options granted during the years ended December 31, 2009 and 2010 are \$2.83 and \$0.83, respectively. A summary of the status of the Company's nonvested stock options during the years ended December 31, 2008, 2009, and 2010 is presented below:

Nonvested Stock Options	Shares	Weighted - Average Grant Date Fair Value
Nonvested January 1, 2008	90,000	\$ 0.40
Granted	116,125	0.56
Vested	(38,333)	0.10
Nonvested December 31, 2008	167,792	0.42
Granted	93,402	2.83
Forfeited/cancelled	(7,250)	2.84
Vested	(67,531)	1.14
Nonvested December 31, 2009	186,413	\$ 0.60
Granted	3,246,450	0.83
Forfeited	(41,667)	1.92
Vested	(40,248)	1.94
Nonvested December 31, 2010	<u>3,350,948</u>	<u>\$ 0.89</u>

As of December 31, 2010 there was a total of approximately \$2,803,000 of unrecognized compensation cost related to share-based compensation arrangements granted under the Plans. That cost is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of approximately 2.8 years.

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**9. Stockholders' Equity (continued)**

The assumptions used in calculating the fair value using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model are set forth in the following table for options issued by the Company in 2010, 2009, and 2008:

	Year Ended December 31,		
	2010	2009	2008
Dividend yield	0%	0%	0%
Expected Volatility	44.81%	23.45% to 38.28%	24.45% to 26.44%
Risk free Interest rates	2.36%	1.48% to 2.43%	2.56% to 3.03%
Expected term	6.0 years	3.25 to 5.75 years	5 to 5.75 years

*Warrants*

Warrants have been issued for terms of up to five years.

Common Stock warrants issued, expired, and outstanding during the years ended December 31, 2008, 2009 and 2010 are as follows:

	Shares	Weighted - Average Exercise Price
Warrants outstanding at January 1, 2008	828,502	\$ 1.74
Warrants expired during 2009	(417,960)	0.04
Warrants outstanding at December 31, 2009	410,542	0.42
Warrants issued during 2010	25,444	5.60
Warrants outstanding at December 31, 2010	<u>435,986</u>	<u>3.60</u>

The assumptions used in calculating the fair value of warrants utilizing the Black-Scholes pricing model for warrants issued in 2010 are a dividend yield of 0%, expected volatility of 45.98%, a risk free interest rate of 2.6%, and an expected term of 5 years.

*Other Stock Transactions with Related Parties*

- During January 2009, the Company loaned \$500,000 under an 8% note receivable to a stockholder with an original maturity date in July 2010. The note was collateralized by 125,000 shares of the Company's common stock owned by the stockholder. In addition, during January 2009, the Company purchased 125,000 shares of the Company's common stock from that same stockholder for \$500,000 in cash (accounted for as a treasury stock purchase). During December 2009, the Company purchased 134,178 additional shares of the Company's common stock from this stockholder in exchange for cancellation of the aforementioned \$500,000 note receivable plus \$36,712 of accrued interest thereon.

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**9. Stockholders' Equity (continued)**

- The Company had a note receivable from its Chief Executive Officer ("CEO") related to the sale of common stock. The note bore interest at 4.5%. Interest income related to this note was approximately \$21,000 for each of the years ended December 31, 2009 and 2008. On December 22, 2009, the Company purchased 66,652 shares of common stock from the CEO, for an aggregate purchase price of \$642,525. The Company paid a portion of the aggregate purchase price (\$594,687) by cancelling the aforementioned promissory note plus accrued interest, with the remainder paid in cash. Also, on December 22, 2009, the Company issued to the CEO options to purchase 66,652 shares of its common stock at an exercise price of \$9.64 per share, which represented the estimated fair market value per share.

**10. Income Taxes**

The Company had no income tax expense for the years ended December 31, 2010 and 2008 and recorded income tax expense of \$49,250 for the year ended December 31, 2009 related to state income taxes which could not be offset by net operating loss carryforwards. As the Company has incurred net operating losses, it has recognized valuation allowances for all deferred income tax assets. The tax effect of temporary differences and net operating losses that give rise to components of deferred tax assets and liabilities consist of the following:

	<u>December 31,</u>	
	<u>2010</u>	<u>2009</u>
Deferred tax assets (liabilities):		
Property and equipment	\$ (193,617)	\$ (202,296)
Deferred revenue	2,503,984	3,207,620
Accrued expenses	1,518,400	439,965
Other	297,309	60,139
Net operating loss carryforwards	<u>14,758,835</u>	<u>11,591,052</u>
	18,884,911	15,096,480
Less valuation allowance	<u>(18,884,911)</u>	<u>(15,096,480)</u>
	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

The Company has a cumulative federal net operating loss of approximately \$38,900,000 as of December 31, 2010. Under Section 382 and 383 of the Internal Revenue Code, if an ownership change occurs with respect to a "loss corporation", as defined, there are annual limitations on the amount of the net operating loss and other deductions which are available to the Company. The Company has not determined whether such ownership change has occurred. However, given the equity transactions in which the Company has engaged, the Company believes that the use of the net operating losses shown as deferred tax assets will be significantly limited.



---

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**11. Commitments**

*Leases*

The Company leases office space in Maryland, California and Tennessee under non-cancellable operating leases. Leases expire in 2011, 2012 and 2014.

Future minimum lease payments under non-cancellable operating leases are as follows:

<u>Years Ending December 31,</u>	
2011	\$168,659
2012	137,571
2013	62,272
2014	58,399
<b>Total minimum payments</b>	<b><u>\$426,901</u></b>

Rent expense under all operating leases was approximately \$181,000, \$190,000 and \$107,000 for the years ended December 31, 2010, 2009, and 2008, respectively.

*Co-Development Agreement*

The Company has entered into a co-development agreement whereby it is required to pay up to approximately \$2,476,000 in milestone-based payments for software development to be used in conjunction with products being developed by the Company. The software, upon completion, will be owned by the co-developer and sold through licenses. The co-developer will pay the Company a fixed amount per license sold by the co-developer until the Company recoups its investment in the software. The Company's remaining milestone-based payments under the co-development agreement at December 31, 2010 totaled approximately \$2,026,000, which is expected to be paid in installments over the period in which the development work is performed. At December 31, 2010, the Company's accounts payable balance includes approximately \$717,000 related to these milestones.

*Shared Research Agreements*

The Company has entered into research agreements with certain universities whereby the Company has committed to pay certain research-related expenses. At December 31, 2010, the Company's other accounts payable and accrued liabilities includes approximately \$730,000 related to these agreements. As of December 31, 2010 the Company is committed to pay additional amounts aggregating approximately \$875,000, which will be payable at various dates through January 2012.

*Software License Agreement*

The Company is obligated under a master services and license agreement to purchase a minimum number of licenses for software code that is incorporated in the Company's ClearPoint system software. The minimum future purchase obligation is \$87,500 per calendar quarter in 2012, 2013 and 2014, with an aggregate commitment totaling \$1,050,000. The cost of each license will be charged to cost of sales as each ClearPoint system is sold or amortized over a five year period for licenses used in loaned systems.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**11. Commitments (continued)**

*Cardiac EP Business Participation Plan*

In June 2010, the Company adopted a plan that provides a key product development advisor and consultant with financial rewards in the event that the Company sells its business operations relating to catheter-based MRI-guided cardiac ablation to treat cardiac arrhythmias, which the Company refers to as its cardiac EP operations. In the event that the Company sells its cardiac EP operations, whether on a stand-alone basis or as part of the sale of the Company, the participant will receive a payment under the plan equal to (i) the transaction value paid for or allocated to the cardiac EP operations in the sale, multiplied by (ii) the participant's "participation interest" at the time of the sale. The participant was initially awarded a participation interest of 6.6%, which interest is still the same at December 31, 2010. However, that percentage interest will be equitably reduced from time to time to take into account future equity financing transactions in which the Company issues shares of its common stock, or securities convertible into shares of its common stock, in exchange for cash proceeds. The plan will terminate in June 2025.

*Key Personnel Incentive Program*

In June 2010, the Company amended its Key Personnel Incentive Program, which provides a key employee and a key consultant, who is also a non-employee director of the Company, with the opportunity to receive incentive bonus payments based on the performance of future services to the Company or upon a consummation of a transaction involving the sale of the Company. In the event of a sale transaction, each participant will receive a bonus payment under the program if the participant continues to provide services to the Company as its employee or consultant as of the date of the transaction. Until the occurrence of a sale transaction, each participant will be entitled to receive semi-annual service bonuses beginning in June 2012 and continuing through December 2015, if the participant continues to provide services to the Company as its employee or consultant as of the respective scheduled payment dates. Pursuant to their awards, the two participants would receive service bonuses totaling up to \$1,700,000 and \$1,000,000, respectively, payable in eight equal semi-annual installments. At December 31, 2010, the Company has approximately \$278,000 accrued related to this program as a long-term liability in other accrued liabilities.

If the participant's employment or consultancy is (i) terminated due to the participant's death or disability, or (ii) involuntarily terminated by the Company other than for cause, then the participant will be deemed vested, as of the termination date, in all future scheduled service bonus payments, and the Company will be required to pay that aggregate amount no later than March 15 of the year following the year in which the termination occurred. If the participant's employment or consultancy is involuntarily terminated by the Company for cause, or if the participant voluntarily terminates his employment or consultancy, the participant thereafter will not be entitled to any payments under the program. The program will terminate on the earlier of December 31, 2015 or the occurrence of a transaction involving the sale of the Company.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**12. Subsequent Events**

*Legal Settlement*

On April 22, 2010, SurgiVision Consultants, Inc. and Guy M. Kezirian, or the plaintiffs, filed a lawsuit against the Company in the United States District Court, Central District of California, alleging trademark infringement, unfair competition, trademark dilution and violation of the Anti-Cybersquatting Protection Act, all relating to the Company's use of its SURGI-VISION and SURGIVISION trademarks and the Company's www.surgivision.com domain name. On February 16, 2011, the parties entered into a settlement agreement which resulted in the dismissal of the litigation. Pursuant to the settlement agreement, the Company agreed to discontinue use of any form of the SURGIVISION name and agreed to pay the plaintiffs \$425,000 for reimbursement of out of pocket legal expenses incurred by the plaintiffs in connection with the litigation. The Company has accrued the full amount of the settlement at December 31, 2010 as selling, general and administrative expenses and the liability is included in other accrued liabilities. The \$425,000 is payable in twelve equal monthly installments of \$35,417 beginning in March of 2011.

*Convertible Note Payable and Strategic Agreement*

In April 2011, the Company issued a \$2,000,000 subordinated secured convertible promissory note ("April 2011 Note") to a medical device co-development partner ("Strategic Partner"). The April 2011 Note matures in April 2016, unless earlier converted, and it accrues interest at the rate of 10% per annum. The April 2011 Note is secured by a second priority security interest in the assets of the Company. In the event the Company closes an equity financing in which it issues shares of its preferred stock and receives at least \$10,000,000 in net proceeds, the April 2011 Note will automatically convert into the shares of preferred stock that are issued in the financing, based on the lower of the price paid by investors in the financing or \$0.60 per share, if the number of shares to be issued upon conversion represents at least 10% of the Company's outstanding shares of stock on a fully diluted basis. If the number of shares that would be issued upon conversion represents less than 10% of the Company's outstanding shares of stock on a fully diluted basis, the holder of the April 2011 note will convert into the shares of preferred stock that are issued in the financing, based on the lower of the price paid by investors in the financing or \$0.60 per share, only upon the Strategic Partner's election to convert.

Concurrent with the issuance of the April 2011 Note, the Company and the Strategic Partner entered into a Co-Development and Distribution Agreement pursuant to which the Company appointed the Strategic Partner as the exclusive distributor of the ClearPoint system in the neurological drug delivery field and a non-exclusive distributor of the ClearPoint system for other neurological applications. In addition, the Company and the Strategic Partner will work together to integrate the Company's ClearPoint product line into the Strategic Partner's interventional MRI product line, particularly for a neurological drug delivery application.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**12. Subsequent Events (continued)**

*Related Party Unsecured Convertible Notes*

In June through September 2011, the Company issued unsecured convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$1,310,000 to six non-employee directors of the Company. The note holders also received common stock warrants. The notes mature two years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at the rate of 15% per annum. The warrants vest immediately, have a term of five years, and have an exercise price of \$0.01 per share. Upon consummation of an initial public offering of shares of the Company's common stock, the notes will automatically convert into shares of the Company's common stock at 60% of the public offering price. In addition, if the Company completes a reverse merger transaction with a public shell company and thereafter closes an equity financing that results in gross proceeds of at least \$5,000,000, the notes will convert into the shares of stock that are issued in the financing at a conversion price equal to 60% of the price paid by investors in the financing.

*Filing of Form 10 Registration Statement*

In December 2011, the Company filed a Form 10 registration statement with the Securities and Exchange Commission to register the Company's common stock as a class of equity securities under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"). Upon the effectiveness of the Form 10 registration statement, the Company will become a public reporting company subject to the periodic reporting requirements of the Exchange Act.

*Modification of Terms of the Unsecured Convertible Notes Payable (Note 7)*

In November and December of 2011, the majority of the holders of the March 2010 Notes agreed to a change in the conversion terms of their notes. When issued, the March 2010 Notes did not provide for conversion into shares of the Company's common stock upon the effectiveness of a registration statement filed under the Exchange Act, such as a Form 10 registration statement. However, as of February 7, 2012, holders of \$3,401,000 in principal amount of the March 2010 Notes have amended their notes to provide for the automatic conversion of their notes, including the principal and all accrued interest, into shares of the Company's common stock upon the effectiveness of the Company's Form 10 registration statement, based on a conversion price of \$1.00 per share.

*Modification to Terms of Related Party BSC Notes Payable (Note 6) and BSC Neuro Agreement (Note 5)*

Effective February 2, 2012, the Company entered into a loan modification with BSC pursuant to which (i) interest accrued under each of the BSC Notes as of February 2, 2012 was added to the principal balance of the note, (ii) beginning February 2, 2012, the interest rate of each of the BSC Notes was reduced from 10% per annum to 0%, and (iii) the maturity date of each of the BSC Notes was extended by three years (October through December 2014). While the BSC Notes remain outstanding, the Company must meet certain net working capital targets, be current on its payroll obligations, and not suffer an event of default under any indebtedness for borrowed money. If those requirements are not met, the Company will be required to assign certain patents and patent applications to BSC. However, upon any such assignments to BSC, BSC will grant to the Company an exclusive, royalty-free, perpetual worldwide license to the same patents and patent applications. In connection with the modification of the BSC Notes, the Company also agreed to an amendment of the BSC Neuro Agreement which, among other things, reduces the aggregate future milestone-based payments the Company could receive from \$1,600,000 to \$800,000.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

**Notes to Financial Statements**

**December 31, 2010 and 2009 and the Years Ended December 31, 2010, 2009 and 2008**

**12. Subsequent Events (continued)**

*Private Placement*

In October 2011, the Company began a private placement of its securities in which the Company is offering units, with each unit consisting of a 10% secured convertible note in the principal amount of \$100,000 and a warrant to purchase 50,000 shares of the Company's common stock. The notes mature three years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at 10% per year. The notes are secured by a security interest in the assets of the Company. The notes, including the principal and all accrued interest, will convert automatically into shares of the Company's common stock upon the effectiveness of a Form 10 registration statement filed under the Exchange Act, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share. In addition, a note holder may elect at any time to convert the note into shares of the Company's common stock, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share. The warrants are immediately vested, have a term of five years, and have an exercise price of \$0.75 per share. As of February 7, 2012 in its unit offering the Company had issued notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$2,702,000. The Company's placement agent for the unit offering will receive a cash fee equal to 10% of the gross proceeds, as well as a warrant to purchase that number of shares of the Company's common stock equal to 8% of the number of shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of the notes and exercise of the warrants sold in the offering, at an exercise price of \$0.60 per share.

[Table of Contents](#)

MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.

Condensed Balance Sheets

	September 30, 2011 (unaudited)	December 31, 2010
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>Current Assets</b>		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 70,096	\$ 1,577,314
Accounts receivable	230,077	31,540
Inventory	1,221,267	1,610,442
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	6,702	16,540
Total current assets	1,528,142	3,235,836
Property and equipment, net	1,108,916	979,509
Deferred costs	105,581	263,495
Licenses, net	31,500	45,000
Other assets	19,001	39,001
Total assets	<u>\$ 2,793,140</u>	<u>\$ 4,562,841</u>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' DEFICIT</b>		
<b>Current liabilities</b>		
Accounts payable	\$ 4,349,120	\$ 3,495,283
Accrued compensation	243,917	124,792
Accrued interest	858,613	344,395
Other accrued liabilities	1,961,419	2,079,574
Related party deferred revenue	2,600,000	2,600,000
2010 unsecured convertible notes payable, net of unamortized discount of \$246,634	3,824,366	—
Total current liabilities	13,837,435	8,644,044
Related party deferred revenue	2,046,374	3,996,374
Related party accrued interest	698,384	410,425
Other accrued liabilities	303,248	278,060
Related party BSC convertible notes payable, net of unamortized discount of \$85,777 and \$653,235 at September 30, 2011 and December 31, 2010, respectively	3,414,223	2,846,764
2010 unsecured convertible notes payable, net of unamortized discount of \$571,275	—	3,499,725
Related party 2011 unsecured convertible notes payable, net of unamortized discount of \$466,836	843,164	—
2011 junior secured note payable	2,000,000	—
2010 junior secured notes payable, net of unamortized discount of \$2,802,483 and \$2,775,300 at September 30, 2011 and December 31, 2010, respectively	197,517	224,700
Total liabilities	<u>23,340,345</u>	<u>19,900,092</u>
<b>Stockholders' deficit</b>		
Series A convertible preferred stock; \$.01 par value; 8,000,000 authorized and 7,965,000 shares issued and outstanding	7,965,000	7,965,000
Common stock, \$.01 par value; 70,000,000 shares authorized; 16,410,820 (2011) and 16,185,820 (2010) issued; 16,084,990 (2011) and 15,859,990 (2010) outstanding	164,108	161,858
Additional paid-in capital	30,935,626	29,692,324
Treasury stock, at cost, 325,830 common shares	(1,679,234)	(1,679,234)
Accumulated deficit	<u>(57,932,705)</u>	<u>(51,477,199)</u>
Total stockholders' deficit	<u>(20,547,205)</u>	<u>(15,337,251)</u>
Total liabilities and stockholders' deficit	<u>\$ 2,793,140</u>	<u>\$ 4,562,841</u>

See notes to condensed financial statements.



[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Condensed Statements of Operations**  
**(unaudited)**

	<b>Nine Months Ended September 30,</b>	
	<b>2011</b>	<b>2010</b>
<b>Revenues:</b>		
Related party license revenue	\$ 1,950,000	\$ 1,950,000
Product revenues	703,983	10,017
Total revenues	<u>2,653,983</u>	<u>1,960,017</u>
<b>Costs and operating expenses:</b>		
Cost of product revenues	421,357	2,125
Research and development	3,133,635	4,588,534
Selling, general, and administrative	3,709,120	3,065,746
Costs of withdrawn IPO	—	1,788,609
Total costs and operating expenses	<u>7,264,112</u>	<u>9,445,014</u>
Operating loss	(4,610,129)	(7,484,997)
<b>Other income (expense):</b>		
Gain on change in fair value of derivative liability	—	1,163,675
Other expense, net	(2,431)	—
Interest income	3,218	7,081
Interest expense	(1,846,164)	(1,083,193)
<b>Net loss</b>	<u>\$ (6,455,506)</u>	<u>\$ (7,397,434)</u>
<b>Net loss per share attributable to common stockholders:</b>		
Basic and diluted	<u>\$ (0.41)</u>	<u>\$ (1.44)</u>
<b>Weighted average shares outstanding:</b>		
Basic and diluted	<u>15,919,249</u>	<u>5,129,250</u>

See notes to condensed financial statements.



[Table of Contents](#)

MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.

Condensed Statement of Stockholders' Deficit  
Nine Months Ended September 30, 2011 (unaudited)

	Convertible Preferred Stock Series A		Common Stock		Additional Paid-in Amount	Treasury Stock	Accumulated Deficit	Total
	Shares	Amount	Shares	Amount				
Balances, January 1, 2011	7,965,000	\$7,965,000	15,859,990	\$161,858	\$29,692,324	\$(1,679,234)	\$(51,477,199)	\$(15,337,251)
Employee share-based compensation	—	—	—	—	757,200	—	—	757,200
Warrants issued in connection with senior unsecured convertible notes payable	—	—	—	—	486,102	—	—	486,102
Proceeds from exercise of warrants	—	—	225,000	2,250	—	—	—	2,250
Net loss for the nine months ended September 30, 2011	—	—	—	—	—	—	(6,455,506)	(6,455,506)
Balances, September 30, 2011	<u>7,965,000</u>	<u>\$7,965,000</u>	<u>16,084,990</u>	<u>\$164,108</u>	<u>\$30,935,626</u>	<u>\$(1,679,234)</u>	<u>\$(57,932,705)</u>	<u>\$(20,547,205)</u>

See notes to condensed financial statements.

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Condensed Statements of Cash Flows**  
**(unaudited)**

	<b>Nine Months Ended September 30,</b>	
	<b>2011</b>	<b>2010</b>
<b>Cash flows from operating activities</b>		
Net loss	\$ (6,455,506)	\$ (7,397,434)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash flows from operating activities:		
Depreciation and license amortization	249,203	192,348
Share-based compensation	757,200	167,276
Gain on change in fair value of derivative liability	—	(1,163,675)
Amortization of debt issuance costs and original issue discount	1,042,097	597,128
Write-off of costs of withdrawn IPO	—	1,788,609
Increase (decrease) in cash resulting from changes in:		
Accounts receivable	(198,537)	—
Inventory	40,720	(992,968)
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	9,838	(29,919)
Deposits	20,000	(32,999)
Accounts payable and accrued expenses	1,682,172	2,609,700
Related party deferred revenue	(1,950,000)	(1,950,000)
<b>Net cash flows from operating activities</b>	<b>(4,802,813)</b>	<b>(6,211,934)</b>
<b>Cash flows from investing activities:</b>		
Purchases of property and equipment	(16,655)	(59,362)
<b>Net cash flows from investing activities</b>	<b>(16,655)</b>	<b>(59,362)</b>
<b>Cash flows from financing activities:</b>		
Proceeds from 2010 unsecured convertible notes payable, net of issuance costs	—	3,777,142
Proceeds from related party 2011 unsecured convertible notes payable and common stock warrants	1,310,000	—
Proceeds from 2011 junior secured note payable	2,000,000	—
Proceeds from warrant exercises	2,250	—
<b>Net cash flows from financing activities</b>	<b>3,312,250</b>	<b>3,777,142</b>
<b>Net change in cash and cash equivalents</b>	<b>(1,507,218)</b>	<b>(2,494,154)</b>
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of period</b>	<b>1,577,314</b>	<b>2,569,129</b>
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, end of period</b>	<b>\$ 70,096</b>	<b>\$ 74,975</b>
<b>SUPPLEMENTAL CASH FLOW INFORMATION</b>		
<b>Cash paid for:</b>		
Income taxes	\$ —	\$ 49,250
Interest	—	—

See notes to condensed financial statements.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Condensed Statements of Cash Flows (continued)**  
**(unaudited)**

**NON-CASH TRANSACTIONS:**

- In March 2010, warrants (recorded as deferred financing costs and additional paid-in capital) were issued with a fair value of \$120,218 to the placement agent in connection with the sale of the senior unsecured convertible notes.
- During the nine months ended September 30, 2011, warrants with a fair value of \$486,102 (recorded as deferred financing costs and additional paid-in capital) were issued in connection with the issuance of convertible notes.
- During the nine months ended September 30, 2011, inventory with a cost of \$348,455 was transferred to loaned systems which is a component of property and equipment.

See notes to condensed financial statements.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**1. Organization and Basis of Presentation**

MRI Interventions, Inc. (the “Company”), formerly SurgiVision, Inc., was formed on March 12, 1998. The Company registered its name change with the state of Delaware in May 2011 where the Company is incorporated. The Company operates in the medical device industry and is focused on the development and commercialization of technology that enables physicians to see inside the brain and heart using direct, intra-procedural magnetic resonance imaging, or MRI guidance, while performing minimally invasive surgical procedures.

*Basis of Presentation*

In the opinion of management, the accompanying unaudited condensed financial statements (“condensed financial statements”) have been prepared on a basis consistent with the Company’s December 31, 2010 audited financial statements and include all adjustments, consisting of only normal recurring adjustments, necessary to fairly state the information set forth herein. The condensed financial statements have been prepared in accordance with the rules for interim financial information of the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) and, therefore, omit certain information and footnote disclosure necessary to present the statements in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States (“GAAP”). The accompanying condensed December 31, 2010 balance sheet has been derived from the audited financial statements at that date, but does not include all information and footnotes required by GAAP in the U.S. for complete financial statements. The results of operations for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 may not be indicative of the results to be expected for the entire year or any future periods.

*Liquidity and Management’s Plans*

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming the Company will continue as a going concern. For the nine month period ended September 30, 2011 and the years ended December 31, 2010 and 2009, the Company incurred net losses of \$6,455,506, \$9,454,235, and \$7,159,060, respectively, and the cumulative net loss since the Company’s inception through September 30, 2011 is \$57,932,705, which has resulted in a negative working capital position of \$16,421,900 at September 30, 2011. In view of these matters, the ability of the Company to continue as a going concern is dependent upon its ability to generate additional financing sufficient to commercialize its developed products, support its research and development activities and obtain future regulatory clearances or approvals, and ultimately to generate revenue sufficient to cover all costs. Since inception, the Company has financed its activities principally from the sale of equity securities, borrowings, and license arrangements. The Company intends to finance its future commercialization and development activities and its working capital needs largely from borrowings and from the sale of equity securities until funds provided by operations are sufficient to meet working capital requirements. There can be no assurance that the Company will be successful at achieving its financing goals on reasonable commercial terms, if at all, or if it will generate revenues sufficient to cover its costs.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies**

*Fair Value Measurements*

The Company measures certain financial assets and liabilities at fair value on a recurring basis, including its derivative liability. Generally accepted accounting principles for fair value measurement provide a fair value hierarchy that prioritizes the inputs to valuation techniques used to measure fair value. The hierarchy gives the highest priority to quoted prices in active markets for identical assets and liabilities (“Level 1”) and the lowest priority to unobservable inputs (“Level 3”).

The Company measures the fair value of its derivative liability (see Note 6) on a recurring basis using Level 3 inputs. The fair value of the Company’s derivative liability was \$0 at September 30, 2011 and December 31, 2010.

Carrying amounts of the Company’s cash and cash equivalents, accounts receivable and accounts payable and accrued liabilities approximate their fair values due to their short maturities.

The fair values of the Company’s notes payable differ from their carrying values primarily as the result of certain unamortized debt discounts that have been recorded as it relates to those debt instruments as well as a less than market contract interest rate associated with the 2010 junior secured notes payable issued by the Company in 2010. The fair values of all outstanding notes payable other than the 2010 junior secured notes payable were determined to be equal to the face value of the notes payable as the contractual interest rate approximated the market interest rate. The contractual interest rate on the 2011 junior secured notes payable is 3.5% per year, and the Company determined the fair value of these notes by discounting the face value utilizing a 10% estimated market interest rate over the term of the notes. The carrying values and estimated fair values of notes payable are as follows at September 30, 2011:

	<u>Carrying Value</u>	<u>Estimated Fair Value</u>
Related party BSC convertible notes payable	\$3,414,223	\$3,500,000
2010 unsecured convertible notes payable	3,824,366	4,071,000
2010 junior secured notes payable	197,517	1,704,583
2011 related party unsecured convertible notes payable	843,164	1,310,000
2011 junior secured note payable	2,000,000	2,000,000

*Inventory*

Inventory is carried at the lower of cost (first-in, first-out method) or net realizable value. All items included in inventory relate to the Company’s ClearPoint system. The Company periodically reviews its inventory for obsolete items and provides a reserve upon identification of potential obsolete items.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

*Property and Equipment*

Property and equipment are recorded at cost and are depreciated on a straight-line basis over their estimated useful lives, principally five to seven years. Leasehold improvements are depreciated on a straight-line basis over the lesser of their estimated useful lives or the life of the related lease.

*Revenue Recognition*

The Company's revenues arise from: (1) the sale of ClearPoint system reusable components, including associated installation services; (2) sales of ClearPoint disposable products; and (3) license and development arrangements. The Company recognizes revenue, in accordance with Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") 605-10-S99, Revenue Recognition, when persuasive evidence of an arrangement exists, the fee is fixed or determinable, collection of the fee is probable and risk of loss has transferred to the customer. For all sales, the Company requires either a purchase agreement or a purchase order as evidence of an arrangement.

(1) *Sale of ClearPoint system reusable components* – Revenues related to ClearPoint system sales are recognized upon installation of the system and the completion of training of at least one of the customer's physicians, which typically occurs concurrently with the ClearPoint system installation. ClearPoint system reusable components include software. This software is incidental to the utility of the ClearPoint system as a whole, and as such, the provisions of ASC 985-605, Software Revenue Recognition, are not applicable.

(2) *Sales of ClearPoint disposable products* – Revenues from the sale of ClearPoint disposable products utilized in procedures performed using the ClearPoint system, which occurs after the system installation is completed for a given customer, are recognized at the time risk of loss passes, which is generally at shipping point or the customer's location, based on the specific terms with that customer.

(3) *License and development arrangements* – The Company analyzes revenue recognition on an agreement by agreement basis as discussed below.

- *Related Party Revenue Recognition under BSC Neuro Agreement (Note 5)*—The Company analyzed whether the components of the arrangement represent separate units of accounting as defined by GAAP. Application of these standards requires subjective determinations and requires management to make judgments about the value of the individual elements and whether delivered elements are separable from the other aspects of the contractual relationship. The Company determined it does not have clear and objective evidence of fair value of the various elements of the agreement and, therefore, under GAAP regarding Multiple-Element Arrangements, the deliverables are being treated as one unit of accounting.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

This agreement requires the achievement of specified milestones in the development of an MRI-safe implantable lead by December 31, 2012. If the milestones are not achieved by that date and this failure is not the result of BSC Neuro's failure to reasonably cooperate with the Company in pursuing the milestones, the Company will be required to repay BSC Neuro certain amounts, including any development expenses and milestone payments previously made to the Company under this agreement and any patent prosecution costs incurred by BSC Neuro with respect to the intellectual property licensed under this agreement. The existence of this provision indicates the sales price is not fixed or determinable and all monies which have been or will be received prior to December 31, 2012 have and will be deferred until such time. If the repayment obligations are not triggered as of December 31, 2012, the related party deferred revenue related to this contract will be recognized over the estimated period of continuing involvement. If the repayment obligations are triggered as of December 31, 2012, the related party deferred revenue related to this contract will be repaid to BSC Neuro.

The agreement includes research and development service performance requirements. The Company has recorded deferred research and development services revenue along with the related costs (charged to expense) on a gross basis since the Company is obligated and bears all credit risk with respect to the cost of providing the services.

Future product royalty income related to the agreement will be recognized as the related products are sold and amounts are due to the Company.

- *Related Party Revenue Recognition under BSC Cardiac Agreement (Note 5)*—The Company analyzed whether the components of the arrangement represent separate units of accounting as defined by GAAP. Application of these standards requires management to make subjective judgments about the value of the individual elements and whether delivered elements are separable from the other aspects of the contractual relationship. The Company determined it does not have clear and objective evidence of fair value of the various elements of the agreement and, therefore, under GAAP regarding Multiple-Element Arrangements, the deliverables are being treated as one unit of accounting.

The Company defers recognition of non-refundable upfront license fees if there are continuing performance obligations without which the technology, know-how, rights, products or services conveyed in conjunction with the non-refundable fees have no utility to the licensee that could be considered separate and independent of the Company's performance under other elements of the arrangement. Since the Company has continuing involvement through research and development services that is required because the Company's know-how and expertise related to the technology are proprietary to the Company, such upfront fees are deferred and recognized over the estimated period of continuing involvement on a straight line basis.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

Amounts to be received related to substantive, performance-based milestones in research and development arrangements are recognized upon receipt in accordance with the Company's revenue recognition policy.

Future product royalty income related to the agreement will be recognized as the related products are sold and amounts are due to the Company.

*Costs of Withdrawn IPO*

In December 2009, the Company filed a registration statement with the SEC relating to the initial public offering ("IPO") of shares of the Company's common stock. In September 2010 the Company made the decision to withdraw its registration statement and to cancel the planned IPO. Costs which had been deferred during 2009 totaling \$366,503 and costs incurred during 2010 related to the IPO effort are recorded as costs of withdrawn IPO in the statement of operations for the nine months ended September 30, 2010.

*Net Loss Per Share*

The Company calculated net loss per share in accordance with ASC 260, Earnings per Share. Basic earnings per share ("EPS") is calculated by dividing the net income or loss attributable to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the period, without consideration for common stock equivalents. Diluted EPS is computed by dividing the net income or loss attributable to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the period plus the weighted average number of dilutive common stock equivalents outstanding for the period determined using the treasury stock method. For all periods presented, diluted net loss per share is the same as basic net loss per share. The following table sets forth potential shares of common stock issuable that are not included in the calculation of diluted net loss per share because to do so would be anti-dilutive as of the end of each period presented:

	<u>September 30,</u>	
	<u>2011</u>	<u>2010</u>
Stock options	3,687,477	667,277
Warrants	1,520,986	435,986
Convertible preferred shares	1,991,250	1,991,250
Shares under convertible note agreements	4,529,043	985,844
	<u>11,728,756</u>	<u>4,080,357</u>

This table excludes shares issuable under convertible note agreements where the conversion terms are contingent upon a future event related to the Company becoming a public reporting entity (see Note 9).



**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

*Share-Based Compensation*

The Company accounts for compensation for all arrangements under which employees and others receive shares of stock or other equity instruments (including options and warrants) in accordance with ASC Topic 718 "Compensation – Stock Compensation", or ASC Topic 718. Under ASC Topic 718, the fair value of each award is estimated and amortized as compensation expense over the requisite service period. The fair value of the Company's share-based options and warrants is estimated on the grant date using the Black-Scholes valuation model. This valuation model requires the input of highly subjective assumptions, including the expected stock, stock price volatility and estimated option term. To estimate the expected term, the Company utilizes the "simplified" method for "plain vanilla" options as discussed within the Securities and Exchange Commission's Staff Accounting Bulletin 107, or SAB 107. The Company believes that all factors listed within SAB 107 as pre-requisites for utilizing the simplified method are true for the Company and for the Company's share-based compensation arrangements. The Company intends to utilize the simplified method for the foreseeable future until more detailed information about exercise behavior becomes available.

The Company utilizes risk-free interest rates based on a zero-coupon U.S. treasury instrument, the term of which is consistent with the expected term of the stock options. The Company has not paid and does not anticipate paying cash dividends on its shares of common stock; therefore, the expected dividend yield is assumed to be zero.

No stock options were granted by the Company during the nine months ended September 30, 2011. During the nine months ended September 30, 2011 and 2010, stock-based compensation expense was \$757,200 and \$167,276, respectively. The Company records stock-based compensation expense on a straight-line basis over the vesting period. As of September 30, 2011, there was unrecognized compensation expense of \$2,056,772 related to outstanding stock options which is expected to be recognized over a weighted average period of approximately 2.1 years.

*Fair Value Determination of Privately-Held Equity Securities*

The fair values of the common stock, as well as the common stock underlying options and warrants, granted as compensation, or issued in connection with the settlement of liabilities, were estimated by management, with input from a third-party valuation specialist.

Determining the fair value of stock requires making complex and subjective judgments. The Company has used the income approach, the market approach, and the probability weighted expected return method to estimate the value of the enterprise for the dates on which securities are issued/granted and outstanding. The income approach was based on estimated future cash flows that utilized the Company's forecasts of revenue and costs. The assumptions underlying the revenue and cost estimates are consistent with the Company's business plan. The market approach was based on recent sales of the Company's common stock in privately negotiated transactions between

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**2. Summary of Significant Accounting Policies (continued)**

stockholders or the once anticipated IPO price of the Company's common stock. Once the Company began the process of preparing for its IPO, the Company began to utilize the probability weighted expected return method, which was based on identifying the most likely liquidity events for the Company, the probability of each occurring, and the equity values for each after applying different percentages to the likelihood of the different values assigned to each anticipated outcome of those events. Once the Company's planned IPO was withdrawn in the third quarter of 2010, the Company thereafter used the income and market approaches previously discussed. The assumptions used in each of the different valuation methods take into account certain discounts such as selecting the appropriate discount rate and control and lack of marketability discounts. The discount rates used in these valuations ranged from 22% to 35%. The discounts for lack of marketability ranged from 15% to 35% and the discount for lack of control ranged from 20% to 30%. If different discount rates or lack of marketability and control discounts had been used, the valuations would have been different. The enterprise value under each valuation method was allocated to preferred and common shares taking into account the enterprise value available to all stockholders and allocating that value among the various classes of stock based on the rights, privileges, and preferences of the respective classes in order to provide an estimate of the fair value of a share of the Company's common stock. There is inherent uncertainty in these estimates.

*Recent Accounting Pronouncements*

In May 2011, the Financial Accounting Standards Board, or FASB, issued additional guidance on fair value measurements. The updated guidance provides a consistent definition of fair value and aligns the fair value measurement and disclosure requirements between U.S. GAAP and International Financial Reporting Standards, or IFRS, amends certain guidance primarily related to fair value measurements for financial instruments, and enhances disclosure requirements particularly for Level 3 fair value measurements. The guidance is effective prospectively for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2011 and interim periods within those years. Early adoption is permitted. The Company does not expect the adoption of this guidance will have a material impact on our financial statements.

In June 2011, the FASB issued new accounting guidance related to the presentation of comprehensive income that increases comparability between U.S. GAAP and International Financial Reporting Standards. This guidance will require companies to present the components of net income and other comprehensive income either as one continuous statement or as two consecutive statements, eliminating the option to present components of other comprehensive income as part of the statement of changes in stockholders' equity. Public entities are required to apply this guidance for fiscal years and interim periods within those years, beginning after December 15, 2011. Nonpublic entities should begin applying these requirements for fiscal years ending after December 15, 2012, and interim and annual periods thereafter. The Company does not believe the adoption of this guidance will have a material impact on its results of operations or financial position.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**3. Inventory**

Inventory consists of the following:

	<u>September 30,</u> <u>2011</u>	<u>December 31,</u> <u>2010</u>
Work in process	\$ 555,332	\$ 662,988
Software	537,000	664,300
Finished goods	128,935	283,154
	<u>\$1,221,267</u>	<u>\$1,610,442</u>

**4. Property and Equipment**

Property and equipment consist of the following:

	<u>September 30,</u> <u>2011</u>	<u>December 31,</u> <u>2010</u>
Equipment	\$ 924,806	\$ 906,485
Furniture and fixtures	106,055	106,053
Leasehold improvements	157,236	157,236
Computer equipment and software	101,482	103,150
Loaned systems	522,325	173,870
	1,811,904	1,446,794
Less accumulated depreciation and amortization	<u>(702,988)</u>	<u>(467,285)</u>
Total property and equipment, net	<u>\$1,108,916</u>	<u>\$ 979,509</u>

Depreciation and software amortization expense for the nine months ended September 30, 2011 and 2010, was \$236,536, and \$178,848, respectively.

The Company may loan the reusable equipment and software components of a ClearPoint system to a customer. Any such customer uses the loaned ClearPoint system to perform procedures using ClearPoint disposable products which are purchased from the Company. Accordingly, the \$522,325 of loaned systems at September 30, 2011 represents the historical cost of ClearPoint reusable equipment and software transferred from inventory to property and equipment. Depreciation on loaned ClearPoint systems is computed using the straight-line method based on an estimated useful life of five years. At September 30, 2011, accumulated depreciation on loaned systems was \$38,961.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**5. Related Party License Agreements**

License and development agreements have been entered into with affiliates of Boston Scientific Corporation (“BSC”). Because an affiliate of BSC is a stockholder and has a representative on the Company’s board of directors, management has deemed all transactions with BSC and its affiliates to be of a related party nature.

*BSC Neuro Agreement*

On December 30, 2005, the Company entered into definitive license and development agreements (collectively, as amended, the “BSC Neuro Agreement”) with Advanced Bionics Corporation, an affiliate of BSC. Advanced Bionics Corporation subsequently changed its name to Boston Scientific Neuromodulation Corporation (“BSC Neuro”). Under the BSC Neuro Agreement, the Company granted BSC Neuro an exclusive commercial license with respect to certain of the Company’s owned and licensed intellectual property, in the neuromodulation field, to make, use, import, lease and sell neuro-related leads, neuro-related lead extensions, and neuro-related lead-type devices, such as implantable pulse generators. The Company has continuing research and development obligations pursuant to the BSC Neuro Agreement with respect to the development of MRI-compatible and MRI-safe implantable neuromodulation leads.

Under the BSC Neuro Agreement, in addition to prospective royalty payments on net sales of licensed products, the Company could receive up to \$1,600,000 in future milestone-based payments associated with successful development and regulatory approval of the leads (see Note 10 for modification of these terms). The Company did not receive any up-front license payments pursuant to this agreement. In addition, the Company could receive over \$500,000 in incentive payments for incremental development work BSC Neuro may request. This agreement requires specified milestones in the development of an MRI-safe implantable lead to be achieved by December 31, 2012. If the milestones are not achieved by that date and this failure is not the result of BSC Neuro’s failure to reasonably cooperate with the Company in pursuing the milestones, the Company will be required to repay BSC Neuro certain amounts, including any development expenses and milestone payments previously made to the Company under this agreement and any patent prosecution costs incurred by BSC Neuro with respect to the intellectual property licensed under this agreement. As of September 30, 2011, the Company had received approximately \$750,000 of payments from BSC Neuro which would be subject to the repayment obligation described above. In addition, the Company would be responsible to reimburse BSC Neuro for out of pocket costs incurred by BSC Neuro in prosecuting patent applications and maintaining issued patents for the licensed technologies. As discussed in Note 2, Revenue Recognition, all amounts received have been recorded as deferred revenue.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**5. Related Party License Agreements (continued)**

*BSC Cardiac Agreement*

Effective March 19, 2008, the Company entered into definitive license and development agreements (collectively the “BSC Cardiac Agreement”) with Cardiac Pacemakers, Inc. (“BSC Cardiac”), an affiliate of BSC. Under the BSC Cardiac Agreement, the Company granted BSC Cardiac an exclusive commercial license with respect to certain of the Company’s owned and licensed intellectual property rights, in the field of implantable medical leads for cardiac applications, to make, have made, use, promote, market, import, distribute, lease, sell, offer for sale and commercialize products in the licensed field of use. The Company is required to continue to investigate the feasibility of its technology and, upon successful completion of feasibility studies, to work with BSC Cardiac to develop this technology for different types of MRI-compatible and MRI-safe implantable cardiac leads.

Pursuant to the BSC Cardiac Agreement, in addition to prospective royalty payments on net sales of licensed products, the Company received non-refundable licensing fees totaling \$13,000,000 in 2008, and the Company could receive up to \$20,000,000 in future milestone-based payments associated with the successful development and regulatory approval of the implantable cardiac leads, subject to certain patents being issued on patent applications licensed to BSC Cardiac. The Company initially recorded the payment as deferred revenue and is recognizing revenue over the five year estimated period of continuing involvement (see Note 2, Revenue Recognition). The Company determined the five year estimated period of continuing involvement based upon the Company’s internal development plan and projected timeline for the different implantable cardiac leads. The Company reevaluates it’s estimated remaining period of continuing involvement at each reporting period, and any changes would be incorporated into the determination of revenue recognition on a prospective basis.

Except as set forth below, the licensing provisions of the BSC Cardiac Agreement will terminate upon the expiration of the last issued patent that is licensed under the agreement, and the development provisions of the BSC Cardiac Agreement will expire upon FDA approval of a design for each of the different lead types described in the agreement. BSC Cardiac has the one-time option, within 60 days after successful completion of the first cardiac lead feasibility study, to cease further development work and to terminate the provisions of the BSC Cardiac Agreement. If BSC Cardiac elects to exercise its option under the BSC Cardiac Agreement to terminate further development efforts, the license the Company granted to BSC Cardiac will automatically become non-exclusive with respect to certain of the intellectual property, other intellectual property will be removed from the scope of the license and revert to the Company, and BSC Cardiac will not be obligated to pay the Company any future royalties on net sales of products containing intellectual property that remains subject to the non-exclusive license. Likewise, any unachieved future milestone-based payments will not be due to the Company.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**5. Related Party License Agreements (continued)**

Remaining related party deferred revenue is presently expected to be recognized as revenue as follows:

<u>Years ending December 31, (except as noted below)</u>	
2011 (October through December)	\$ 650,000
2012	2,600,000
2013	<u>1,396,374</u>
	<u>\$4,646,374</u>

**6. Related Party Notes Payable**

*BSC Convertible Notes Payable*

In October 2009, the Company entered into a convertible note payable arrangement with BSC. During October, November and December of 2009, the Company borrowed an aggregate of \$3,500,000 from BSC under this arrangement. These borrowings bear interest at 10% per year and mature on the second anniversary of the date on which the funds were advanced (October through December 2011 – however, see Note 10 regarding modification of these terms).

The Company will be required to prepay all or a portion of the convertible notes payable (the “BSC Notes”) upon the consummation of any qualified financing, which is defined as any equity financing in which shares of the Company’s preferred stock are issued in exchange for cash proceeds. Upon consummation of a qualified financing from Medtronic, Inc., St. Jude Medical, Inc., or Johnson & Johnson, or any of their respective subsidiaries or affiliates, up to 100% of the cash proceeds from such qualified financing must be used to prepay the outstanding principal and accrued interest of the BSC Notes. Upon consummation of a qualified financing from any other investor, up to 25% of the cash proceeds from such qualified financing must be applied by the Company to prepay the outstanding principal and accrued interest of the BSC Notes. The Company can prepay the BSC Notes at any time.

The principal and interest outstanding on each of the BSC Notes is convertible, at the option of the holder, at any time prior to the earlier of the maturity date or the consummation of a qualified initial public offering (a bona fide first underwritten public offering of the Company’s common stock on a firm commitment basis in which the aggregate gross proceeds received by the Company at the public offering price equals or exceeds \$20,000,000) into one share of the Company’s preferred stock at a conversion price equal to the lower of \$8.00 per share, or the price per share paid by investors in a future preferred stock financing conducted by the Company prior to the qualified initial public offering. The BSC Notes are secured by a first priority security interest in all of the Company’s assets.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**6. Related Party Notes Payable (continued)**

The Company analyzed the terms of the conversion feature of the BSC Notes under ASC Topic 815 and determined, based upon the conversion price reset provision that the conversion feature should be accounted for as a derivative liability (see Note 2, Fair Value Measurements). Under this guidance the conversion feature was initially measured at fair value upon the issuance of the BSC Notes and has been adjusted to the current fair value at the end of each reporting period. Changes in fair value are recorded as other income (expense) in the related statement of operations. The Company calculated the fair value of this derivative liability utilizing the Black-Scholes pricing model. The assumptions used in calculating the fair value of the derivative liability using this model as of the transaction date and September 30, 2011 were as follows:

	September 30, 2011	Transaction Date
Dividend yield	0%	0%
Expected volatility	42.64%	38.28%
Risk free interest rate	0.25%	1.14%
Expected remaining term	0.15 years	2 years
Common stock price	\$ 0.60	\$ 9.64

On the transaction date, the fair value of the derivative liability was \$1,227,500. At December 31, 2010 (and thereafter), the fair value of the derivative liability was \$0 (using Level 3 Inputs). The \$1,163,675 decrease in fair value during the nine months ended September 30, 2010 was recorded as a gain in the statement of operations.

The proceeds from the transaction were allocated as follows:

<b>Financial Instrument:</b>	
Related party convertible notes payable	\$2,272,500
Derivative liability	<u>1,227,500</u>
	<u>\$3,500,000</u>

The discount on the BSC Notes is being amortized through charges to interest expense based upon the effective interest method through the date of maturity. The unamortized discount at September 30, 2011 was \$85,777.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**6. Related Party Notes Payable (continued)**

*2011 Unsecured Convertible Notes Payable*

In June through September 2011, the Company issued unsecured convertible notes (the "Summer 2011 Notes") in the aggregate amount of \$1,310,000 to six non-employee directors of the Company. The note holders also received common stock warrants. The Summer 2011 Notes mature two years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at 15% per year. The warrants vest immediately, have a term of five years, and have an exercise price of \$0.01 per share. Upon consummation of an initial public offering of shares of the Company's common stock, the Summer 2011 Notes will convert automatically into shares of the Company's common stock at a conversion price equal to 60% of the public offering price. In the event the Company consummates a reverse merger of the Company into a public shell company, the holders of the Summer 2011 Notes may convert their notes into shares of the Company's common stock based on a conversion price equal to 60% of the fair market value of the Company's common stock at the time of the merger. In addition, if the Company completes a reverse merger transaction with a public shell company and thereafter closes an equity financing that results in gross proceeds of at least \$5,000,000, the Summer 2011 Notes will convert automatically, to the extent not previously converted, into the shares of stock that are issued in the financing at a conversion price equal to 60% of the price paid by investors in the financing. The Summer 2011 Notes were amended in December 2011 to provide that the principal and all accrued interest under the notes will automatically convert into shares of the Company's common stock upon the effectiveness of a Form 10 registration statement filed with the SEC based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share.

The Company analyzed the terms of the warrants based on the provisions of ASC Topic 480 and determined that they qualified for equity accounting. Under guidance in ASC 470, the Company allocated the \$1,310,000 in proceeds proportionately between the Summer 2011 Notes and the common stock warrants issued based on their relative fair values. The relative fair value of the common stock warrants of \$486,102 was recorded as additional paid in capital. The Summer 2011 Notes were recorded at the principal amount of \$1,310,000 less a discount of \$486,102. This discount is being amortized to interest expense over the term of the Summer 2011 Notes using the effective interest method. The fair value of the notes was estimated based on an assumed market interest rate for notes of similar terms and risk. The fair value of the \$0.01 common stock warrants was determined by using the Black-Scholes pricing model. The assumptions used in calculating the fair value of the warrants were a dividend yield of 0%, expected volatility of approximately 43%, risk free interest rates between 0.21% and 0.45%, an expected term of 2 years, and the price of the Company's common stock to be \$0.60. The Company determined the fair value of its common stock to be \$0.60 per share at each of the dates the warrants were issued. Therefore the fair value of each common stock warrant was equal to \$0.59, or the fair value of the Company's common stock less the exercise price of the warrant.



**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**7. 2010 Unsecured Convertible Notes Payable**

In March 2010, the Company issued 10% senior unsecured convertible notes (the "March 2010 Notes") in the aggregate principal amount of \$4,071,000. The March 2010 Notes contain a mandatory conversion feature upon the closing of an initial public offering of the Company's common stock that will automatically convert the March 2010 Notes into shares of the Company's common stock at the lesser of \$8.00 per share or 80% of the offering price, subject to a minimum \$4.00 per share conversion price. In addition, holders of the March 2010 Notes may convert the outstanding principal amount of their March 2010 Notes into shares of the Company's common stock at any time, based on a conversion price of \$8.00 per share, subject to certain adjustments. The March 2010 Notes mature two years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at the rate of 10% per year. All accrued interest will be paid in cash upon the earlier to occur of maturity or conversion and will not be converted into shares of the Company's common stock.

The Company applied the guidance in ASC 815-40, "Derivatives and Hedging Contracts in an Entity's Own Equity," in determining that the conversion features of the March 2010 Notes did not require derivative liability accounting treatment. The Company relied upon guidance in ASC 470-20, "Debt with Conversion and Other Options," in determining that the non-mandatory conversion feature represented a beneficial conversion feature ("BCF") that should be recorded as equity based on its intrinsic value. Upon the issuance of the March 2010 Notes, the intrinsic value of the BCF was \$834,555 which represents the difference between the estimated fair value at the date of issuance of \$9.64 per common share and the conversion price of \$8.00 per share multiplied by the number of conversion shares. This BCF was recorded as debt discount, which is being amortized to interest expense using the effective interest method over the term of the March 2010 Notes.

The Company incurred approximately \$293,000 of costs related to the issuance of the March 2010 Notes, comprised of placement agent commissions and legal fees. In addition, warrants with a five year term were issued to the placement agent exercisable for 25,444 shares of the Company's common stock at a price equal to the lesser of \$8.00 per share or 80% of the offering price in the Company's initial public offering, subject to a minimum \$4.00 per share conversion price. The estimated fair value of the placement agent warrants at the date of issuance was \$120,218. The total costs incurred in connection with the issuance of the March 2010 Notes of approximately \$413,000 were capitalized as deferred financing costs and are being amortized using the effective interest method over the term of the March 2010 Notes. The unamortized balance at September 30, 2011, which is included in deferred costs, is \$103,690.

See Note 10 regarding the December 2011 modification of the conversion provisions for certain of these notes.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**8. 2010 Junior Secured Notes Payable**

In November 2010, the Company issued an aggregate of 10,714,286 units in a private placement and received proceeds of \$3,000,000. Each unit consisted of a junior secured note and one share of the Company's common stock. The units were sold to existing stockholders and holders of other Company securities. The Company issued 10,714,286 shares of common stock and junior secured notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$3,000,000. The notes mature 10 years from the date of issuance and accrue interest at the rate of 3.5% per year. The notes are secured by a security interest in the assets of the Company. This security interest is junior to that of the security interests associated with the BSC Notes (Note 6) and the April 2011 Note (Note 9). The 2010 Unit Offering notes are not convertible into shares of the Company's common stock or any other Company securities. All outstanding principal and interest on the notes will be due and payable in a single payment upon maturity.

Under guidance in ASC 470, the Company allocated the \$3,000,000 in proceeds from the sale of the units proportionately between the junior secured notes and the shares of common stock issued based on their relative fair values with \$2,775,300 being recorded as equity. The junior secured notes were recorded at the principal amount of \$3,000,000 less a discount of \$2,775,300. This discount is being amortized to interest expense over the 10 year term of the notes using the effective interest method. The fair value of the notes was estimated based on an assumed market interest rate for notes of similar terms and risk. The fair value of the Company's common stock was estimated by management using a market approach, with input from a third-party valuation specialist.

Four officers of the Company purchased an aggregate of 882,726 units in the offering for \$247,164. In addition, three non-employee directors of the Company also purchased an aggregate of 567,203 units for \$158,816 in the offering.

Five other non-employee directors had advanced a total of \$190,000 to the Company in anticipation of the offering. However, due to the investment allocations for the offering, these five non-employee directors were not able to purchase units. All funds advanced to the Company by the five non-employee directors were returned, without interest, \$90,000 of which was returned prior to December 31, 2010 and \$100,000 of which was returned in January 2011. This \$100,000 is included in other accrued current liabilities at December 31, 2010.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**9. 2011 Junior Secured Convertible Note Payable and Strategic Agreement**

In April 2011, the Company issued a \$2,000,000 subordinated secured convertible note (“April 2011 Note”) to a medical device co-development partner (“Strategic Partner”). The April 2011 Note matures in April 2016, unless earlier converted, and it accrues interest at the rate of 10% per year. Interest is payable at maturity if the note is not converted. The April 2011 Note is secured by a security interest in the assets of the Company subordinate to the security interest associated with the BSC Notes (Note 6). In the event the Company closes a qualified financing, which is defined as an equity financing in which the Company issues shares of its preferred stock and receives at least \$10,000,000 in net proceeds, the principal and accrued interest of the April 2011 Note will automatically convert into shares of preferred stock that are issued in the qualified financing if the number of shares to be issued upon conversion represents at least 10% of the Company’s outstanding shares of stock on a fully diluted basis. If the number of shares that would be issued upon conversion represents less than 10% of the Company’s outstanding shares of stock on a fully diluted basis, the conversion would be at the Strategic Partner’s election. Under the original terms, the Strategic Partner had the right to accelerate the maturity date of the April 2011 Note if the Company did not consummate a qualified financing within 180 days of the issuance of the note. The terms of the April 2011 Note were amended in September 2011 to extend the timeline within which to complete a qualified financing from 180 days to 360 days (April 2012). In addition, the terms of the April 2011 Note were amended in September 2011 to establish a maximum conversion price of \$0.60 per share. Accordingly, the conversion price under the April 2011 Note will be the lesser of the price paid by investors in a qualified financing or \$0.60 per share (again, contingent upon the completion of a qualified preferred stock financing).

Concurrent with the issuance of the April 2011 Note, the Company and the Strategic Partner entered into a Co-Development and Distribution Agreement pursuant to which the Company appointed the Strategic Partner as the exclusive distributor of the Company’s ClearPoint system products in the neurological drug delivery field and a non-exclusive distributor of the Company’s ClearPoint system products for other neurological applications. In connection with the Co-Development and Distribution Agreement, the Company is obligated to perform a limited amount of training and support functions. In addition, under the Co-Development and Distribution Agreement, the Company licensed certain ClearPoint system technology to the Strategic Partner and will work together to potentially integrate the Company’s ClearPoint product line into the Strategic Partner’s interventional MRI product line, particularly for a neurological drug delivery application.

Relying upon guidance in ASC 605-25, the Company analyzed whether the deliverables of the agreement represent separate units of accounting. Application of these standards requires subjective determinations and requires management to make judgments about the value of the individual elements and whether delivered elements are separable from the other aspects of the contractual relationship. The Company determined that the April 2011 Note was the only the element of the arrangement that had standalone value to the Strategic Partner separate from the other elements; thus, the Company accounted for arrangement in two units of accounting. The distribution, license, service, and support elements of the arrangement did not have value to the Strategic Partner on an individual basis, but together these elements

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**9. 2011 Junior Secured Convertible Note Payable and Strategic Agreement (continued)**

did have value to the Strategic Partner and, therefore, represent a unit of accounting. The Company applied the relative selling price method to determine the relative value to associate with each unit of accounting. The method establishes a hierarchy of factors to consider when determining relative selling price which are use of vendor specific objective evidence if it exists, third-party evidence of selling price, or lastly, management's best estimate of the selling price. Because of the unique nature of the rights conveyed, there was no vendor specific objective evidence or third party evidence of relative selling price. Therefore, Company was required to use its best estimate of the relative selling price of the deliverables comprising each unit of accounting. The Company determined the relative selling price of the unit of accounting associated distribution, license, service, and support elements to be zero as the Company would have conveyed these rights and assumed these obligations in exchange for the potential benefits from leveraging the distribution function of the Strategic Partner (i.e. sales to the Strategic Partner are expected to yield similar net profits to those the Company generates on its direct customer sales). The other unit of accounting is comprised of the April 2011 Note with its junior security interest. The conversion feature associated with the note was not accorded any accounting treatment since this a contingent feature completely subject to the completion of a qualified financing, which is not considered to be within the Company's control. Therefore, the full \$2,000,000 in cash proceeds has been recorded as a liability related to the April 2011 Note .

**10. Subsequent Events**

*Filing of Form 10 Registration Statement*

In December 2011, the Company filed a Form 10 registration statement with the Securities and Exchange Commission to register the Company's common stock as a class of equity securities under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"). Upon the effectiveness of the Form 10 registration statement, the Company will become a public reporting company subject to the periodic reporting requirements of the Exchange Act.

*Modification of Terms of 2010 Unsecured Convertible Notes Payable (Note 7)*

Subsequent to September 30, 2011, the majority of the holders of the March 2010 Notes agreed to a change in the conversion terms of their notes. When issued, the March 2010 Notes did not provide for conversion into shares of the Company's common stock upon the effectiveness of a registration statement filed under the Exchange Act, such as a Form 10 registration statement. However, as of December 27, 2011, holders of \$3,381,000 in principal amount of the March 2010 Notes have amended their notes to provide for the automatic conversion of their notes, including the principal and all accrued interest, into shares of the Company's common stock upon the effectiveness of the Company's Form 10 registration statement, based on a conversion price of \$1.00 per share.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**  
**Notes to Condensed Financial Statements**  
**September 30, 2011**  
**(Unaudited)**

**10. Subsequent Events (continued)**

*Modification to Terms of Related Party BSC Notes Payable (Note 6) and BSC Neuro Agreement (Note 5)*

Effective February 2, 2012, the Company entered into a loan modification with BSC pursuant to which (i) interest accrued under each of the BSC Notes as of February 2, 2012 was added to the principal balance of the note, (ii) beginning February 2, 2012, the interest rate of each of the BSC Notes was reduced from 10% per annum to 0%, and (iii) the maturity date of each of the BSC Notes was extended by three years (October through December 2014). While the BSC Notes remain outstanding, the Company must meet certain net working capital targets, be current on its payroll obligations, and not suffer an event of default under any indebtedness for borrowed money. If those requirements are not met, the Company will be required to assign certain patents and patent applications to BSC. However, upon any such assignments to BSC, BSC will grant to the Company an exclusive, royalty-free, perpetual worldwide license to the same patents and patent applications. In connection with the modification of the BSC Notes, the Company also agreed to an amendment of the BSC Neuro Agreement which, among other things, reduces the aggregate future milestone-based payments the Company could receive from \$1,600,000 to \$800,000.

*Private Placement*

In October 2011, the Company began a private placement of its securities in which the Company is offering units, with each unit consisting of a 10% secured convertible note in the principal amount of \$100,000 and a warrant to purchase 50,000 shares of the Company's common stock. The notes mature three years from the date of issuance, unless earlier converted, and accrue interest at 10% per year. The notes are secured by a security interest in the assets of the Company. The notes, including the principal and all accrued interest, will convert automatically into shares of the Company's common stock upon the effectiveness of a Form 10 registration statement filed under the Exchange Act, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share. In addition, a note holder may elect at any time to convert the note into shares of the Company's common stock, based on a conversion price of \$0.60 per share. The warrants are immediately vested, have a term of five years, and have an exercise price of \$0.75 per share. As of February 7, 2012, in its unit offering the Company had issued notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$2,702,000. The Company's placement agent for the unit offering will receive a cash fee equal to 10% of the gross proceeds, as well as a warrant to purchase that number of shares of the Company's common stock equal to 8% of the number of shares of common stock issuable upon conversion of the notes and exercise of the warrants sold in the offering, at an exercise price of \$0.60 per share.

---

[Table of Contents](#)

**SIGNATURES**

Pursuant to the requirements of the Section 12 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, MRI Interventions, Inc. has duly caused this Amendment No. 1 to The Registration Statement on Form 10 to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of Memphis, State of Tennessee, on the 8th day of February, 2012.

**MRI Interventions, Inc.**

By: /s/ KIMBLE L. JENKINS \_\_\_\_\_

**Kimble L. Jenkins**

*Chief Executive Officer*

*(principal executive officer)*

**AMENDED AND RESTATED BYLAWS  
OF  
MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.  
(the “Corporation”)**

**ARTICLE I  
OFFICES**

1.1 Registered Office. The address of the registered office of this Corporation in the State of Delaware is 1209 Orange Street, City of Wilmington, County of New Castle, Zip Code 19801, and the name of the registered agent of this Corporation in the State of Delaware at such address is The Corporation Trust Company.

1.2 Other Offices. The Corporation shall also have and maintain an office or principal place of business at such place as may be fixed by the Board of Directors, and may also have offices at such other places, both within and without the State of Delaware, as the Board of Directors may from time to time determine or the business of the Corporation may require.

**ARTICLE II  
CORPORATE SEAL**

2.1 Corporate Seal. The Corporation may have a corporate seal, which may be adopted or altered at the pleasure of the Board of Directors, and the Corporation may use such seal by causing it or a facsimile thereof to be impressed or affixed or in any other manner reproduced.

**ARTICLE III  
STOCKHOLDERS’ MEETINGS**

3.1 Place of Meetings. Meetings of the stockholders of the Corporation may be held at such place, either within or without the State of Delaware, as may be determined from time to time by the Board of Directors, or, if not so designated, then at the office of the Corporation required to be maintained pursuant to Section 1.2 hereof.

3.2 Annual Meetings.

(a) The annual meeting of the stockholders of the Corporation, for the purpose of election of directors and for such other business as may lawfully come before it, shall be held on such date and at such time as may be designated from time to time by the Board of Directors. Nominations of persons for election to the Board of Directors of the Corporation and the proposal of business to be considered by the stockholders may be made at an annual meeting of stockholders: (i) pursuant to the Corporation’s notice with respect to such meeting; (ii) by or at the direction of the Board of Directors; or (iii) by any stockholder of the Corporation who was a stockholder of record at the time of giving the stockholder’s notice provided for in the following subsection (b), who is entitled to vote at the meeting and who complied with the notice procedures set forth below in this Section 3.2.

---

(b) At an annual meeting of the stockholders, only such business shall be conducted as shall have been properly brought before the meeting. For nominations or other business to be properly brought before an annual meeting by a stockholder pursuant to Section 3.2(a)(iii) above, (i) the stockholder must have given timely notice thereof in writing to the Secretary of the Corporation, (ii) such other business must be a proper matter for stockholder action under Delaware General Corporation Law (“DGCL”), and (iii) if the stockholder, or the beneficial owner on whose behalf any such proposal or nomination is made, has provided the Corporation with a Solicitation Notice (as defined below in Section 3.2(d)(iii)(C)(2)), such stockholder or beneficial owner must, in the case of a proposal, have delivered a proxy statement and form of proxy to holders of at least the percentage of the Corporation’s voting shares required under applicable law or the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws to carry any such proposal, or, in the case of a nomination or nominations, have delivered a proxy statement and form of proxy to holders of a percentage of the Corporation’s voting shares reasonably believed by such stockholder or beneficial owner to be sufficient to elect the nominee or nominees proposed to be nominated by such stockholder, and must, in either case, have included in such materials the Solicitation Notice.

(c) To be timely, a stockholder’s notice shall be delivered to the Secretary at the principal executive offices of the Corporation not later than the close of business on the ninetieth (90<sup>th</sup>) day, nor earlier than the close of business on the one hundred twentieth (120<sup>th</sup>) day, prior to the first anniversary of the date of the proxy statement delivered to stockholders in connection with the preceding year’s annual meeting; provided, however, that in the event (i) the date of the annual meeting is advanced more than thirty (30) days prior to or delayed by more than thirty (30) days after the anniversary of the preceding year’s annual meeting, (ii) no proxy statement was delivered to stockholders in connection with the preceding year’s annual meeting, or (iii) the Corporation did not hold an annual meeting in the preceding year, notice by the stockholder to be timely must be so delivered not earlier than the close of business on the ninetieth (90<sup>th</sup>) day prior to such annual meeting and not later than the close of business on the later of the sixtieth (60<sup>th</sup>) day prior to such annual meeting or the tenth (10<sup>th</sup>) day following the day on which public announcement of the date of such meeting is first made. In no event shall the public announcement of an adjournment of an annual meeting commence a new time period for the giving of a stockholder’s notice as described above.

(d) Such stockholder’s notice shall set forth:

(i) as to each person whom the stockholder proposes to nominate for election or reelection as a director, all information relating to such person that is required to be disclosed in solicitations of proxies for election of directors, or is otherwise required, in each case pursuant to Regulation 14A under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “1934 Act”) (including such person’s written consent to being named in the proxy statement as a nominee and to serving as a director if elected);

(ii) as to any other business that the stockholder proposes to bring before the meeting, a brief description of the business desired to be brought before the meeting, the reasons for conducting such business at the meeting and any material interest in such business of such stockholder and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the proposal is made; and



---

(iii) as to the stockholder giving the notice and the beneficial owner, if any, on whose behalf the nomination or proposal is made:

(A) the name and address of such stockholder, as they appear on the Corporation's books, and of such beneficial owner,

(B)(1) the class and number of shares of the Corporation which are owned beneficially and of record by such stockholder and such beneficial owner, (2) any option, warrant, convertible security, stock appreciation right, or similar right with an exercise or conversion privilege or a settlement payment or mechanism at a price related to any class or series of shares of the Corporation or with a value derived in whole or in part from the value of any class or series of shares of the Corporation, whether such instrument or right shall be subject to settlement in the underlying class or series of capital stock of the Corporation or otherwise (a "Derivative Instrument") directly or indirectly owned beneficially by such stockholder and such beneficial owner and any other direct or indirect opportunity to profit or share in any profit derived from any increase or decrease in the value of shares of the Corporation, (3) any proxy, contract, arrangement, understanding, or relationship pursuant to which such stockholder has a right to vote any shares of any security of the Corporation, (4) any short interest in any security of the Corporation (for purposes of this Bylaw a person shall be deemed to have a short interest in a security if such person directly or indirectly, through any contract, arrangement, understanding, relationship or otherwise, has the opportunity to profit or share in any profit derived from any decrease in the value of the subject security) held directly or indirectly by such stockholder and such beneficial owner, (5) any rights to dividends on the shares of the Corporation owned beneficially and of record by such stockholder and such beneficial owner that are separated or separable from the underlying shares of the Corporation, (6) any proportionate interest in shares of the Corporation or Derivative Instruments held, directly or indirectly, by a general or limited partnership in which such stockholder or such beneficial owner is a general partner or, directly or indirectly, beneficially owns an interest in a general partner and (7) any performance-related fees (other than an asset-based fee) that such stockholder or such beneficial owner is entitled to based on any increase or decrease in the value of shares of the Corporation or Derivative Instruments, if any, as of the date of such notice, in each case including without limitation any such interests held by members of such stockholder's or such beneficial owner's immediate family sharing the same household (which information shall be supplemented by such stockholder and beneficial owner, if any, not later than 10 days after the record date for the meeting to disclose such ownership as of the record date),

(C) any other information relating to such stockholder and beneficial owner, if any, that would be required to be disclosed in a proxy statement or other filings required to be made in connection with solicitations of proxies for, as applicable, the proposal and/or for the election of directors in a contested election pursuant to Section 14 of the 1934 Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder,

(1) a description of all arrangements or understandings between the stockholder or beneficial owner and each proposed nominee and any other person or persons (including their names) pursuant to which the nomination(s) are to be made by such stockholder, and

---

(2) whether either such stockholder or beneficial owner intends to deliver a proxy statement and form of proxy to holders of, in the case of the proposal, at least the percentage of the Corporation's voting shares required under applicable law or the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws to carry the proposal or, in the case of a nomination or nominations, a sufficient number of holders of the Corporation's voting shares to elect such nominee or nominees (an affirmative statement of such intent, a "Solicitation Notice").

(e) Notwithstanding anything in Section 3.2(c) of these Bylaws (as the same may be amended and/or restated from time to time, the "Bylaws") to the contrary, in the event that the number of directors to be elected to the Board of Directors of the Corporation is increased and there is no public announcement naming all of the nominees for director or specifying the size of the increased Board of Directors made by the Corporation at least seventy (70) days prior to the first anniversary of the preceding year's annual meeting (or, if the annual meeting is held more than thirty (30) days before or thirty (30) days after such anniversary date, at least seventy (70) days prior to such annual meeting) a stockholder's notice required by this Section 3.2 shall also be considered timely, but only with respect to nominees for any new positions created by such increase, if it shall be delivered to the Secretary at the principal executive offices of the Corporation not later than the close of business on the tenth (10th) day following the day on which such public announcement is first made by the Corporation.

(f) Only such persons who are nominated in accordance with the procedures set forth in this Section 3.2 shall be eligible to serve as directors and only such business shall be conducted at a meeting of stockholders as shall have been brought before the meeting in accordance with the procedures set forth in this Section 3.2. Except as otherwise provided by law, the chairman of the meeting shall have the power and duty to determine whether a nomination or any business proposed to be brought before the meeting was made, or proposed, as the case may be, in accordance with the procedures set forth in these Bylaws and, if any proposed nomination or business is not in compliance with these Bylaws, to declare that such defective proposal or nomination shall not be presented for stockholder action at the meeting and shall be disregarded.

(g) Notwithstanding the foregoing provisions of this Section 3.2, in order to include information with respect to a stockholder proposal in the proxy statement and form of proxy for a stockholders' meeting, stockholders must provide notice as required by the regulations promulgated under the 1934 Act. Nothing in these Bylaws shall be deemed to affect any rights of stockholders to request inclusion of proposals in the Corporation's proxy statement pursuant to Rule 14a-8 under the 1934 Act.

(h) For purposes of these Bylaws, "public announcement" shall mean disclosure in a press release reported by the Dow Jones News Service, Associated Press, PR Newswire, Reuters or comparable national news service or in a document publicly filed by the Corporation with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission pursuant to Section 13, 14 or 15(d) of the 1934 Act.

### 3.3 Special Meetings.

(a) Special meetings of the stockholders of the Corporation may be called, for any purpose or purposes, only by (i) the Chairman of the Board of Directors, (ii) the Chief Executive Officer, or (iii) the Board of Directors pursuant to a resolution adopted by a majority of the directors then in office.

---

(b) If a special meeting is properly called by any person or persons other than the Board of Directors, the request shall be in writing, specifying the general nature of the business proposed to be transacted, and shall be delivered personally or sent by certified or registered mail, return receipt requested, to the Secretary of the Corporation. No business may be transacted at such special meeting otherwise than specified in such notice. The Board of Directors shall determine the time and place of such special meeting, which shall be held not less than thirty-five (35) nor more than one hundred twenty (120) days after the date of the receipt of the request. Upon determination of the time and place of the meeting, the Secretary shall cause notice to be given to the stockholders entitled to vote, in accordance with the provisions of Section 3.4 of these Bylaws. Nothing contained in this subsection (b) shall be construed as limiting, fixing, or affecting the time when a meeting of stockholders called by action of the Board of Directors may be held.

(c) Nominations of persons for election to the Board of Directors may be made at a special meeting of stockholders at which directors are to be elected pursuant to the Corporation's notice of meeting (i) by or at the direction of the Board of Directors or (ii) by any stockholder of the Corporation who is a stockholder of record at the time of giving notice provided for in these Bylaws who shall be entitled to vote at the meeting and who complies with the notice procedures set forth in this Section 3.3(c). In the event the Corporation calls a special meeting of stockholders for the purpose of electing one or more directors to the Board of Directors, any such stockholder may nominate a person or persons (as the case may be), for election to such position(s) as specified in the Corporation's notice of meeting, if the stockholder's notice otherwise required by Section 3.2 of these Bylaws shall be delivered to the Secretary at the principal executive offices of the Corporation not earlier than the close of business on the one hundred twentieth (120th) day prior to such special meeting and not later than the close of business on the later of the ninetieth (90th) day prior to such meeting or the tenth (10th) day following the day on which public announcement is first made of the date of the special meeting and of the nominees proposed by the Board of Directors to be elected at such meeting. In no event shall the public announcement of an adjournment of a special meeting commence a new time period for the giving of a stockholder's notice as described above.

(d) Unless the Corporation's Certificate of Incorporation (as the same may be amended and/or restated from time to time, the "Certificate of Incorporation") provides otherwise, any special meeting of the stockholders may be cancelled by resolution duly adopted by a majority of the directors then in office upon public notice given prior to the date previously scheduled for such meeting of stockholders.

3.4 Notice Of Meetings. Except as otherwise provided by law, notice, given in writing or by electronic transmission, of each meeting of stockholders shall be given not less than ten (10) nor more than sixty (60) days before the date of the meeting to each stockholder entitled to vote at such meeting, such notice to specify the place, date and hour of the meeting, the means of remote communication(s), if any, by which stockholders and proxyholders may be deemed to be present in person and vote at such meeting (as authorized by the Board of Directors in its sole discretion pursuant to Section 211(a)(2) of the DGCL), and, in the case of a special

---

meeting, the purpose or purposes of the meeting. Notice of any meeting of stockholders, if mailed, is given when deposited in the United States mail, postage prepaid, directed to the stockholder at such stockholder's address as it appears on the records of the Corporation and otherwise is given when delivered. Notice of the time, place, and purpose of any meeting of stockholders may be waived in writing, signed by the person entitled to notice thereof, or by electronic transmission by such person, either before or after such meeting, and will be waived by any stockholder by his attendance thereat in person or by proxy, except when the stockholder attends a meeting for the express purpose of objecting, at the beginning of the meeting, to the transaction of any business because the meeting is not lawfully called or convened. Any stockholder so waiving notice of such meeting shall be bound by the proceedings of any such meeting in all respects as if due notice thereof had been given. Neither the business to be transacted at, nor the purpose of, any annual or special meeting of the stockholders need be specified in any written waiver of notice or any waiver by electronic transmission.

3.5 Quorum. At all meetings of stockholders, except where otherwise provided by statute, the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws, the presence, in person or by proxy duly authorized, of the holders of a majority of the outstanding shares of stock entitled to vote shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business. In the absence of a quorum, any meeting of stockholders may be adjourned, from time to time, either by the chairman of the meeting or by vote of the holders of a majority of the shares represented thereat, but no other business shall be transacted at such meeting. The stockholders present at a duly called or convened meeting, at which a quorum is present, may continue to transact business until adjournment, notwithstanding the withdrawal of enough stockholders to leave less than a quorum. Except as otherwise provided by law or by applicable stock exchange rules, or by the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws, in all matters other than the election of directors, the affirmative vote of the majority of shares present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting and entitled to vote generally on the subject matter shall be the act of the stockholders. Except as otherwise provided by law, the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws, directors shall be elected by a plurality of the votes of the shares present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting and entitled to vote generally on the election of directors. Where a separate vote by a class or classes or series is required, except where otherwise provided by law or by the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws, a majority of the outstanding shares of such class or classes or series, present in person or represented by proxy duly authorized, shall constitute a quorum entitled to take action with respect to that vote on that matter. Except where otherwise provided by law or by the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws, the affirmative vote of the majority (plurality, in the case of the election of directors) of votes cast at the meeting shall be the act of such class or classes or series.

3.6 Adjournment And Notice Of Adjourned Meetings. Any meeting of stockholders, whether annual or special, may be adjourned from time to time either by the chairman of the meeting or by the vote of a majority of the shares present in person or represented by proxy at the meeting. When a meeting is adjourned to another time or place, notice need not be given of the adjourned meeting if the time and place thereof, and the means of remote communication(s), if any, by which stockholders and proxyholders may be deemed to be present in person and vote at such adjourned meeting (as authorized by the Board of Directors in its sole discretion pursuant to Section 211(a)(2) of the DGCL), are announced at the meeting at which the adjournment is

---

taken. At the adjourned meeting, the Corporation may transact any business which might have been transacted at the original meeting. If the adjournment is for more than thirty (30) days or if after the adjournment a new record date is fixed for the adjourned meeting, a notice of the adjourned meeting shall be given to each stockholder of record entitled to vote at the meeting.

3.7 Voting Rights. For the purpose of determining those stockholders entitled to vote at any meeting of the stockholders, except as otherwise provided by law, only persons in whose names shares stand on the stock records of the Corporation on the record date, as provided in Section 7.4 of these Bylaws, shall be entitled to vote at any meeting of stockholders. Every person entitled to vote shall have the right to do so either in person or by an agent or agents authorized by a proxy granted in accordance with the DGCL. An agent so appointed need not be a stockholder. No proxy shall be voted after three (3) years from its date of creation unless the proxy provides for a longer period.

3.8 Joint Owners of Stock. If shares or other securities having voting power stand of record in the names of two (2) or more persons, whether fiduciaries, members of a partnership, joint tenants, tenants in common, tenants by the entirety, or otherwise, or if two (2) or more persons have the same fiduciary relationship respecting the same shares, unless the Secretary is given written notice to the contrary and is furnished with a copy of the instrument or order appointing them or creating the relationship wherein it is so provided, their acts with respect to voting shall have the following effect: (a) if only one (1) votes, his act binds all; (b) if more than one (1) votes, the act of the majority so voting binds all; (c) if more than one (1) votes, but the vote is evenly split on any particular matter, each faction may vote the securities in question proportionally, or may apply to the Delaware Court of Chancery for relief as provided in Section 217(b) of the DGCL. If the instrument filed with the Secretary shows that any such tenancy is held in unequal interests, a majority or even-split for the purpose of clauses (b) and (c) shall be a majority or even-split in interest.

3.9 List of Stockholders. The Secretary shall prepare and make, at least ten (10) days before every meeting of stockholders, a complete list of the stockholders entitled to vote at said meeting, arranged in alphabetical order, showing the address of each stockholder and the number of shares registered in the name of each stockholder. Nothing contained in this Section 3.9 shall require the Corporation to include electronic mail addresses or other electronic contact information on such list. Such list shall be open to the examination of any stockholder, for any purpose germane to the meeting, (a) on a reasonably accessible electronic network, provided that the information required to gain access to such list is provided with the notice of the meeting, or (b) during ordinary business hours, at the principal place of business of the Corporation. In the event the Corporation determines to make the list available on an electronic network, the Corporation may take reasonable steps to ensure that such information is available only to stockholders of the Corporation. The list shall be open to examination of any stockholder during the time of the meeting as provided by law.

3.10 No Action Without Meeting. Any action required to be taken at any annual or special meeting of stockholders of the Corporation, or any action which may be taken at any annual or special meeting of such stockholders, may not be taken without a meeting.

---

### 3.11 Organization.

(a) At every meeting of stockholders, (i) the Chairman of the Board of Directors or, if a Chairman of the Board of Directors has not been appointed or is absent, (ii) the Chief Executive Officer or, if the Chief Executive Officer is absent, (iii) the President or, if the President is absent, (iv) such person as the Chairman of the Board of Directors shall appoint or, if such Chairman has not been appointed, (v) any officer of the Corporation chosen by the Board of Directors, shall act as chairman of the meeting. The Secretary, or, in his absence, such person appointed by the chairman of the meeting, shall act as secretary of the meeting.

(b) The Board of Directors shall, in advance of any meeting of stockholders, appoint one (1) or more inspector(s), who may include individual(s) who serve the Corporation in other capacities, including without limitation as officers, employees or agents, to act at the meeting of stockholders and make a written report thereof. The Board of Directors may designate one (1) or more persons as alternate inspector(s) to replace any inspector who fails to act. If no inspector or alternate has been appointed or is able to act at a meeting of stockholders, the chairman of the meeting shall appoint one (1) or more inspector(s) to act at the meeting. Each inspector, before discharging his duties, shall take and sign an oath to faithfully execute the duties of inspector with strict impartiality and according to the best of his ability. The inspector(s) or alternate(s) shall have the duties prescribed pursuant to Section 231 of the DGCL or other applicable law.

(c) The Board of Directors of the Corporation shall be entitled to make such rules or regulations for the conduct of meetings of stockholders as it shall deem necessary, appropriate or convenient. Subject to such rules and regulations of the Board of Directors, if any, the chairman of the meeting shall have the right and authority to prescribe such rules, regulations and procedures and to do all such acts as, in the judgment of such chairman, are necessary, appropriate or convenient for the proper conduct of the meeting, including, without limitation, establishing an agenda or order of business for the meeting, rules and procedures for maintaining order at the meeting and the safety of those present, limitations on participation in such meeting to stockholders of record of the Corporation and their duly authorized and constituted proxies and such other persons as the chairman shall permit, restrictions on entry to the meeting after the time fixed for the commencement thereof, limitations on the time allotted to questions or comments by participants and regulation of the opening and closing of the polls for balloting on matters which are to be voted on by ballot. The date and time of the opening and closing of the polls for each matter upon which the stockholders will vote at the meeting shall be announced at the meeting. Unless and to the extent determined by the Board of Directors or the chairman of the meeting, meetings of stockholders shall not be required to be held in accordance with rules of parliamentary procedure.

## **ARTICLE IV DIRECTORS**

4.1 Number and Qualifications. The authorized number of directors of the Corporation shall be fixed in accordance with the Certificate of Incorporation. Directors need not be stockholders unless so required by the Certificate of Incorporation. The Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws may prescribe other qualifications for directors.

---

4.2 Powers. The powers of the Corporation shall be exercised, its business conducted and its property controlled by the Board of Directors, except as may be otherwise provided by statute or by the Certificate of Incorporation.

4.3 Term of Office. Except as otherwise provided by law or by the Certificate of Incorporation, the term of each director hereafter elected shall be from the time of his or her election and qualification until the next annual meeting following such election and until a successor shall have been duly elected and qualified or until such director's earlier death, resignation, disqualification or removal.

4.4 Vacancies. Unless otherwise provided in the Certificate of Incorporation and subject to the rights of the holders of any series of preferred stock then outstanding, any vacancies on the Board of Directors resulting from death, resignation, disqualification, removal or other causes and any newly created directorships resulting from any increase in the number of directors shall, unless the Board of Directors determines by resolution that any such vacancies or newly created directorships shall be filled by stockholders, be filled only by the affirmative vote of a majority of the directors then in office, even if less than a quorum of the Board of Directors. Any director elected in accordance with the preceding sentence shall hold office for the remainder of the full term of the director for which the vacancy was created or occurred and until such director's successor shall have been elected and qualified. A vacancy in the Board of Directors shall be deemed to exist under this Section 4.4 in the case of the death, removal, disqualification or resignation of any director.

4.5 Resignation. Any director may resign at any time by delivering his or her notice in writing or by electronic transmission to the Secretary, such resignation to specify whether it will be effective at a particular time, upon receipt by the Secretary or at the pleasure of the Board of Directors. If no such specification is made, it shall be deemed effective at the pleasure of the Board of Directors. When one or more directors shall resign from the Board of Directors effective at a future date, a majority of the directors then in office, including those who have so resigned, shall have the power to fill such vacancy or vacancies, the vote thereon to take effect when such resignation or resignations shall become effective, and each director so chosen shall hold office for the unexpired portion of the term of the director whose place shall be vacated and until his successor shall have been duly elected and qualified.

4.6 Removal. Subject to the rights of the holders of any series of preferred stock then outstanding, any one or more or all of the directors may be removed from the Board of Directors, but only for cause and only by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least a majority of the voting power of all then outstanding shares of capital stock of the Corporation then entitled to vote in the election of directors, voting together as a single class.

4.7 Meetings.

(a) Unless otherwise restricted by the Certificate of Incorporation, regular meetings of the Board of Directors may be held at any time or date and at any place within or without the State of Delaware which has been designated by the Board of Directors and publicized among all directors, either orally or in writing, by telephone, including a voice-messaging system or other system designed to record and communicate messages, facsimile, telegraph or telex, or by electronic mail or other electronic means. No further notice shall be required for regular meetings of the Board of Directors.

---

(b) Unless otherwise restricted by the Certificate of Incorporation, special meetings of the Board of Directors may be held at any time and place within or without the State of Delaware whenever called by the Chairman of the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer, or a majority of the directors then in office.

(c) Any member of the Board of Directors, or of any committee thereof, may participate in a meeting by means of conference telephone or other communications equipment pursuant to which all persons participating in the meeting can hear each other, and participation in a meeting by such means shall constitute presence in person at such meeting.

(d) Notice of the time and place of all special meetings of the Board of Directors shall be given to each director (i) by giving notice to such director in person or by telephone, including a voice messaging system or other system designed to record and communicate messages, during normal business hours, at least twenty-four (24) hours before the meeting, (ii) by sending a telegram or delivering notice by facsimile transmission, by electronic mail or by hand, to such director at his last known business or home address, during normal business hours, at least twenty-four (24) hours before the meeting, or (iii) by mailing notice, via first class United States mail, to such director at his last known business or home address at least three (3) days in advance of the meeting. Notice of any meeting may be waived in writing, or by electronic transmission, at any time before or after the meeting and will be waived by any director by attendance thereat, except when the director attends the meeting for the express purpose of objecting, at the beginning of the meeting, to the transaction of any business because the meeting is not lawfully called or convened. Notice of a special meeting of the Board of Directors need not specify the purpose of the meeting.

(e) The transaction of all business at any meeting of the Board of Directors, or any committee thereof, however called or noticed, or wherever held, shall be as valid as though had at a meeting duly held after regular call and notice, if a quorum be present and if, either before or after the meeting, each of the directors not present who did not receive notice shall sign a written waiver of notice or shall waive notice by electronic transmission. All such waivers shall be filed with the corporate records or made a part of the minutes of the meeting. Neither the business to be transacted at, nor the purpose of, any regular or special meeting of the Board of Directors need be specified in any written waiver of notice or any waiver by electronic transmission.

#### 4.8 Quorum And Voting.

(a) Unless the Certificate of Incorporation requires a greater number, a quorum of the Board of Directors shall consist of a majority of the directors then in office. In the event one or more directors shall be disqualified to vote at any meeting, then the required quorum shall be reduced by one for each such director so disqualified; provided, however, that in no case shall less than one-third ( $1/3$ ) of the total number of directors constitute a quorum. At any meeting whether a quorum be present or otherwise, a majority of the directors present may adjourn from time to time until the time fixed for the next regular meeting of the Board of Directors, without notice other than by announcement at the meeting.



---

(b) At each meeting of the Board of Directors at which a quorum is present, all questions and business shall be determined by the affirmative vote of a majority of the directors present, unless a different vote be required by law, the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws.

4.9 Action Without Meeting. Unless otherwise restricted by the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws, any action required or permitted to be taken at any meeting of the Board of Directors, or of any committee thereof, may be taken without a meeting, if all members of the Board of Directors or committee, as the case may be, consent thereto in writing or by electronic transmission, and such writing or writings or transmission or transmissions are filed with the minutes of proceedings of the Board of Directors or committee. Such filing shall be in paper form if the minutes are maintained in paper form and shall be in electronic form if the minutes are maintained in electronic form.

4.10 Fees And Compensation. Directors shall be entitled to such compensation for their services as may be approved by the Board of Directors, or any committee thereof, including, if so approved by resolution of the Board of Directors or such committee, a fixed sum and expenses of attendance, if any, for attendance at each regular or special meeting of the Board of Directors and at any meeting of a committee of the Board of Directors. Nothing herein contained shall be construed to preclude any director from serving the Corporation in any other capacity as an officer, agent, employee, or otherwise and receiving compensation therefor.

4.11 Committees.

(a) The Board of Directors may, from time to time, appoint such committees as may be permitted by law. Such committees appointed by the Board of Directors shall consist of one (1) or more members of the Board of Directors and shall have such powers and perform such duties as may be prescribed by the resolution or resolutions creating such committees, but no committee shall have the power or authority in reference to (i) approving or adopting, or recommending to the stockholders, any action or matter expressly required by the DGCL to be submitted to stockholders for approval, or (ii) adopting, amending or repealing any provision of these Bylaws.

(b) The Board of Directors, subject to any requirements of any outstanding series of preferred stock and the provisions of subsections (a) and (b) of this Section 4.11, may at any time increase or decrease the number of members of a committee or terminate the existence of a committee. The membership of a committee member shall terminate on the date of his death or voluntary resignation from the committee or from the Board of Directors. The Board of Directors may at any time for any reason remove any individual committee member and the Board of Directors may fill any committee vacancy created by death, resignation, removal or increase in the number of members of the committee. The Board of Directors may designate one or more directors as alternate members of any committee, who may replace any absent or disqualified member at any meeting of the committee, and, in addition, in the absence or disqualification of any member of a committee, the member or members thereof present at any meeting and not disqualified from voting, whether or not he or they constitute a quorum, may unanimously appoint another member of the Board of Directors to act at the meeting in the place of any such absent or disqualified member.

---

(c) Unless the Board of Directors shall otherwise provide, regular meetings of any committee appointed pursuant to this Section 4.11 shall be held at such times and places as are determined by the Board of Directors, or by any such committee, and when notice thereof has been given to each member of such committee, no further notice of such regular meetings need be given thereafter. Special meetings of any such committee may be held at any place which has been determined from time to time by such committee, and may be called by any director who is a member of such committee, upon notice to the members of such committee of the time and place of such special meeting given in the manner provided for the giving of notice to members of the Board of Directors of the time and place of special meetings of the Board of Directors. Notice of any special meeting of any committee may be waived in writing at any time before or after the meeting and will be waived by any director by attendance thereat, except when the director attends such special meeting for the express purpose of objecting, at the beginning of the meeting, to the transaction of any business because the meeting is not lawfully called or convened. Unless otherwise provided by the Board of Directors in the resolutions authorizing the creation of the committee, a majority of the members of any such committee shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business, and the act of a majority of those present at any meeting at which a quorum is present shall be the act of such committee.

4.12 Organization. At every meeting of the directors, the Chairman of the Board of Directors, or, if a Chairman of the Board of Directors has not been appointed or is absent, the Chief Executive Officer (if a director), or if the Chief Executive Officer is absent, the President (if a director), or, in the absence of any such person, a chairman of the meeting chosen by a majority of the directors present, shall preside over the meeting. The Secretary, or in his absence, such person appointed by the chairman of the meeting, shall act as secretary of the meeting.

## **ARTICLE V OFFICERS**

5.1 Officers Designated. The officers of the Corporation shall include, if and when designated by the Board of Directors, the Chairman of the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer, the President, one or more Vice Presidents, the Secretary, the Chief Financial Officer and the Treasurer, all of whom shall be elected at the annual organizational meeting of the Board of Directors. The Board of Directors may also appoint one or more Assistant Secretaries, Assistant Treasurers and such other officers and agents with such powers and duties as it shall deem necessary. The Board of Directors may assign such additional titles to one or more of the officers as it shall deem appropriate. Any one person may hold any number of offices of the Corporation at any one time unless specifically prohibited therefrom by law. The salaries and other compensation of the officers of the Corporation shall be fixed by or in the manner designated by the Board of Directors or a committee thereof.

### 5.2 Tenure And Duties Of Officers.

(a) All officers shall hold office at the pleasure of the Board of Directors and until their successors shall have been duly elected and qualified, unless sooner removed. Any officer elected or appointed by the Board of Directors may be removed at any time by the Board of Directors, subject to the rights, if any, of an officer under contract of employment. If the office of any officer becomes vacant for any reason, the vacancy may be filled by the Board of Directors.

---

(b) The Chairman of the Board of Directors, if such an officer be elected, shall, if present, preside at meetings of the Board of Directors and stockholders and exercise and perform such other powers and duties as may from time to time be assigned to him by the Board of Directors or as may be prescribed by these Bylaws. If there is no Chief Executive Officer or President, then the Chairman of the Board of Directors shall also be the Chief Executive Officer of the Corporation and as such shall also have the powers and duties prescribed in Section 5.2(c) below.

(c) Subject to such supervisory powers, if any, as the Board of Directors may give to the Chairman of the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer, if any, shall, subject to the control of the Board of Directors, have general supervision, direction, and control of the business and affairs of the Corporation and shall report directly to the Board of Directors. All other officers, officials, employees and agents shall report directly or indirectly to the Chief Executive Officer. The Chief Executive Officer shall see that all orders and resolutions of the Board of Directors are carried into effect. In the absence of a Chairman of the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer shall preside at all meetings of the Board of Directors.

(d) In the absence or disability of the Chief Executive Officer, the President shall perform all the duties of the Chief Executive Officer. When acting as the Chief Executive Officer, the President shall have all the powers of, and be subject to all the restrictions upon, the Chief Executive Officer. The President shall have such other powers and perform such other duties as from time to time may be prescribed for him by the Board of Directors, these Bylaws, the Chief Executive Officer or the Chairman of the Board of Directors.

(e) In the absence or disability of the President, the Vice President(s), if any, in order of their rank as fixed by the Board of Directors or, if not ranked, a Vice President designated by the Board of Directors, shall perform all the duties of the President and, when so acting, shall have all the powers of, and be subject to all the restrictions upon, the President. The Vice President(s) shall have such other powers and perform such other duties as from time to time may be prescribed for them respectively by the Board of Directors, these Bylaws, the Chairman of the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer or, in the absence of a Chief Executive Officer, the President.

(f) The General Counsel, if any, shall serve as the Corporation's primary in-house legal counsel and shall discharge such other duties as may from time to time be assigned by the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer or the President.

(g) The Secretary shall keep or cause to be kept, at the principal executive office of the Corporation, or such other place as the Board of Directors may direct, a book of minutes of all meetings and actions of directors, committees of directors, and stockholders. The minutes shall show the time and place of each meeting, whether regular or special (and, if special, how authorized and the notice given), the names of those present at directors' meetings or committee meetings, the number of shares present or represented at stockholders' meetings, and the proceedings thereof.

The Secretary shall keep, or cause to be kept, at the principal executive office of the Corporation or at the office of the Corporation's transfer agent or registrar, as determined by

---

resolution of the Board of Directors, a share register, or a duplicate share register, showing the names of all stockholders and their addresses, the number and classes of shares held by each, the number and date of certificates evidencing such shares, and the number and date of cancellation of every certificate surrendered for cancellation.

The Secretary shall give, or cause to be given, notice of all meetings of the stockholders, the Board of Directors and any committee(s) of the Board of Directors, required to be given by law or by these Bylaws. The Secretary shall keep the seal of the Corporation, if one be adopted, in safe custody and shall have such other powers and perform such other duties as may be prescribed by the Board of Directors or by these Bylaws.

(h) The Chief Financial Officer shall keep and maintain, or cause to be kept and maintained, adequate and correct books and records of accounts of the properties and business transactions of the Corporation, including accounts of its assets, liabilities, receipts, disbursements, gains, losses, capital and retained earnings.

The Chief Financial Officer shall deposit all money and other valuables in the name and to the credit of the Corporation with such depositories as may be designated by the Board of Directors or Chief Executive Officer. The Chief Financial Officer shall disburse the funds of the Corporation as may be ordered by the Board of Directors, shall render to the Board of Directors and Chief Executive Officer, or in the absence of a Chief Executive Officer, the President, whenever they request, an account of all of his transactions as Chief Financial Officer and of the financial condition of the Corporation, and shall have such other powers and perform such other duties as may be prescribed by the Board of Directors or these Bylaws. In lieu of any contrary resolution duly adopted by the Board of Directors, the Chief Financial Officer shall also be the Treasurer of the Corporation.

(i) The Assistant Secretary(ies), if any, in the order determined by the Board of Directors (or if there be no such determination, then in the order of their election) shall, in the absence of the Secretary or in the event of his inability or refusal to act, perform the duties and exercise the powers of the Secretary and shall perform such other duties and have such other powers as the Board of Directors may from time to time prescribe.

(j) The Assistant Treasurer(s), if any, in the order determined by the Board of Directors (or if there be no such determination, then in the order of their election), shall, in the absence of the Chief Financial Officer or in the event of his or her inability or refusal to act, perform the duties and exercise the powers of the Chief Financial Officer and shall perform such other duties and have such other powers as the Board of Directors may from time to time prescribe.

5.3 Delegation Of Authority. The Board of Directors may from time to time delegate the powers or duties of any officer to any other officer or agent, notwithstanding any provision hereof.

5.4 Resignations. Any officer may resign at any time by giving notice in writing or by electronic transmission to the Board of Directors or to the Chief Executive Officer or to the Secretary. Any such resignation shall be effective when received by the person or persons to

---

whom such notice is given, unless a later time is specified therein, in which event the resignation shall become effective at such later time. Unless otherwise specified in such notice, the acceptance of any such resignation shall not be necessary to make it effective. Any resignation shall be without prejudice to the rights, if any, of the Corporation under any contract with the resigning officer.

5.5 Removal. Subject to the rights, if any, of an officer under contract of employment, any officer may be removed from office at any time, either with or without cause, by the affirmative vote of a majority of the directors in office at the time, or by the unanimous written consent of the directors in office at the time, or by any committee or superior officers upon whom such power of removal may have been conferred by the Board of Directors.

## **ARTICLE VI EXECUTION OF CORPORATE INSTRUMENTS AND VOTING OF SECURITIES OWNED BY THE CORPORATION**

6.1 Execution Of Corporate Instruments. The Board of Directors may, in its discretion, determine the method and designate the signatory officer or officers, or other person or persons, to execute on behalf of the Corporation any corporate instrument or document, or to sign on behalf of the Corporation the corporate name without limitation, or to enter into contracts on behalf of the Corporation, except where otherwise provided by law or these Bylaws, and such execution or signature shall be binding upon the Corporation.

All checks and drafts drawn on banks or other depositories on funds to the credit of the Corporation or in special accounts of the Corporation shall be signed by such person or persons as the Board of Directors shall authorize so to do.

Unless authorized or ratified by the Board of Directors or within the agency power of an officer, no officer, agent or employee shall have any power or authority to bind the Corporation by any contract or engagement or to pledge its credit or to render it liable for any purpose or for any amount.

6.2 Voting Of Securities Owned By The Corporation. All stock and other securities of other corporations owned or held by the Corporation for itself, or for other parties in any capacity, shall be voted, and all proxies with respect thereto shall be executed, by the person authorized so to do by resolution of the Board of Directors, or, in the absence of such authorization, by the Chairman of the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer, the President, or any Vice President.

## **ARTICLE VII SHARES OF STOCK**

7.1 Form And Execution Of Certificates. Shares of stock of the Corporation shall be represented by certificates, or shall be uncertificated. Certificates for the shares of stock of the Corporation, if any, shall be in such form as is consistent with the Certificate of Incorporation and applicable law. Every holder of stock represented by certificate shall be entitled to have a certificate signed by or in the name of the Corporation by the Chairman of the Board of

---

Directors, or the President or any Vice President and by the Treasurer or Assistant Treasurer or the Secretary or Assistant Secretary, certifying the number of shares owned by him in the Corporation. Any or all of the signatures on the certificate may be facsimiles. In case any officer, transfer agent, or registrar who has signed or whose facsimile signature has been placed upon a certificate shall have ceased to be such officer, transfer agent, or registrar before such certificate is issued, it may be issued with the same effect as if he were such officer, transfer agent, or registrar at the date of issue.

7.2 Lost Certificates. A new certificate or certificates shall be issued in place of any certificate or certificates theretofore issued by the Corporation alleged to have been lost, stolen, or destroyed, upon the making of an affidavit of that fact by the person claiming the certificate of stock to be lost, stolen, or destroyed. The Corporation may require, as a condition precedent to the issuance of a new certificate or certificates, the owner of such lost, stolen, or destroyed certificate or certificates, or the owner's legal representative, to agree to indemnify the Corporation in such manner as it shall require or to give the Corporation a surety bond in such form and amount as it may direct as indemnity against any claim that may be made against the Corporation with respect to the certificate alleged to have been lost, stolen, or destroyed.

7.3 Transfers.

(a) Transfers of record of shares of stock of the Corporation shall be made only upon its books by the holders thereof, in person or by attorney duly authorized, and, in the case of stock represented by certificate, upon the surrender of a properly endorsed certificate or certificates for a like number of shares.

(b) The Corporation shall have power to enter into and perform any agreement with any number of stockholders of any one or more classes of stock of the Corporation to restrict the transfer of shares of stock of the Corporation of any one or more classes owned by such stockholders in any manner not prohibited by the DGCL.

7.4 Fixing Record Dates.

(a) In order that the Corporation may determine the stockholders entitled to notice of or to vote at any meeting of stockholders or any adjournment thereof, the Board of Directors may fix, in advance, a record date, which record date shall not precede the date upon which the resolution fixing the record date is adopted by the Board of Directors, and which record date shall, subject to applicable law, not be more than sixty (60) nor less than ten (10) days before the date of such meeting. If no record date is fixed by the Board of Directors, the record date for determining stockholders entitled to notice of or to vote at a meeting of stockholders shall be at the close of business on the day next preceding the day on which notice is given, or if notice is waived, at the close of business on the day next preceding the day on which the meeting is held. A determination of stockholders of record entitled to notice of or to vote at a meeting of stockholders shall apply to any adjournment of the meeting; provided, however, that the Board of Directors may fix a new record date for the adjourned meeting.

(b) In order that the Corporation may determine the stockholders entitled to receive payment of any dividend or other distribution or allotment of any rights or the stockholders

---

entitled to exercise any rights in respect of any change, conversion or exchange of stock, or for the purpose of any other lawful action, the Board of Directors may fix, in advance, a record date, which record date shall not precede the date upon which the resolution fixing the record date is adopted, and which record date shall be not more than sixty (60) days prior to such action. If no record date is fixed, the record date for determining stockholders for any such purpose shall be at the close of business on the day on which the Board of Directors adopts the resolution relating thereto.

7.5 Registered Stockholders. The Corporation shall be entitled to recognize the exclusive right of a person registered on its books as the owner of shares to receive dividends, and to vote as such owner, and shall not be bound to recognize any equitable or other claim to or interest in such share or shares on the part of any other person whether or not it shall have express or other notice thereof, except as otherwise provided by applicable law.

## **ARTICLE VIII OTHER SECURITIES OF THE CORPORATION**

8.1 Execution Of Other Securities. All bonds, debentures and other corporate securities of the Corporation, other than stock certificates (covered in Section 7.1), may be signed by the Chairman of the Board of Directors, the Chief Executive Officer, the President or any Vice President, or such other person as may be authorized by the Board of Directors, and the corporate seal, if any, may be impressed thereon or a facsimile of such seal imprinted thereon and attested by the signature of the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary, or the Chief Financial Officer or Treasurer or an Assistant Treasurer; provided, however, that where any such bond, debenture or other corporate security shall be authenticated by the manual signature, or where permissible facsimile signature, of a trustee under an indenture pursuant to which such bond, debenture or other corporate security shall be issued, the signatures of the persons signing and, if applicable, attesting the corporate seal on such bond, debenture or other corporate security may be the imprinted facsimile of the signatures of such persons. Interest coupons appertaining to any such bond, debenture or other corporate security, authenticated by a trustee as aforesaid, shall be signed by the Treasurer or an Assistant Treasurer of the Corporation or such other person as may be authorized by the Board of Directors, or bear imprinted thereon the facsimile signature of such person. In case any officer who shall have signed or attested any bond, debenture or other corporate security, or whose facsimile signature shall appear thereon or on any such interest coupon, shall have ceased to be such officer before the bond, debenture or other corporate security so signed or attested shall have been delivered, such bond, debenture or other corporate security nevertheless may be adopted by the Corporation and issued and delivered as though the person who signed the same or whose facsimile signature shall have been used thereon had not ceased to be such officer of the Corporation.

## **ARTICLE IX DIVIDENDS**

9.1 Declaration Of Dividends. Dividends upon the capital stock of the Corporation, subject to the provisions of the Certificate of Incorporation and applicable law, if any, may be declared by the Board of Directors pursuant to law at any regular or special meeting. Dividends may be paid in cash, in property, or in shares of the capital stock, subject to the provisions of the Certificate of Incorporation and applicable law.

---

9.2 Dividend Reserve. Before payment of any dividend, there may be set aside out of any funds of the Corporation available for dividends such sum or sums as the Board of Directors from time to time, in their absolute discretion, think proper as a reserve or reserves to meet contingencies, or for equalizing dividends, or for repairing or maintaining any property of the Corporation, or for such other purpose as the Board of Directors shall think conducive to the interests of the Corporation, and the Board of Directors may modify or abolish any such reserve in the manner in which it was created.

**ARTICLE X  
FISCAL YEAR**

10.1 Fiscal Year. The fiscal year of the Corporation shall be fixed by resolution of the Board of Directors.

**ARTICLE XI  
INDEMNIFICATION AND ADVANCEMENT OF EXPENSES**

11.1 Right To Indemnification. The Corporation shall indemnify and hold harmless, to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law as it presently exists or may hereafter be amended, any person (a "Covered Person") who was or is made or is threatened to be made a party or is otherwise involved in any action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (a "Proceeding"), by reason of the fact that he or she, or a person for whom he or she is the legal representative, is or was a director or officer of the Corporation or, while a director or officer of the Corporation, is or was serving at the request of the Corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or of a partnership, joint venture, trust, enterprise or nonprofit entity, including service with respect to employee benefit plans, against all liability and loss suffered and expenses (including attorneys' fees) reasonably incurred by such Covered Person. Notwithstanding the preceding sentence, except as otherwise provided in Section 11.3, the Corporation shall not be required to indemnify a Covered Person in connection with a Proceeding (or part thereof) commenced by such Covered Person unless the commencement of such Proceeding (or part thereof) by the Covered Person was authorized in the specific case by the Board of Directors.

11.2 Pre-Payment of Expenses. The Corporation shall to the fullest extent not prohibited by applicable law pay the expenses (including attorneys' fees) incurred by a Covered Person in defending any Proceeding in advance of its final disposition, provided, however, that, to the extent required by law, such payment of expenses in advance of the final disposition of the Proceeding shall be made only upon receipt of an undertaking by the Covered Person to repay all amounts advanced if it should be ultimately determined that the Covered Person is not entitled to be indemnified under this Article XI or otherwise.

11.3 Claims. If a claim for indemnification (following the final disposition of the Proceeding with respect to which indemnification is sought, including any settlement of such Proceeding) or advancement of expenses under this Article XI is not paid in full within thirty



---

days after a written claim therefor by the Covered Person has been received by the Corporation, the Covered Person may file suit to recover the unpaid amount of such claim and, if successful in whole or in part, shall be entitled to be paid the expense of prosecuting such claim to the fullest extent permitted by applicable law. In any such action the Corporation shall have the burden of proving that the Covered Person is not entitled to the requested indemnification or advancement of expenses under this Article XI and applicable law.

11.4 Non-Exclusivity Of Rights. The rights conferred on any Covered Person by this Article XI shall not be exclusive of any other rights which such Covered Person may have or hereafter acquire under any statute, any other provision of the Certificate of Incorporation, these Bylaws, or any agreement, vote of stockholders or disinterested directors or otherwise.

11.5 Insurance. The Corporation may purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of any person who is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the Corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the Corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or of a partnership, joint venture, trust, enterprise or nonprofit entity, including service with respect to employee benefit plans, against any liability asserted against such person and incurred by such person in any such capacity, or arising out of such person's status as such, whether or not the Corporation would have the power to indemnify such person against such liability under this Article XI, the DGCL or otherwise.

11.6 Amendment or Repeal. Any right to indemnification or to advancement of expenses of any Covered Person arising hereunder shall not be eliminated or impaired by an amendment to or repeal of this Article XI after the occurrence of the act or omission that is the subject of the civil, criminal, administrative or investigative action, suit or proceeding for which indemnification or advancement of expenses is sought.

11.7 Saving Clause. If this Article XI or any portion hereof shall be invalidated on any ground by any court of competent jurisdiction, then the Corporation shall nevertheless indemnify each director, officer, employee and agent to the fullest extent not prohibited by any applicable portion of this Article XI that shall not have been invalidated, or by any other applicable law. If this Article XI shall be invalid due to the application of the indemnification provisions of another jurisdiction, then the Corporation shall indemnify each director, officer, employee and agent to the fullest extent under any other applicable law.

## **ARTICLE XII NOTICES**

### 12.1 Notices.

(a) Written notice to stockholders of stockholder meetings shall be given as provided in Section 3.4 herein. Without limiting the manner by which notice may otherwise be given effectively to stockholders under any agreement or contract with such stockholder, and except as otherwise required by law, written notice to stockholders for purposes other than stockholder meetings may be sent by United States mail or nationally recognized overnight courier, or by facsimile, telegraph or telex or by electronic mail or other electronic means.

---

(b) Notice to directors of special meetings shall be given as provided in Section 4.7(d) herein. Subject to the preceding sentence and except as expressly stated otherwise herein, notice may otherwise be given by the methods stated in subsection (a) above.

(c) An affidavit of mailing, executed by a duly authorized and competent employee of the Corporation or its transfer agent appointed with respect to the class of stock affected, or other agent, specifying the name and address or the names and addresses of the stockholder or stockholders, or director or directors, to whom any such notice or notices was or were given, and the time and method of giving the same, shall in the absence of fraud, be prima facie evidence of the facts therein contained.

(d) It shall not be necessary that the same method of giving notice be employed in respect of all recipients of notice, but one permissible method may be employed in respect of any one or more recipients, and any other permissible method or methods may be employed in respect of any other or others.

(e) Whenever notice is required to be given, under any provision of the DGCL, the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws, to any person with whom communication is unlawful, the giving of such notice to such person shall not be required and there shall be no duty to apply to any governmental authority or agency for a license or permit to give such notice to such person. Any action or meeting which shall be taken or held without notice to any such person with whom communication is unlawful shall have the same force and effect as if such notice had been duly given. In the event the action taken by the Corporation is such as to require the filing of a certificate under any provision of the DGCL, the certificate shall state, if such is the fact and if notice is required, that notice was given to all persons entitled to receive notice except such persons with whom communication is unlawful.

(f) Whenever notice is required to be given, under any provision of the DGCL, the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws, to any stockholder to whom (i) notice of two (2) consecutive annual meetings, or (ii) all, and at least two (2), payments (if sent by first-class mail) of dividends or interest on securities during a twelve (12) month period, have been mailed addressed to such person at such person's address as shown on the records of the Corporation and have been returned undeliverable, the giving of such notice to such person shall not be required. Any actions or meeting which shall be taken or held without notice to such person shall have the same force and effect as if such notice had been duly given. If any such person shall deliver to the Corporation a written notice setting forth such person's then current address, the requirement that notice be given to such person shall be reinstated. In the event that the action taken by the Corporation is such as to require the filing of a certificate under any provision of the DGCL, the certificate need not state that the Corporation did not give notice to persons not required to be given notice pursuant to Section 230(b) of the DGCL. The exception in clause (i) above to the requirement that notice be given shall not be applicable to any notice returned as undeliverable if the notice was given by electronic transmission.

(g) Except as otherwise prohibited under the DGCL, any notice given under the provisions of the DGCL, the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws shall be effective if given by a single written notice to stockholders who share an address if consented to by the stockholders at that address to whom such notice is given. Such consent shall be deemed to have

---

been given if such stockholder fails to object in writing to the Corporation within 60 days of having been given notice by the Corporation of its intention to send the single notice. Any consent shall be revocable by the stockholder by written notice to the Corporation.

(h) Without limiting the manner by which notice otherwise may be given effectively to stockholders, any notice to stockholders given by the Corporation under any provision of the DGCL, the Certificate of Incorporation or these Bylaws shall be effective if given by a form of electronic transmission previously consented to by the stockholder to whom the notice is given. Any such consent shall be revocable by the stockholder by written notice to the Corporation. Any such consent shall be deemed revoked if (i) the Corporation is unable to deliver by electronic transmission two (2) consecutive notices given by the Corporation in accordance with such consent, and (ii) such inability becomes known to the Secretary or an Assistant Secretary of the Corporation, the transfer agent or other person responsible for the giving of notice; provided, however, the inadvertent failure to treat such inability as a revocation shall not invalidate any meeting or other action.

Notice given pursuant to the above paragraph shall be deemed given (i) if by facsimile telecommunication, when directed to a number at which the stockholder has consented to receive notice, (ii) if by electronic mail, when directed to an electronic mail address at which the stockholder has consented to receive notice, (iii) if by a posting on an electronic network together with a separate notice to the stockholder of such specific posting, upon the later of (A) such posting and (B) the giving of such separate notice, and (iv) if by any other form of electronic transmission, when directed to the stockholder. An affidavit of the Secretary or Assistant Secretary, the transfer agent or other agent of the Corporation that the notice has been given by a form of electronic transmission shall in the absence of fraud, be prima facie evidence of the facts stated therein.

For purposes of these Bylaws, “electronic transmission” means any form of communication that does not directly involving the physical transmission of paper, that creates a record that may be retained, retrieved and reviewed by a recipient thereof, and that may be directly reproduced in paper form by such a recipient through an automated process. This Section 12.1 shall not apply to Section 164 (failure to pay for stock; remedies), Section 296 (adjudication of claims; appeal), Section 311 (revocation of voluntary dissolution), Section 312 (renewal, revival, extension and restoration of certificate of incorporation) or Section 324 (attachment of shares of stock) of the DGCL.

### **ARTICLE XIII AMENDMENTS**

13.1 Amendments. The Board of Directors is expressly empowered to adopt, amend or repeal the Bylaws of the Corporation. Any adoption, amendment or repeal of the Bylaws of the Corporation by the Board of Directors shall require the approval of a majority of the directors then in office. The stockholders shall also have power to adopt, amend or repeal the Bylaws of the Corporation; provided, however, that, in addition to any vote of the holders of any class or series of stock of the Corporation required by law or by the Certificate of Incorporation, the affirmative vote of the holders of at least sixty-six and two-thirds percent (66-2/3%) of the voting power of all of the then-outstanding shares of the capital stock of the Corporation entitled to vote generally in the election of directors, voting together as a single class, shall be required to adopt, amend or repeal any provision of the Bylaws of the Corporation.

---

**ARTICLE XIV**  
**RECORDS AND REPORTS**

14.1 Maintenance And Inspection Of Records.

(a) The Corporation shall, either at its principal executive office or at such place or places as designated by the Board of Directors, keep a record of its stockholders listing their names and addresses and the number and class of shares held by each stockholder, a copy of these Bylaws, minute books, accounting books and other records. Any such records maintained by the Corporation may be kept on, or by means of, or be in the form of, any information storage device or method, provided that the records so kept can be converted into clearly legible paper form within a reasonable time. The Corporation shall so convert any records so kept upon the request of any person entitled to inspect such records pursuant to the provisions of the DGCL. When records are kept in such manner, a clearly legible paper form produced from or by means of the information storage device or method shall be admissible in evidence, and accepted for all other purposes, to the same extent as an original paper form accurately portrays the record.

(b) Any stockholder of record, in person or by attorney or other agent, shall, upon written demand under oath stating the purpose thereof, have the right during the usual hours for business to inspect for any proper purpose the Corporation's stock ledger, a list of its stockholders, and its other books and records and to make copies or extracts therefrom. A proper purpose shall mean a purpose reasonably related to such person's interest as a stockholder. In every instance where an attorney or other agent is the person who seeks the right to inspection, the demand under oath shall be accompanied by a power of attorney or such other writing that authorizes the attorney or other agent to so act on behalf of the stockholder. The demand under oath shall be directed to the Corporation at its registered office in Delaware or at its principal place of business.

14.2 Inspection By Directors. Any director shall have the right to examine the Corporation's stock ledger, a list of its stockholders, and its other books and records for a purpose reasonably related to his or her position as a director. The Court of Chancery is hereby vested with the exclusive jurisdiction to determine whether a director is entitled to the inspection sought. The court may summarily order the Corporation to permit the director to inspect any and all books and records, the stock ledger, and the stock list and to make copies or extracts therefrom. The Court may, in its discretion, prescribe any limitations or conditions with reference to the inspection, or award such other and further relief as the Court may deem just and proper.

---

**ARTICLE XV**  
**CONSTRUCTION**

15.1 Construction. Unless the context requires otherwise, the general provisions, rules of construction and definitions in the DGCL shall govern the construction of these Bylaws. The singular number includes the plural, and the plural number includes the singular. All pronouns used in these Bylaws shall be deemed to refer to the masculine, feminine and/or neuter, as the identity of the person or persons so designated may require.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, 2012

INCORPORATED UNDER THE LAWS OF THE STATE OF DELAWARE

**MRI Interventions, Inc.**

CUSIP 55347P 10 0  
SEE REVERSE FOR CERTAIN DEFINITIONS

NUMBER \_\_\_\_\_

SHARES \_\_\_\_\_

THIS CERTIFIES THAT \_\_\_\_\_

is the owner of \_\_\_\_\_

FULLY PAID AND NON-ASSESSABLE SHARES OF COMMON STOCK, \$0.01 PAR VALUE, OF  
**MRI Interventions, Inc.**

transferable on the books of the Corporation by the holder hereof in person or by duly authorized attorney upon the surrender of this Certificate properly endorsed. This Certificate is not valid until countersigned and registered by the Transfer Agent and Registrar.  
WITNESS the facsimile signatures of the Corporation's duly authorized officers.

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_

*Alan Shaw*  
Secretary

*[Signature]*  
President

AUTHORIZED OFFICER  
TRANSFER AGENT AND REGISTRAR  
(May Only New Jersey)  
CONTINENTAL STOCK TRANSFER & TRUST COMPANY

The within-named Corporation will furnish without charge to each stockholder who so requests the powers, designations, preferences and relative, participating, optional, or other special rights of each class of stock of the Corporation and each series thereof and the qualifications, limitations or restrictions of such preferences and/or rights.

The following abbreviations, when used in the inscription on the face of this certificate, shall be construed as though they were written out in full according to applicable laws or regulations:

TEN COM – as tenants in common	UNIF GIFT MIN ACT – _____ Custodian _____
TEN ENT – as tenants by the entireties	(Cust) _____ (Minor)
JT TEN – as joint tenants with right of survivorship and not as tenants in common	Under Uniform Gifts to Minors Act _____ State

Additional abbreviations may also be used though not in the above list.

For value received, hereby sell, assign and transfer unto

PLEASE INSERT SOCIAL SECURITY OR OTHER IDENTIFYING NUMBER OF ASSIGNEE

PLEASE PRINT OR TYPEWRITE NAME AND ADDRESS INCLUDING POSTAL ZIP CODE OF ASSIGNEE

\_\_\_\_\_ Shares  
of the common stock represented by the within Certificate, and do hereby irrevocably constitute and appoint \_\_\_\_\_

Attorney to transfer the said stock on the books of the within-named Corporation with full power of substitution in the premises.

Dated,

**NOTICE:** \_\_\_\_\_  
THE SIGNATURE TO THIS ASSIGNMENT MUST CORRESPOND WITH THE NAME AS WRITTEN UPON THE FACE OF THE CERTIFICATE IN EVERY PARTICULAR WITHOUT ALTERATION OR ENLARGEMENT, OR ANY CHANGE WHATEVER.

**SIGNATURE(S) GUARANTEED:**

\_\_\_\_\_  
THE SIGNATURE(S) MUST BE GUARANTEED BY AN ELIGIBLE GUARANTOR INSTITUTION (BANKS, STOCKBROKERS, SAVINGS AND LOAN ASSOCIATIONS AND CREDIT UNIONS WITH MEMBERSHIP IN AN APPROVED SIGNATURE GUARANTEE MEDALLION PROGRAM). PURSUANT TO S.E.C. RULE 17Ad-15.

MRI Interventions, Inc.  
2012 Incentive Compensation Plan

1. Purpose of the Plan. The purpose of the 2012 Incentive Compensation Plan (the “Plan”) is to aid MRI Interventions, Inc., a Delaware corporation (the “Company”), and its Affiliates (defined below) in recruiting and retaining key employees, directors, consultants and other service providers of outstanding ability and to motivate such employees, directors, consultants and other service providers to exert their best efforts on behalf of the Company and its Affiliates by providing incentives through the granting of Awards (defined below). The Company expects that it will benefit from the added interest which such key employees, directors, consultants and other service providers will have in the welfare of the Company as a result of their proprietary interest in the Company’s success.

2. Definitions. The following capitalized terms used in the Plan have the respective meanings set forth in this Section 2:

“Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, or any successor thereto.

“Affiliate” means with respect to the Company, any entity directly or indirectly controlling, controlled by, or under common control with, the Company or any other entity designated by the Board in which the Company or an Affiliate has an interest.

“Award” means an Option, Stock Appreciation Right, cash bonus, or Other Stock-Based Award granted pursuant to the Plan.

“Board” means the Board of Directors of the Company.

“Change of Control” means the occurrence with respect to the Company of any of the following events: (i) a change in the ownership of the Company; (ii) a change in the effective control of the Company; (iii) a change in the ownership of a substantial portion of the assets of the Company.

For purposes of this definition, a change in the ownership of the Company occurs on the date on which any one person, or more than one person acting as a group, acquires ownership of stock of the Company that, together with stock held by such person or group constitutes more than 50% of the total fair market value or total voting power of the stock of the Company. A change in the effective control of the Company occurs on the date on which either (i) a person, or more than one person acting as a group, acquires ownership of stock of the Company possessing 30% or more of the total voting power of the stock of the Company, taking into account all such stock acquired during the 12-month period ending on the date of the most recent acquisition, or (ii) a majority of the members of the Board is replaced during any 12-month period by directors whose appointment or election is not endorsed by a majority of the members of such Board prior to the date of the appointment or election. A change in the ownership of a substantial portion of assets occurs on the date on which any one person, or more than one person acting as a group, other than a person or group of persons that is related to the Company, acquires assets from the Company that have a total gross fair market value equal to or more than 40% of the total gross fair market value of all of the assets of the Company immediately prior to such acquisition or acquisitions, taking into account all such assets acquired during the 12-month period ending on the date of the most recent acquisition.



---

An event constitutes a Change of Control with respect to a Participant only if the Participant performs services for the Company, or the Participant's relationship to the Company otherwise satisfies the requirements of Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-3(i)(5)(ii).

The determination as to the occurrence of a Change of Control shall be based on objective facts and in accordance with the requirements of Section 409A of the Code.

“Code” means the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, or any successor thereto.

“Committee” means the Compensation Committee of the Board (or a subcommittee thereof as provided under Section 4), or such other committee of the Board (including, without limitation, the full Board) to which the Board has delegated power to act under or pursuant to the provisions of the Plan.

“Company” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.

“Covered Employee” means an individual who is, with respect to the Company, an individual defined in Section 162(m)(3) of the Code, or any successor provision thereto.

“Disability” means Disability as defined for purposes of Section 409A of the Code. The Disability determination shall be in the sole discretion of the Committee and a Participant (or his representative) shall furnish the Committee with medical evidence documenting the Participant's disability or infirmity which is satisfactory to the Committee.

“Effective Date” means the date the Board approves the Plan, or such later date as is designated by the Board; provided that within one year of the Effective Date, the Plan shall have been approved by at least a majority vote of stockholders voting in person or by proxy at a duly held stockholders' meeting, or if the provisions of the corporate charter, bylaws or applicable state law prescribes a greater degree of stockholder approval for this action, the approval by the holders of that percentage, at a duly held meeting of stockholders.

“Employment” means (i) a Participant's employment if the Participant is an employee of the Company or any of its Affiliates, (ii) a Participant's service as a consultant or other service provider, if the Participant is a consultant or other service provider to the Company or its Affiliates, and (iii) a Participant's service as a non-employee director, if the Participant is a non-employee member of the Board.

“Fair Market Value” means, as of a given date, (i) if the Shares are listed or admitted to trading on a national securities exchange on such date, the closing price per Share for the regular market session on such date on the principal securities exchange on which the Shares are listed or admitted to trading, or (ii) if the Shares are not listed or admitted to trading on a national securities exchange, the average of the per Share closing bid price and per Share closing asked price on such date as reported on a quotation system, or (iii) in the absence of a market for the Shares of the type described in the foregoing clauses (i) or (ii), the value established by the Committee in good faith pursuant to the reasonable application of a reasonable valuation method

---

under Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(b)(5)(iv)(B). With respect to clause (i) above, if no sale of Shares shall have been reported on such principal securities exchange on such date, then the immediately preceding date on which sales of the Shares have been so reported shall be used. With respect to clause (ii) above, if no closing bid and asked prices shall have been reported on such date, then the immediately preceding date on which such prices have been reported shall be used.

“ISO” means an Option that is also an incentive stock option granted pursuant to Section 6(d) of the Plan.

“Option” means a stock option granted pursuant to Section 6 of the Plan.

“Option Price” means the purchase price per Share of an Option, as determined pursuant to Section 6(a) of the Plan.

“Other Stock-Based Awards” means Awards granted pursuant to Section 8 of the Plan.

“Participant” means an employee, director, consultant or other service provider of the Company or any of its Affiliates who is selected by the Committee to participate in the Plan.

“Performance-Based Awards” means certain Other Stock-Based Awards granted pursuant to Section 8(b) of the Plan.

“Permitted Holders” means, as of the date of determination, any and all of an employee benefit plan (or trust forming a part thereof) maintained by (i) the Company, or (ii) any corporation or other Person of which a majority of its voting power of its voting equity securities or equity interest is owned, directly or indirectly, by the Company.

“Person” means a “person”, as such term is used for purposes of Section 13(d) or 14(d) of the Act (or any successor section thereto).

“Plan” has the meaning set forth in Section 1.

“Qualified Performance-Based Award” means (i) any Option or Stock Appreciation Right granted under Section 10 of the Plan, or (ii) any other Award that is intended to qualify for the Section 162(m) Exemption and is made subject to performance goals based on Qualified Performance Measures as set forth in Section 10.

“Qualified Performance Measures” means one or more of the performance measures listed in Section 10(b) upon which performance goals for certain Qualified Performance-Based Awards may be established by the Committee.

“Section 162(m) Exemption” means the exemption from the limitation on deductibility imposed by Section 162(m) that is set forth in Section 162(m)(4)(C) of the Code or any successor provision thereto.

“Shares” means shares of common stock of the Company.

---

“Stock Appreciation Right” means a stock appreciation right granted pursuant to Section 7 of the Plan.

“Subsidiary” means a subsidiary corporation, as defined in Section 424(f) of the Code (or any successor section thereto).

3. Shares Subject to the Plan. Subject to Section 11 of the Plan, the total number of Shares which may be issued under the Plan is 3,000,000 and the maximum number of Shares for which ISOs may be granted is 3,000,000. The Shares may consist, in whole or in part, of unissued Shares or treasury Shares. The issuance of Shares or the payment of cash upon the exercise of an Award or in consideration of the cancellation or termination of an Award shall reduce the total number of Shares available under the Plan, as applicable. Shares subject to Awards that terminate or lapse without the payment of consideration may be granted again under the Plan.

4. Administration. The Plan shall be administered by the Committee. The Committee is authorized to interpret the Plan, to establish, amend and rescind any rules and regulations relating to the Plan, and to make any other determinations that it deems necessary or advisable for the administration of the Plan. The Committee may correct any defect or supply any omission or reconcile any inconsistency in the Plan in the manner and to the extent the Committee deems necessary or advisable. Any decision of the Committee in the interpretation and administration of the Plan, as described herein, shall lie within its sole and absolute discretion and shall be final, conclusive and binding on all parties concerned (including, but not limited to, Participants and their beneficiaries or successors). The Committee shall have the full power and authority to establish the terms and conditions of any Award consistent with the provisions of the Plan and to waive any such terms and conditions at any time (including, without limitation, accelerating or waiving any vesting conditions). Determinations made by the Committee under the Plan need not be uniform and may be made selectively among Participants, whether or not such Participants are similarly situated. Awards may, in the discretion of the Committee, be made under the Plan in assumption of, or in substitution for, outstanding awards previously granted by the Company, any of its Affiliates or any of their respective predecessors, or any entity acquired by the Company or with which the Company combines. The number of Shares underlying such substitute awards shall be counted against the aggregate number of Shares available for Awards under the Plan. The Committee shall require payment of any minimum amount it may determine to be necessary to withhold for federal, state, local or other taxes as a result of the exercise, vesting or grant of an Award. Unless the Committee specifies otherwise, the Participant may elect to pay a portion or all of such minimum withholding taxes by (i) delivery in Shares, or (ii) having Shares withheld by the Company from any Shares that would have otherwise been received by the Participant. The number of Shares so delivered or withheld shall have an aggregate Fair Market Value sufficient to satisfy the applicable minimum withholding taxes.

5. Limitations. No Award may be granted under the Plan after the tenth anniversary of the Effective Date, but Awards theretofore granted may extend beyond that date.

6. Terms and Conditions of Options. Options granted under the Plan shall be, as determined by the Committee, non-qualified or incentive stock options for federal income tax

---

purposes, as evidenced by the related Award agreements, and shall be subject to the foregoing and the following terms and conditions and to such other terms and conditions, not inconsistent therewith, as the Committee shall determine:

(a) Option Price. The Option Price per Share shall be determined by the Committee, but shall not be less than 100% of the Fair Market Value of a Share on the date an Option is granted (other than in the case of Options granted in assumption or substitution of previously granted awards, as described in Section 4; provided that such assumption or substitution is described in Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(b)(5)(v)(D)).

(b) Exercisability. Options granted under the Plan shall be exercisable at such time and upon such terms and conditions as may be determined by the Committee, but in no event shall an Option be exercisable more than ten years after the date it is granted. Each Award agreement shall set forth the extent to which the Participant shall have the right to exercise the Option following termination of the Participant's employment or service with the Company or its Affiliates. Such provisions shall be determined in the sole discretion of the Committee, shall be included in the Award agreements, need not be uniform among all Options issued pursuant to the Plan, and may reflect distinctions based on the reasons for termination.

(c) Exercise of Options. Except as otherwise provided in the Plan or in an Award agreement, an Option may be exercised for all, or from time to time any part, of the Shares for which it is then exercisable. For purposes of Section 6 of the Plan, the exercise date of an Option shall be the later of the date a notice of exercise is received by the Company and, if applicable, the date payment is received by the Company pursuant to clauses (i), (ii), (iii) or (iv) in the following sentence. The purchase price for the Shares as to which an Option is exercised shall be paid to the Company to the extent permitted by law, (i) in cash or its equivalent (e.g., by personal check) at the time the Option is exercised, (ii) in Shares having a Fair Market Value equal to the aggregate Option Price for the Shares being purchased and satisfying such other requirements as may be imposed by the Committee; provided, that such Shares have been held by the Participant for no less than six months (or such other period as established from time to time by the Committee in order to avoid adverse accounting treatment applying generally accepted accounting principles), (iii) partly in cash and partly in Shares (as described in (ii) above), (iv) if there is a public market for the Shares at such time, through the delivery of irrevocable instructions to a broker to sell Shares obtained upon the exercise of the Option and to deliver promptly to the Company an amount out of the proceeds of such sale equal to the aggregate Option Price for the Shares being purchased, or (v) to the extent the Committee shall approve in the Award agreement or otherwise, through "net settlement" in Shares. In the case of a "net settlement" of an Option, the Company will not require a cash payment of the Option Price of the Option set forth in the Award agreement, but will reduce the number of Shares issued upon the exercise by the largest number of whole Shares that have a Fair Market Value that does not exceed the aggregate Option Price set forth in the Award agreement. With respect to any remaining balance of the aggregate Option Price, the Company shall accept a cash payment. No Participant shall have any rights to dividends or other rights of a stockholder with respect to Shares subject to an Option until the Participant has given written notice of exercise of the Option, paid in full for such Shares and, if applicable, has satisfied any other conditions imposed by the Committee pursuant to the Plan.

---

(d) ISOs. The Committee may grant Options under the Plan that are intended to be ISOs. Such ISOs shall comply with the requirements of Section 422 of the Code (or any successor section thereto). No ISO may be granted to any Participant who at the time of such grant, owns more than 10% of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock of the Company or of any Subsidiary, unless (i) the Option Price for such ISO is at least 110% of the Fair Market Value of a Share on the date the ISO is granted and (ii) the date on which such ISO terminates is a date not later than the day preceding the fifth anniversary of the date on which the ISO is granted. Any Participant who disposes of Shares acquired upon the exercise of an ISO either (i) within two years after the date of grant of such ISO or (ii) within one year after the transfer of such Shares to the Participant, shall notify the Company of such disposition and of the amount realized upon such disposition. All Options granted under the Plan are intended to be nonqualified stock options, unless the applicable Award agreement expressly states that the Option is intended to be an ISO. If an Option is intended to be an ISO, and if for any reason such Option (or portion thereof) shall not qualify as an ISO, then, to the extent of such non-qualification, such Option (or portion thereof) shall be regarded as a nonqualified stock option granted under the Plan; provided that such Option (or portion thereof) otherwise complies with the Plan's requirements relating to nonqualified stock options. In no event shall any member of the Committee, the Company or any of its Affiliates (or their respective employees, officers or directors) have any liability to any Participant (or any other Person) due to the failure of an Option to qualify for any reason as an ISO.

(e) Attestation. Wherever in this Plan or any agreement evidencing an Award a Participant is permitted to pay the exercise price of an Option or taxes relating to the exercise of an Option by delivering Shares, the Participant may, subject to procedures satisfactory to the Committee, satisfy such delivery requirement by presenting proof of beneficial ownership of such Shares, in which case the Company shall treat the Option as exercised without further payment and/or shall withhold such number of Shares from the Shares acquired by the exercise of the Option, as appropriate.

#### 7. Terms and Conditions of Stock Appreciation Rights.

(a) Grants. The Committee may also grant (i) a Stock Appreciation Right independent of an Option or (ii) a Stock Appreciation Right in connection with an Option, or a portion thereof. A Stock Appreciation Right granted pursuant to clause (ii) of the preceding sentence (A) may be granted at the time the related Option is granted or at any time prior to the exercise or cancellation of the related Option, (B) shall cover the same number of Shares covered by an Option (or such lesser number of Shares as the Committee may determine), and (C) shall be subject to the same terms and conditions as such Option except for such additional limitations as are contemplated by this Section 7 (or such additional limitations as may be included in an Award agreement).

(b) Terms. The exercise price per Share of a Stock Appreciation Right shall be an amount determined by the Committee but in no event shall such amount be less than the Fair Market Value of a Share on the date the Stock Appreciation Right is granted (other than in the case of a Stock Appreciation Right granted in assumption or substitution of previously granted awards, as described in Section 4; provided that such assumption or substitution is described in Treasury Regulation Section 1.409A-1(b)(5)(v)(D)); provided, however, that, in the

---

case of a Stock Appreciation Right granted in conjunction with an Option, or a portion thereof, the exercise price may not be less than the Option Price of the related Option. Each Stock Appreciation Right granted independent of an Option shall entitle a Participant upon exercise to an amount equal to (i) the excess of (A) the Fair Market Value on the exercise date of one Share over (B) the exercise price per Share, times (ii) the number of Shares covered by the Stock Appreciation Right. Each Stock Appreciation Right granted in conjunction with an Option, or a portion thereof, shall entitle a Participant to surrender to the Company the unexercised Option, or any portion thereof, and to receive from the Company in exchange therefor an amount equal to the product of (i) the excess of (A) the Fair Market Value on the exercise date of one Share over (B) the Option Price per Share, times (ii) the number of Shares covered by the Option, or portion thereof, which is surrendered. The date on which a notice of exercise is received by the Company shall be the exercise date. Payment shall be made in Shares or in cash, or partly in Shares and partly in cash (any such Shares valued at such Fair Market Value), as set forth in the Award agreement or as otherwise permitted by the Committee. Stock Appreciation Rights may be exercised from time to time upon actual receipt by the Company of written notice of exercise stating the number of Shares with respect to which the Stock Appreciation Right is being exercised. No fractional Shares will be issued in payment for Stock Appreciation Rights, but instead cash will be paid for a fraction or, if the Committee should so determine, the number of Shares will be rounded downward to the next whole Share.

(c) Limitations. The Committee may impose, in its sole discretion, such conditions upon the exercisability or transferability of Stock Appreciation Rights as it may deem fit, but in no event shall a Stock Appreciation Right be exercisable more than ten years after the date it is granted.

#### 8. Other Stock Based Awards.

(a) Generally. The Committee, in its sole discretion, may grant or sell Awards of Shares, Awards of restricted Shares and Awards that are valued in whole or in part by reference to, or are otherwise based on the Fair Market Value of, Shares ("Other Stock-Based Awards"). Such Other Stock-Based Awards shall be in such form, and dependent on such conditions, as the Committee shall determine, including, without limitation, the right to receive one or more Shares (or the equivalent cash value of such Shares) upon the completion of a specified period of service, the occurrence of an event and/or the attainment of performance objectives. Other Stock-Based Awards may be granted alone or in addition to any other Awards granted under the Plan. Subject to the provisions of the Plan, the Committee shall determine to whom and when Other Stock-Based Awards will be made; the number of Shares to be awarded under (or otherwise related to) such Other Stock-Based Awards; whether such Other Stock-Based Awards shall be settled in cash, Shares or a combination of cash and Shares; and all other terms and conditions of such Awards (including, without limitation, the vesting provisions thereof and provisions ensuring that all Shares so awarded and issued shall be fully paid and non-assessable).

(b) Performance-Based Awards. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary herein, certain Other Stock-Based Awards granted under this Section 8 may be based on the attainment of written performance goals approved by the Committee for a performance period established by the Committee ("Performance-Based Awards"). The Committee shall determine

---

whether, with respect to a performance period, the applicable performance goals have been met with respect to a given Participant and, if they have, shall so certify. In connection with such certification, the Committee, or its delegate, may decide that the amount of the Performance-Based Award actually paid to a given Participant may be less than the amount determined by the applicable performance goal formula; provided that the Committee shall have the authority to waive any applicable performance goals. In the event the applicable performance goals are not waived by the Committee, payment of a Performance-Based Award will occur only after certification and will be made as determined by the Committee in its sole discretion after the end of the applicable performance period.

9. Plan Cash Bonuses. While cash bonuses may be granted at any time outside this Plan, cash awards may also be granted in addition to other Awards granted under the Plan and in addition to cash awards made outside of the Plan. Subject to the provisions of the Plan, the Committee shall have authority to determine the persons to whom cash bonuses under the Plan shall be granted and the amount, terms and conditions of those cash bonuses. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in this Plan, no Covered Employee shall be eligible to receive a cash bonus granted under the Plan in excess of the Section 162(m) Exemption in any fiscal year, no cash bonus shall be granted pursuant to this Plan to any Covered Employee unless the cash bonus constitutes a Qualified Performance-Based Award, and no cash bonus awarded pursuant to the Plan shall be paid later than 2 1/2 months after the end of the calendar year in which such bonus was earned.

10. Performance Goals for Certain Section 162(m) Awards.

(a) 162(m) Exemption. This Plan shall be operated to ensure that all Options and Stock Appreciation Rights granted hereunder to any Covered Employee qualify for the Section 162(m) Exemption. The maximum number of Shares in respect of which Qualified Performance-Based Awards may be granted under Section 10 of the Plan to any one Covered Employee in any one calendar year is 750,000, and the maximum amount of all Qualified Performance-Based Awards that are settled in cash and that may be granted under Section 10 of the Plan to any one Covered Employee in any one calendar year is \$5,000,000.

(b) Qualified Performance-Based Awards. When granting any Award other than Options or Stock Appreciation Rights, the Committee may designate the Award as a Qualified Performance-Based Award, based upon a determination that the recipient is or may be a Covered Employee with respect to that Award, and the Committee wishes the Award to qualify for the Section 162(m) Exemption. If an Award is so designated, the Committee shall establish performance goals for the Award within the time period prescribed by Section 162(m) of the Code based on one or more of the following Qualified Performance Measures, which may be expressed in terms of Company-wide objectives or in terms of objectives that relate to the performance of a Subsidiary or a division, region, department or function within the Company or a Subsidiary: (i) return on capital, equity, or assets (including economic value created); (ii) productivity or operating efficiencies; (iii) cost improvements; (iv) cash flow; (v) sales revenue growth; (vi) net income, earnings per share, or earnings from operations; (vii) quality; (viii) customer satisfaction; (ix) comparable site sales; (x) stock price or total stockholder return; (xi) EBITDA or EBITDAR; (xii) after-tax operating income; (xiii) book value per Share; (xiv) debt reduction; (xv) strategic business objectives, consisting of one or more objectives based on meeting specified cost targets, business expansion goals and goals relating to acquisitions or divestitures; or (xvi) any combination of the foregoing.

---

Each goal may be expressed on an absolute and/or relative basis, may be based on or otherwise employ comparisons based on internal targets, the past performance of the Company or any Subsidiary, operating unit, business segment or division of the Company or any Subsidiary and/or the past or current performance of other companies, and in the case of earnings-based measures, may use or employ comparisons relating to capital, stockholders' equity and/or common stock outstanding, or to assets or net assets. The Committee may appropriately adjust any evaluation of performance under criteria set forth in this Section 10(b) to exclude any of the following events that occurs during a performance period: (i) asset write-downs; (ii) litigation or claim judgments or settlements; (iii) the effect of changes in tax law, accounting principles or other such laws or provisions affecting reported results; (iv) accruals for reorganization and restructuring programs; and (v) any extraordinary non-recurring items as described in Accounting Principles Board Opinion No. 30 and/or in management's discussion and analysis of financial condition and results of operations appearing in the Company's annual report to stockholders for the applicable year. Measurement of the Company's performance against the goals established by the Committee shall be objectively determinable, and to the extent goals are expressed in standard accounting terms, performance shall be measured according to generally accepted accounting principles as in existence on the date on which the performance goals are established and without regard to any changes in those principles after that date.

(c) Performance Goal Conditions. Each Qualified Performance-Based Award (other than an Option or Stock Appreciation Right) shall be earned, vested and payable (as applicable) only upon the achievement of performance goals established by the Committee based upon one or more of the Qualified Performance Measures, together with the satisfaction of any other conditions, such as continued employment, the Committee may determine to be appropriate; however, the Committee may provide, either in connection with the grant of an Award or by later amendment, that achievement of the performance goals will be waived upon the death or Disability of the Participant. To the extent necessary to comply with the Section 162(m) Exemption, with respect to grants of Qualified Performance-Based Awards, no later than 90 days following the commencement of each performance period (or such other time as may be required or permitted by Section 162(m) of the Code), the Committee shall, in writing, (i) select the performance goal or goals applicable to the performance period, (ii) establish the various targets and bonus amounts which may be earned for such performance period, and (iii) specify the relationship between performance goals and targets and the amounts to be earned by each Covered Employee for such performance period.

(d) Certification of Goal Achievement. Any payment of a Qualified Performance-Based Award granted with performance goals shall be conditioned upon the written certification of the Committee in each case that the performance goals and any other material conditions were satisfied. In determining the amount earned by a Covered Employee for a given performance period, subject to any applicable Award Agreement, the Committee shall have the right to reduce (but not increase) the amount payable at a given level of performance to take into account additional factors that the Committee may deem relevant in its sole discretion to the assessment of individual or corporate performance for the performance period. Except as specifically provided in Section 10(c), no Qualified Performance-Based Award may be amended,



---

nor may the Committee exercise any discretionary authority it may otherwise have under the Plan with respect to a Qualified Performance-Based Award, in any manner to waive the achievement of the applicable performance goal based on Qualified Performance Measures or to increase the amount payable under, or the value of, the Award, or otherwise in a manner that would cause the Qualified Performance-Based Award to cease to qualify for the Section 162(m) Exemption.

11. Adjustments upon Certain Events. Notwithstanding any other provisions in the Plan to the contrary, the following provisions shall apply to all Awards granted under the Plan:

(a) Generally. In the event of any change in the outstanding Shares after the Effective Date by reason of any Share dividend or split, reorganization, recapitalization, merger, consolidation, spin-off, combination or exchange of Shares or other corporate exchange or change in capital structure, any distribution to stockholders of Shares (other than regular cash dividends) or any similar event, the Committee without liability to any person shall make such substitution or adjustment, if any, as it deems to be equitable (subject to Section 18), as to the number or kind of Shares or other securities issued or reserved for issuance as set forth in Section 3 of the Plan or pursuant to outstanding Awards; provided that the Committee shall determine in its sole discretion the manner in which such substitution or adjustment shall be made.

(b) Change of Control. In the event of a Change of Control (or similar corporate transaction, whether or not including any Permitted Holder) after the Effective Date, the Committee may (subject to Section 18), but shall not be obligated to, (i) accelerate, vest or cause the restrictions to lapse with respect to all or any portion of an Award, (ii) cancel such Awards for fair value (as determined in the sole discretion of the Committee) which, in the case of Options and Stock Appreciation Rights, may equal the excess, if any, of value of the consideration to be paid in the Change of Control transaction to holders of the same number of Shares subject to such Options or Stock Appreciation Rights (or, if no consideration is paid in any such transaction, the Fair Market Value of the Shares subject to such Options or Stock Appreciation Rights) over the aggregate exercise price of such Options or Stock Appreciation Rights, (iii) provide for the issuance of substitute Awards that will substantially preserve the otherwise applicable terms of any affected Awards previously granted hereunder as determined by the Committee in its sole discretion, or (iv) provide that for a period of at least 10 days prior to the Change of Control, such Options shall be exercisable as to all Shares subject thereto and that upon the occurrence of the Change of Control, such Options shall terminate and be of no further force or effect. For the avoidance of doubt, pursuant to (ii) above, the Committee may cancel Options and Stock Appreciation Rights for no consideration if the aggregate Fair Market Value of the Shares subject to such Options or Stock Appreciation Rights is less than or equal to the aggregate Option Price of such Options or exercise price of such Stock Appreciation Rights.

12. No Right to Employment or Awards. The granting of an Award under the Plan shall impose no obligation on the Company or any of its Affiliates to continue the Employment of a Participant and shall not lessen or affect the Company's or any of its Affiliates' right to terminate the Employment of such Participant. No Participant or other Person shall have any claim to be granted any Award, and there is no obligation for uniformity of treatment of Participants, or holders or beneficiaries of Awards. The terms and conditions of Awards and the Committee's determinations and interpretations with respect thereto need not be the same with respect to each Participant (whether or not such Participants are similarly situated).

---

13. Successors and Assigns. The Plan shall be binding on all successors and assigns of the Company and the Participants, including, without limitation, the estate of each such Participant and the executor, administrator or trustee of such estate, and any receiver or trustee in bankruptcy or any other representative of the Participant's creditors.

14. Nontransferability of Awards. Unless otherwise determined by the Committee, an Award shall not be transferable or assignable by the Participant otherwise than by will or by the laws of descent and distribution. An Award exercisable after the death of a Participant may be exercised by the legatees, personal representatives or distributees of the Participant.

15. Amendments or Termination. The Committee may amend, alter or discontinue the Plan, but no amendment, alteration or discontinuation shall be made which, (a) without the approval of the stockholders of the Company, would (except as is provided in Section 11 of the Plan) increase the total number of Shares reserved for the purposes of the Plan or change the maximum number of Shares for which Awards may be granted to any Participant, or (b) without the consent of a Participant, would materially adversely impair any of the rights under any Award theretofore granted to such Participant under the Plan; provided, however, that the Committee may amend the Plan in such manner as it deems necessary to permit the granting of Awards meeting the requirements of the Code or other applicable laws (including, without limitation, to avoid adverse tax consequences to the Company or any Participant).

Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, to the extent applicable, notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, this Plan and Awards issued hereunder shall be interpreted in accordance with Section 409A of the Code and Department of Treasury regulations and other interpretative guidance issued thereunder, including without limitation any such regulations or other guidance that may be issued after the Effective Date. Notwithstanding any provision of the Plan to the contrary, in the event the Committee determines that any amounts payable hereunder will be taxable to a Participant under Section 409A of the Code and related Department of Treasury guidance prior to payment to such Participant of such amount, the Company may (i) adopt such amendments to the Plan and Awards and appropriate policies and procedures, including amendments and policies with retroactive effect, that the Committee determines necessary or appropriate to preserve the intended tax treatment of the benefits provided by the Plan and Awards hereunder, and/or (ii) take such other actions as the Committee determines necessary or appropriate to avoid the imposition of an additional tax under Section 409A of the Code.

16. Choice of Law. The Plan shall be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of Delaware without regard to conflicts of laws.

17. Effectiveness of Plan. The Plan shall be effective as of the Effective Date, subject to the approval of the Company's stockholders.

18. Section 409A. Notwithstanding other provisions of the Plan or any Award agreements thereunder, no Award shall be granted, deferred, accelerated, extended, paid out or

---

modified under this Plan in a manner that would result in the imposition of an additional tax under Section 409A of the Code upon a Participant. In the event that it is reasonably determined by the Committee that, as a result of Section 409A of the Code, any payment or delivery of Shares in respect of any Award under the Plan may not be made at the time contemplated by the terms of the Plan or the relevant Award agreement, as the case may be, without causing the Participant holding such Award to be subject to taxation under Section 409A of the Code, the Company will make such payment or delivery of Shares on the first day that would not result in the Participant incurring any tax liability under Section 409A of the Code. In the case of a Participant who is a “specified employee” (within the meaning of Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code), any payment and/or delivery of Shares in respect of any Award subject to Section 409A of the Code that is linked to the date of the Participant’s separation from service shall not be made prior to the date which is six (6) months after the date of such Participant’s separation from service from the Company and its Affiliates, determined in accordance with Section 409A of the Code and the regulations promulgated thereunder. The Company shall use commercially reasonable efforts to implement the provisions of this Section 18 in good faith; provided that neither the Company, the Committee nor any of the Company’s employees, directors or representatives shall have any liability to Participants with respect to this Section 18.

**INCENTIVE STOCK OPTION AGREEMENT  
UNDER THE MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.  
2012 INCENTIVE COMPENSATION PLAN**

**Name of Optionee:** \_\_\_\_\_

**No. of Option Shares:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Option Exercise Price Per Share:** \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
[FMV on Grant Date (110% of FMV if a 10% owner)]

**Grant Date:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Expiration Date:** \_\_\_\_\_

Pursuant to the MRI Interventions, Inc. 2012 Incentive Compensation Plan as amended through the date hereof (the “Plan”), MRI Interventions, Inc. (the “Company”) hereby grants under this agreement (this “Agreement”) to the Optionee named above, who is an employee of the Company or any Subsidiary, an option (the “Stock Option”) to purchase on or prior to the Expiration Date specified above all or part of the number of Shares specified above at the Option Exercise Price Per Share specified above subject to the terms and conditions set forth herein and in the Plan. Capitalized terms in this Agreement shall have the meanings specified in the Plan, unless a different meaning is specified herein.

1. Exercisability Schedule. No portion of the Stock Option may be exercised until such portion shall have become exercisable. Except as set forth below, and subject to the discretion of the Committee to accelerate the exercisability schedule hereunder, the Stock Option shall be exercisable with respect to the following number of Option Shares on the dates indicated:

Incremental Number of Option Shares Exercisable	Exercisability Date
( %)	
( %)	
( %)	

Once exercisable, the Stock Option shall continue to be exercisable at any time or times prior to the close of business on the Expiration Date, subject to the provisions hereof and of the Plan. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary or in the Plan, in the event of a Change of Control, the Stock Option shall become fully exercisable as of the effective time of the Change of Control.

---

## 2. Manner of Exercise.

(a) The Optionee may exercise the Stock Option only in the following manner: from time to time on or prior to the Expiration Date of the Stock Option, the Optionee may give written notice to the Committee of his or her election to purchase some or all of the Option Shares purchasable at the time of such notice. This notice shall specify the number of Option Shares to be purchased.

Payment of the purchase price for the Option Shares may be made by one or more of the following methods: (i) in cash or its equivalent (e.g., by personal check) at the time the Stock Option is exercised, (ii) in Shares having a Fair Market Value equal to the aggregate Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares being purchased and satisfying such other requirements as may be imposed by the Committee; provided, that such Shares have been held by the Optionee for no less than six months (or such other period as established from time to time by the Committee in order to avoid adverse accounting treatment applying generally accepted accounting principles), (iii) partly in cash and partly in Shares (as described in the preceding clause (ii)), (iv) if there is a public market for the Shares at such time, through the delivery of irrevocable instructions to a broker to sell Stock obtained upon the exercise of the Stock Option and to deliver promptly to the Company an amount out of the proceeds of such sale equal to the aggregate Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares being purchased; provided that in the event the Optionee chooses to pay the Option Exercise Price Per Share as so provided, the Optionee and the broker shall comply with such procedures and enter into such agreements of indemnity and other agreements as the Committee shall prescribe as a condition of such payment procedure, or (v) through "net settlement" in Shares. In the case of a "net settlement" of a Stock Option, the Company will not require a cash payment of the Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares being purchased, but will reduce the number of Shares issued upon the exercise by the largest number of whole Shares that have a Fair Market Value that does not exceed the aggregate Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares set forth in this Agreement. With respect to any remaining balance of the aggregate Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares, the Company shall accept a cash payment. Payment instruments will be received subject to collection.

The transfer to the Optionee on the records of the Company or of the transfer agent of the Option Shares will be contingent upon (i) the Company's receipt from the Optionee of the full purchase price for such Option Shares, as set forth above, (ii) the fulfillment of any other requirements contained herein or in the Plan or in any other agreement or applicable laws and regulations, and (iii) the receipt by the Company of any agreement, statement or other evidence that the Company may require to satisfy itself that the issuance of the Shares pursuant to the exercise of Stock Options under the Plan and any subsequent resale of such Shares will be in compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

(b) The Shares purchased upon exercise of the Stock Option shall be transferred to the Optionee on the records of the Company or of the transfer agent upon compliance to the satisfaction of the Committee with all requirements under applicable laws or regulations in connection with such transfer and with the requirements hereof and of the Plan. The determination of the Committee as to such compliance shall be final and binding on the Optionee. The Optionee shall not be deemed to be the holder of, or to have any of the rights of a holder with respect to, any Shares subject to the Stock Option unless and until the Stock Option

---

shall have been exercised pursuant to the terms hereof, the Company or the transfer agent shall have transferred the Shares to the Optionee, and the Optionee's name shall have been entered as the stockholder of record on the books of the Company.

(c) The minimum number of Shares with respect to which the Stock Option may be exercised at any one time shall be 100 Shares, unless the number of Shares with respect to which the Stock Option is being exercised is the total number of Shares subject to exercise under the Stock Option at the time.

(d) Notwithstanding any other provision hereof or of the Plan, no portion of the Stock Option shall be exercisable after the Expiration Date hereof.

3. Termination of Employment. If the Optionee's employment by the Company or any Affiliate is terminated, the period within which to exercise the Stock Option may be subject to earlier termination as set forth below.

(a) Termination Due to Death. If the Optionee's employment terminates by reason of the Optionee's death, any portion of the Stock Option outstanding on such date may be exercised, to the extent exercisable on the date of Optionee's death, by the Optionee's legal representative or legatee for a period of 12 months from the date of death or until the Expiration Date, if earlier. Any portion of the Stock Option that is not exercisable on the date of death shall terminate immediately and be of no further force or effect.

(b) Termination Due to Disability. If the Optionee's employment terminates by reason of the Optionee's Disability, any portion of the Stock Option outstanding on such date may be exercised, to the extent exercisable on the date of Disability, by the Optionee, or the Optionee's legal representative or guardian, as applicable, for a period of 12 months from the date of Disability or until the Expiration Date, if earlier. Any portion of the Stock Option that is not exercisable on the date of Disability shall terminate immediately and be of no further force or effect.

(c) Termination for Cause; Voluntary Resignation. If the Optionee's employment with the Company or any Affiliate terminates for Cause or if the Optionee voluntarily terminates his or her employment, any portion of the Stock Option outstanding on such date shall terminate immediately and be of no further force or effect. For purposes of this Agreement, "Cause" shall mean: (i) gross negligence or willful misconduct by the Optionee in the performance of the Optionee's duties to the Company where such gross negligence or willful misconduct has resulted or is likely to result in substantial and material damage to the Company; (ii) any breach by the Optionee of any non-compete agreement or similar agreement between the Optionee and the Company; (iii) any material breach by the Optionee of any confidentiality agreement or similar agreement between the Optionee and the Company; (iv) a material violation by the Optionee of any federal or state law or regulation or the Company's compliance program in the performance of the Optionee's duties; (v) commission by the Optionee of any act of fraud with respect to the Company; (vi) the Optionee's conviction of, or the Optionee's entry of a guilty plea or plea of nolo contendere with respect to, a felony; (vii) the Optionee's failure to perform duties consistent with the Optionee's position or to follow or comply with the reasonable directives of the Board or the Optionee's supervisor(s), provided that (A) the Optionee shall have received written notice that specifically identifies the manner in which the

---

Company believes that the Optionee has engaged in such failure and (B) the Optionee shall not have cured such failure within thirty (30) days following receipt of such notice, provided further that such opportunity to cure a failure shall not apply if the Optionee has received more than one notice with respect to the same or similar conduct pursuant to this clause (vii) during any twelve (12) consecutive month period; or (viii) any act or omission that would constitute “cause” under any employment agreement or similar agreement between the Optionee and the Company or its Affiliate, as applicable.

(d) Other Termination. If the Optionee’s employment terminates for any reason other than the Optionee’s voluntary termination, the Optionee’s death, the Optionee’s Disability or for Cause, and unless otherwise determined by the Committee, any portion of the Stock Option outstanding on such date may be exercised, to the extent exercisable on the date of termination, for a period of three months from the date of termination or until the Expiration Date, if earlier. Any portion of the Stock Option that is not exercisable on the date of termination shall terminate immediately and be of no further force or effect.

The Committee’s determination of the reason for termination of the Optionee’s employment shall be conclusive and binding on the Optionee and his or her representatives or legatees.

4. Incorporation of Plan. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Stock Option shall be subject to and governed by all the terms and conditions of the Plan, including the powers of the Committee set forth in Section 4 of the Plan.

5. Transferability. Unless otherwise approved by the Committee, this Agreement is personal to the Optionee, is non-assignable and is not transferable in any manner, by operation of law or otherwise, other than by will or the laws of descent and distribution. Except as provided in Section 3(b) of this Agreement, the Stock Option is exercisable, during the Optionee’s lifetime, only by the Optionee, and thereafter, only by the Optionee’s legal representative or legatee.

6. Status of the Stock Option. The Stock Option is intended to qualify as an “incentive stock option” under Section 422 of the Code, but the Company does not represent or warrant that the Stock Option qualifies as such. The Optionee should consult with his or her own tax advisors regarding the tax effects of the Stock Option and the requirements necessary to obtain favorable income tax treatment under Section 422 of the Code, including, but not limited to, holding period requirements. To the extent any portion of the Stock Option does not so qualify as an “incentive stock option,” such portion shall be deemed to be a non-qualified stock option. If the Optionee intends to dispose or does dispose (whether by sale, gift, transfer or otherwise) of any Option Shares within the one-year period beginning on the date after the transfer of such Shares to him or her, or within the two-year period beginning on the day after the grant of the Stock Option, he or she will so notify the Company within 30 days after such disposition.

7. No Obligation to Continue Employment. Neither the Company nor any of its Affiliates is obligated by or as a result of the Plan or this Agreement to continue the Optionee in employment and neither the Plan nor this Agreement shall interfere in any way with the right of the Company or any such Affiliate to terminate the employment of the Optionee at any time.

---

8. Notices. Notices hereunder shall be mailed or delivered to the Company at its principal place of business and shall be mailed or delivered to the Optionee at the address on file with the Company or, in either case, at such other address as one party may subsequently furnish to the other party in writing.

9. Amendment. Pursuant to Section 15 of the Plan, the Committee may at any time amend, alter or discontinue the Plan, but no such action may be taken that adversely affects the Optionee's rights under this Agreement without the Optionee's consent.

10. Inconsistencies. In the event of an inconsistency between the terms of this Agreement and the Optionee's employment agreement with the Company, if any, the terms of such employment agreement shall govern.

*[SIGNATURE PAGE FOLLOWS]*



---

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the Company has executed this Agreement on and as of the day and year first above written.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

The foregoing Agreement is hereby accepted and the terms and conditions thereof hereby agreed to by the undersigned.

Dated:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Optionee's Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Optionee's Name

Optionee's Address:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**NON-QUALIFIED STOCK OPTION AGREEMENT  
UNDER THE MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.  
2012 INCENTIVE COMPENSATION PLAN**

**Name of Optionee:** \_\_\_\_\_

**No. of Option Shares:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Option Exercise Price Per Share:** \$ \_\_\_\_\_  
[FMV on Grant Date]

**Grant Date:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Expiration date:** \_\_\_\_\_

Pursuant to the MRI Interventions, Inc. 2012 Incentive Compensation Plan as amended through the date hereof (the “Plan”), MRI Interventions, Inc. (the “Company”) hereby grants under this agreement (this “Agreement”) to the Optionee named above, who is an employee, consultant or other service provider of the Company or any of its Affiliates, an option (the “Stock Option”) to purchase on or prior to the Expiration Date specified above all or part of the number of Shares specified above at the Option Exercise Price Per Share specified above subject to the terms and conditions set forth herein and in the Plan. The Stock Option is not intended to be an “incentive stock option” under Section 422 of the Code. Capitalized terms in this Agreement shall have the meanings specified in the Plan, unless a different meaning is specified herein.

1. Exercisability Schedule. No portion of the Stock Option may be exercised until such portion shall have become exercisable. Except as set forth below, and subject to the discretion of the Committee to accelerate the exercisability schedule hereunder, the Stock Option shall be exercisable with respect to the following number of Option Shares on the dates indicated:

<u>Incremental Number of Option Shares Exercisable</u>	<u>Exercisability Date</u>
( %)	
( %)	
( %)	

Once exercisable, the Stock Option shall continue to be exercisable at any time or times prior to the close of business on the Expiration Date, subject to the provisions hereof and of the Plan. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary or in the Plan, in the event of a Change of Control, the Stock Option shall become fully exercisable as of the effective time of the Change of Control.

---

## 2. Manner of Exercise.

(a) The Optionee may exercise the Stock Option only in the following manner: from time to time on or prior to the Expiration Date of the Stock Option, the Optionee may give written notice to the Committee of his or her election to purchase some or all of the Option Shares purchasable at the time of such notice. This notice shall specify the number of Option Shares to be purchased.

Payment of the purchase price for the Option Shares may be made by one or more of the following methods: (i) in cash or its equivalent (e.g., by personal check) at the time the Stock Option is exercised, (ii) in Shares having a Fair Market Value equal to the aggregate Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares being purchased and satisfying such other requirements as may be imposed by the Committee; provided, that such Shares have been held by the Optionee for no less than six months (or such other period as established from time to time by the Committee in order to avoid adverse accounting treatment applying generally accepted accounting principles), (iii) partly in cash and partly in Shares (as described in the preceding clause (ii)), (iv) if there is a public market for the Shares at such time, through the delivery of irrevocable instructions to a broker to sell Stock obtained upon the exercise of the Stock Option and to deliver promptly to the Company an amount out of the proceeds of such sale equal to the aggregate Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares being purchased; provided that in the event the Optionee chooses to pay the Option Exercise Price Per Share as so provided, the Optionee and the broker shall comply with such procedures and enter into such agreements of indemnity and other agreements as the Committee shall prescribe as a condition of such payment procedure, or (v) through "net settlement" in Shares. In the case of a "net settlement" of a Stock Option, the Company will not require a cash payment of the Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares being purchased, but will reduce the number of Shares issued upon the exercise by the largest number of whole Shares that have a Fair Market Value that does not exceed the aggregate Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares set forth in this Agreement. With respect to any remaining balance of the aggregate Option Exercise Price Per Share for the Option Shares, the Company shall accept a cash payment. Payment instruments will be received subject to collection.

The transfer to the Optionee on the records of the Company or of the transfer agent of the Option Shares will be contingent upon (i) the Company's receipt from the Optionee of the full purchase price for such Option Shares, as set forth above, (ii) the fulfillment of any other requirements contained herein or in the Plan or in any other agreement or applicable laws and regulations, and (iii) the receipt by the Company of any agreement, statement or other evidence that the Company may require to satisfy itself that the issuance of the Shares pursuant to the exercise of Stock Options under the Plan and any subsequent resale of such Shares will be in compliance with applicable laws and regulations.

(b) The Shares purchased upon exercise of the Stock Option shall be transferred to the Optionee on the records of the Company or of the transfer agent upon compliance to the satisfaction of the Committee with all requirements under applicable laws or regulations in connection with such transfer and with the requirements hereof and of the Plan. The determination of the Committee as to such compliance shall be final and binding on the Optionee. The Optionee shall not be deemed to be the holder of, or to have any of the rights of a

---

holder with respect to, any Shares subject to the Stock Option unless and until the Stock Option shall have been exercised pursuant to the terms hereof, the Company or the transfer agent shall have transferred the Shares to the Optionee, and the Optionee's name shall have been entered as the stockholder of record on the books of the Company.

(c) The minimum number of Shares with respect to which the Stock Option may be exercised at any one time shall be 100 Shares, unless the number of Shares with respect to which the Stock Option is being exercised is the total number of Shares subject to exercise under the Stock Option at the time.

(d) Notwithstanding any other provision hereof or of the Plan, no portion of the Stock Option shall be exercisable after the Expiration Date hereof.

3. Termination of Employment. If the Optionee's employment by the Company or any Affiliate is terminated, the period within which to exercise the Stock Option may be subject to earlier termination as set forth below.

(a) Termination Due to Death. If the Optionee's employment terminates by reason of the Optionee's death, any portion of the Stock Option outstanding on such date may be exercised, to the extent exercisable on the date of Optionee's death, by the Optionee's legal representative or legatee for a period of 12 months from the date of death or until the Expiration Date, if earlier. Any portion of the Stock Option that is not exercisable on the date of death shall terminate immediately and be of no further force or effect.

(b) Termination Due to Disability. If the Optionee's employment terminates by reason of the Optionee's Disability, any portion of the Stock Option outstanding on such date may be exercised, to the extent exercisable on the date of Disability, by the Optionee, or the Optionee's legal representative or guardian, as applicable, for a period of 12 months from the date of Disability or until the Expiration Date, if earlier. Any portion of the Stock Option that is not exercisable on the date of Disability shall terminate immediately and be of no further force or effect.

(c) Termination for Cause; Voluntary Resignation. If the Optionee's employment with the Company or any Affiliate terminates for Cause or if the Optionee voluntarily terminates his or her employment, any portion of the Stock Option outstanding on such date shall terminate immediately and be of no further force or effect. For purposes of this Agreement, "Cause" shall mean: (i) gross negligence or willful misconduct by the Optionee in the performance of the Optionee's duties to the Company where such gross negligence or willful misconduct has resulted or is likely to result in substantial and material damage to the Company; (ii) any breach by the Optionee of any non-compete agreement or similar agreement between the Optionee and the Company; (iii) any material breach by the Optionee of any confidentiality agreement or similar agreement between the Optionee and the Company; (iv) a material violation by the Optionee of any federal or state law or regulation or the Company's compliance program in the performance of the Optionee's duties; (v) commission by the Optionee of any act of fraud with respect to the Company; (vi) the Optionee's conviction of, or the Optionee's entry of a guilty plea or plea of nolo contendere with respect to, a felony; (vii) the Optionee's failure to perform duties consistent with the Optionee's position or to follow or comply with the reasonable directives of the Board or the Optionee's supervisor(s), provided that (A) the

---

Optionee shall have received written notice that specifically identifies the manner in which the Company believes that the Optionee has engaged in such failure and (B) the Optionee shall not have cured such failure within thirty (30) days following receipt of such notice, provided further that such opportunity to cure a failure shall not apply if the Optionee has received more than one notice with respect to the same or similar conduct pursuant to this clause (vii) during any twelve (12) consecutive month period; or (viii) any act or omission that would constitute “cause” under any employment agreement or similar agreement between the Optionee and the Company or its Affiliate, as applicable.

(d) Other Termination. If the Optionee’s employment terminates for any reason other than the Optionee’s voluntary termination, the Optionee’s death, the Optionee’s Disability or for Cause, and unless otherwise determined by the Committee, any portion of the Stock Option outstanding on such date may be exercised, to the extent exercisable on the date of termination, for a period of three months from the date of termination or until the Expiration Date, if earlier. Any portion of the Stock Option that is not exercisable on the date of termination shall terminate immediately and be of no further force or effect.

The Committee’s determination of the reason for termination of the Optionee’s employment shall be conclusive and binding on the Optionee and his or her representatives or legatees.

4. Incorporation of Plan. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Stock Option shall be subject to and governed by all the terms and conditions of the Plan, including the powers of the Committee set forth in Section 4 of the Plan.

5. Transferability. Unless otherwise approved by the Committee, this Agreement is personal to the Optionee, is non-assignable and is not transferable in any manner, by operation of law or otherwise, other than by will or the laws of descent and distribution. Except as provided in Section 3(b) of this Agreement, the Stock Option is exercisable, during the Optionee’s lifetime, only by the Optionee, and thereafter, only by the Optionee’s legal representative or legatee.

6. Tax Withholding. The Optionee shall, not later than the date as of which the exercise of the Stock Option becomes a taxable event for Federal income tax purposes, pay to the Company or make arrangements satisfactory to the Committee for payment of any Federal, state, and local taxes required by law to be withheld on account of such taxable event. The minimum required tax withholding obligation may be satisfied, in whole or in part, by the Company withholding from the Option Shares to be issued a number of Shares with an aggregate Fair Market Value that would satisfy the withholding amount due.

7. No Obligation to Continue Employment. Neither the Company nor any of its Affiliates is obligated by or as a result of the Plan or this Agreement to continue the Optionee in employment and neither the Plan nor this Agreement shall interfere in any way with the right of the Company or any such Affiliate to terminate the employment of the Optionee at any time.

8. Notices. Notices hereunder shall be mailed or delivered to the Company at its principal place of business and shall be mailed or delivered to the Optionee at the address on file with the Company or, in either case, at such other address as one party may subsequently furnish to the other party in writing.

---

9. Amendment. Pursuant to Section 15 of the Plan, the Committee may at any time amend or cancel any outstanding portion of the Stock Option, but no such action may be taken that adversely affects the Optionee's rights under this Agreement without the Optionee's consent.

10. Inconsistencies. In the event of any inconsistency between the terms of this Agreement and the Optionee's employment agreement with the Company, if any, the terms of such employment agreement shall govern.

*[SIGNATURE PAGE FOLLOWS]*

---

**IN WITNESS WHEREOF**, the Company has executed this Agreement on and as of the day and year first above written.

**MRI INTERVENTIONS, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_  
Name: \_\_\_\_\_  
Title: \_\_\_\_\_

The foregoing Agreement is hereby accepted and the terms and conditions thereof hereby agreed to by the undersigned.

Dated:

\_\_\_\_\_  
Optionee's Signature

\_\_\_\_\_  
Optionee's Name

Optionee's Address:  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_